Reviews of

92

Physiology, Biochemistry and Pharmacology

With 13 Figures

Springer-Verlag
Berlin Heidelberg New York 1982

ISBN 3-540-11105-0 Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg New York
ISBN 0-387-11105-0 Springer-Verlag New York Heidelberg Berlin

Library of Congress-Catalog-Card Number 74-3674

Offsetprinting and Binding: Konrad Triltsch, Würzburg
2121/3130-543210

Contents

Indexed in Current Contents

Rev. Physiol. Biochem. Pharmacol., Vol. 92

Cardioactive Substances that Prolong the Open State of Sodium Channels

PETER HONERJÄGER *

Contents

* Institut für Pharmakologie und Toxikologie der Technischen Universität München, Biedersteiner Straße 29, D-8000 München 40, Federal Republic of Germany

Abbreviations and Symbols

ATX_{II}	Toxin II from *Anemonia sulcata*	h	Inactivation variable of Na channels
cAMP	Cyclic adenosine 3′,5′-monophosphate	m	Activation variable of Na channels
D 600	α-Isopropyl-α-[(N-methyl-N-homoveratryl)-γ-aminopropyl]-3,4,5-trimethoxyphenylacetonitrile (gallopamil)	I_K	Transmembrane K current
		I_{Na}	Transmembrane Na current through Na channels
$ScTX_{II}$	Toxin II from *Androctonus australis* Hector	I_{si}	Transmembrane slow inward (Ca, Na) current
STX	Saxitoxin	P_{Na}	Membrane permeability to Na ions
TTX	Tetrodotoxin	$\dot{V}_{max}$	Maximal rate of depolarization during the upstroke of the action potential
F_c	Peak force of contraction		
ΔF_c	Change in peak force of contraction	$[\ ]_o$	Extracellular concentration
		$[\ ]_i$	Intracellular concentration

1 Introduction

It is now recognized that many toxic substances evolved by plants or animals act by interfering with the excitation process of nerve and muscle cells. Specifically, these compounds alter the rapid and transient increase in membrane permeability to Na ions (P_{Na}), that initiates the action potential. According to the general mode by which toxins modify the Na permeability mechanism, or Na channels, two groups can be distinguished. The first group of substances, including tetrodotoxin (TTX) and saxitoxin (STX), blocks the flow of Na ions through Na channels. The second group of toxins maintains an open form of the Na channel, thereby prolonging the time during which Na ions flow into the cell. This group comprises alkaloids (ceveratrum alkaloids, batrachotoxin, aconitine), the diterpenoid grayanotoxins, and polypeptides from scorpions, sea anemones and coral and contains the most potent and most specific substances known to increase the Na permeability of excitable membranes. Toxins

which prolong the open state of Na channels will be referred to as Na channel-*gate* toxins to denote the specific function of the Na channel affected by these agents, i.e. the gating mechanism which controls the activation and inactivation of Na channels.

While the general pharmacology of one subgroup of Na channel-gate toxins, the ceveratrum alkaloids, has been studied for more than a century, the basic mechanism of their action, as outlined above, has been elucidated only during the last 2 decades following the discovery of the ionic permeability changes responsible for membrane excitation (*Hodgkin* and *Huxley* 1952). For methodological reasons we possess more detailed information concerning the effect of Na channel-gate toxins on nerve fibres and nerve cells in culture than on myocardial and other excitable cells. This review, therefore, includes a brief description of effects on the type of preparation which yielded most information on the mechanism of action at the level of Na channels. For in-depth information of the effects of toxins on Na channels, the reader is referred to the reviews by *Ulbricht* (1969, 1974), *Hille* (1970), *Narahashi* (1974), *Khodorov* (1979), *Ritchie* (1979), *Catterall* (1980), and *Lazdunski* et al. (1980), and to the original literature cited in connection with individual toxins.

This review deals with the direct cardiac effects of Na channel-gate toxins observed in isolated cardiac preparations. The main effects are a positive inotropic effect without a significant chronotropic effect and an arrhythmogenic effect. Early references to the direct cardiac effects of ceveratrum alkaloids are given in the reviews by *Krayer* and *Acheson* (1946) and *Trautwein* (1963). *Trautwein* (1963) also reviewed the literature concerning the cardiac effects of aconitine. The *Benforado* review (1967) includes a chapter on the direct cardiac effects of ceveratrum alkaloids and concludes that "the mechanism by which the veratrum alkaloids exert their positive inotropic action on the heart is not known". The last 15 years have brought considerable progress in our understanding of the basic membrane action of ceveratrum alkaloids and other Na channel-gate toxins and of the relationship between ion fluxes through the sarcolemma and myocardial force of contraction. Perhaps the most impressive result is that the large group of chemically diverse Na channel-gate toxins represents a single class of inotropic agents. They possess a characteristic mode of action that differs from that of other cardioactive drugs, e.g., cardioactive steroids, catecholamines, and other agents thought to act by influencing the cellular concentration of cyclic nucleotides.

In the intact animal organism, the direct cardiac effects of Na channel-gate toxins may not be recognized because of cardiovascular or cardiocardiac reflexes following the stimulation of sensory nerves by the toxins. The *Bezold-Jarisch* effect exemplifies this action for many ceveratrum

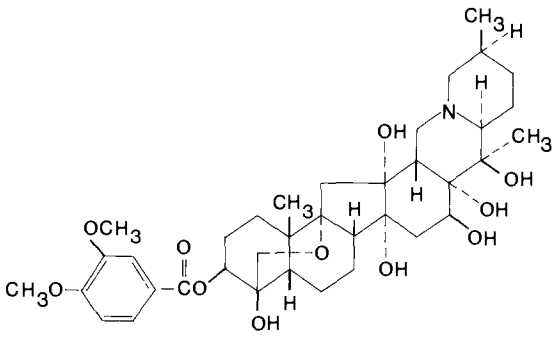
alkaloids (*Krayer* 1961). The hypotensive and other circulatory effects of ceveratrum alkaloids were reviewed by *Benforado* (1967), *Kupchan* and *Flacke* (1967), and *Krayer* and *Meilman* (1977). The older literature on this subject was surveyed by *Krayer* and *Acheson* (1946) in their comprehensive review of the pharmacology of veratrum alkaloids. Notably, certain Na channel-gate toxins lack a hypotensive effect; for example, some natural and semi-synthetic ceveratrum alkaloids (*Kupchan* and *Flacke* 1967) and at least one of the polypeptide toxins, namely anthopleurin A, which has a direct positive inotropic effect on the myocardium in conscious dogs (*Blair* et al. 1978).

2 Chemistry of Na Channel-Gate Toxins

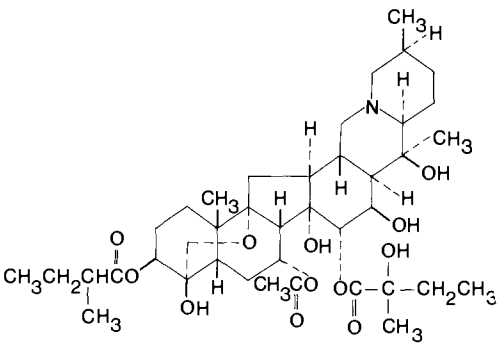
2.1 Alkaloids

2.1.1 Ceveratrum Alkaloids

The veratrum alkaloids are steroid alkaloids that occur in liliaceous plants belonging to the genera *Veratrum, Zygadenus, Stenanthium,* and *Schoenocaulon.* These genera comprise a section of the suborder *Melanthioideae* (*Kupchan* et al. 1961). The terms *ceveratrum* and *jerveratrum* alkaloids were introduced to distinguish two chemically and pharmacologically different groups of veratrum alkaloids (*Fieser* and *Fieser* 1959). The jerveratrum alkamines are secondary amines, contain only one to three atoms of oxygen, and are found in unhydrolyzed plant extracts in part as the free alkamines and in part in combination with one molecule of D-glucose as glucoalkaloids. Jerveratrum alkaloids do not prolong the open state of Na channels. Some jerveratrum alkaloids, such as veratramine, antagonize the effect of ceveratrum alkaloids (*Krayer* and *George* 1951), probably because they block Na channels (*Ohta* et al. 1973). The ceveratrum alkamines are tertiary amines, are highly hydroxylic, and contain seven to nine atoms of oxygen. They usually occur esterified with various acids as ester alkaloids, but are sometimes unconjugated. They have never been found as glycosides. The ceveratrum alkaloids can be formally derived from (22 S, 25 S)-5β-cevanine. Their chemistry has been reviewed by *Kupchan* and *By* (1968). The structures of the monoester veratridine and the triester germitrine are shown in Fig. 1. The name *veratrine* is usually used for the total alkaloids of the seeds of *Schoenocaulon officinale;* it does not refer to a well-defined preparation of constant composition (*Krayer* and *Acheson* 1946; *Kupchan* et al. 1961). The use of this and other mixtures of veratrum alkaloids for scientific purposes is discouraged. Jerveratrum alkaloids may antagonize the effect of ceveratrum



Veratridine



Germitrine

Fig. 1. Chemical structures of the ceveratrum alkaloids veratridine and germitrine. (Drawn after *Kupchan* and *By* 1968)

alkaloids, and there are more subtle differences between the effects of individual ceveratrum alkaloids (veratridine versus cevadine; *Reiter* 1963; veracevine and germine and their esters, Sect. 3.2; veratridine versus germitrine, Sect. 4.2.5).

2.1.2 Batrachotoxin

Batrachotoxin is the most toxic of the steroid alkaloids extracted from the skin of the Columbian arrow poison frog *(Phyllobates aurotaenia).* It is a pyrrolecarboxylate ester of the pregnane derivative batrachotoxinin A (*Tokuyama* et al. 1969).

2.1.3 Aconitine

Aconitine is the main alkaloid of *Aconitum napellus* of the plant family *Ranunculaceae* (*List* and *Hörhammer* 1969). Like the ceveratrum alkaloids, aconitine is an ester of an alkamine with organic acids. The alkamine,

aconine, contains two cyclopentane rings, one piperidine ring, and three cyclohexane rings. In aconitine, aconine is esterified with benzoic acid and acetic acid. The structure of aconitine was reported by *Wiesner* et al. (1969).

2.2 Diterpenoids

Gyanotoxins are the toxic principles found in the leaves of various species of *Rhododendron, Kalmia,* and *Leucothoe* (Ericaceae). They are diterpenoids with a perhydroazulene skeleton and their chemical structures have been determined (*Kakisawa* et al. 1965; *Kumazawa* and *Iriye* 1970).

2.3 Polypeptides

2.3.1 Scorpion Toxins

Toxins of North African scorpions were first purified, characterized, and sequenced by *Rochat, Miranda, Lissitzky,* and colleagues (*Miranda* et al. 1970; *Rochat* et al. 1970; *Kopeyan* et al. 1979). These toxins are basic polypeptides with molecular weights of approximately 7000. Each scorpion species studied contained multiple toxins having extensive sequence homology (*Rochat* et al. 1970). The molecular weight of toxin II from *Androctonus australis* HECTOR ($ScTX_{II}$) is 7249 (*Miranda* et al. 1970).

2.3.2 Sea Anemone Toxins

Anemone toxins were first isolated in pure form from *Anemonia sulcata,* shown to be basic polypeptides of 2500–5000 molecular weight and sequenced by *Béress, Wunderer,* and their colleagues (*Béress* et al. 1975a,b, 1977; *Wunderer* et al. 1976). The sequences of three toxins from *Anemonia sulcata* and one from *Anthopleura xanthogrammica* were determined (*Wunderer* et al. 1976; *Béress* et al. 1977; *Martinez* et al. 1977; *Wunderer* and *Eulitz* 1978; *Tanaka* et al. 1977). Toxins I and II from *Anemonia sulcata* and anthopleurin A from *Anthopleura xanthogrammica* consist of 47–49 amino acid residues and have substantial sequence homology. None of the anemone toxins has detectable sequence homology when compared to the scorpion toxins.

2.3.3 Coral Toxin

Goniopora toxin, a polypeptide with a molecular weight of 12 000, was isolated and purified from the coral *Goniopora* spp. (*Hashimoto* and *Ashida* 1973).

3 Mode of Action of Na Channel-Gate Toxins

3.1 Methods of Analysis

Different methods have been employed to study the effects of drugs on Na channels; electrophysiologic analysis of membrane voltage and membrane current, isotopic flux measurements of ion permeability, and direct binding studies of radiolabelled toxins. The results obtained with the latter two methods were recently reviewed (*Catterall* 1980), and have helped significantly to elucidate molecular aspects of the effects of toxins on the Na channel. The electrophysiologic approach, with its advantage of high time resolution, provides information allowing us to predict how the Na channel-gate toxins modify the transmembrane electrical activity of cells. This is particularly important for an understanding of the cardiac effect of these agents. The effects on the kinetics of Na channels are therefore reviewed in some detail. It has become customary to analyse the effects of drugs on Na channels in terms of the conceptualization introduced by *Hodgkin* and *Huxley* (1952) to describe the normal Na permeability changes in the squid giant axon. According to this theory, two voltage- and time-variant parameters, the activation variable m and the inactivation variable h, govern the changes of the Na permeability during excitation. The Na permeability is turned on because of an increase of m if the membrane is depolarized, and the turning off during maintained depolarization is due to a decrease of h. Repolarization turns off P_{Na} because of a decrease in m. This analysis was also used with some modifications to describe the behaviour of Na channels in other types of excitable cells, including cardiac cells (see *Trautwein* 1973). The hypothetical subunit of the Na channel, which gives adequate kinetics of opening and closing, is referred to as the gating mechanism, consisting of the m gate and the h gate.

3.2 Ceveratrum Alkaloids

The veracevine ester veratridine has received the most attention among the various ceveratrum alkaloids. A detailed analysis of the effect of veratridine on the frog node of Ranvier was performed by *Ulbricht* (1969, 1972a,b) using the voltage-clamp technique. Normally, the Na permeability of nerve fibres exhibits a fast and transient rise of about 1 ms duration during a voltage-clamp depolarization. In contrast, the P_{Na} observed in the veratridine-treated node, in addition to the normal Na permeability, develops over a period of several seconds during depolarization and is maintained as long as the membrane is clamped at the depolarized level.

The veratridine-induced P_{Na} was quantitatively described by introducing an activation variable s (analogous to m) exhibiting the potential- and time-dependence observed and by omitting an inactivation term corresponding to h (*Ulbricht* 1969). For a stepwise depolarization, the time course of s follows the equation $s_{(t)} = s_{(t=\infty)} (1 - e^{-t/\tau_s})$, where t is the time after the start of the depolarization and τ_s is a time constant. The time constant of activation of the veratridine-induced P_{Na} (τ_s) is of the order of seconds, i.e. about 10^4-times larger than τ_m, the time constant of the normal P_{Na} activation. The voltage-dependence of the veratridine-induced P_{Na} activation is less steep and shifted to more negative membrane potentials compared to that of normal P_{Na}.

Veratridine seems to modify some of those Na channels participating normally in the production of the action potential rather than to create new channels (*Ulbricht* 1969). This would explain why the appearance of the alkaloid-induced P_{Na} is accompanied by a decrease in the normal transient P_{Na}. Furthermore, normal and modified channels distinguish to comparable degrees between Na, Li, choline, and tromethamine, and both are blocked by TTX at rates and to extents that are very similar (*Ulbricht* 1974). The concentration of veratridine appears to determine the proportion of Na channels that is modified, while at the level of the single Na channel the interaction with veratridine appears to be a reversible all-or-none event (*Ulbricht* 1972a).

At concentrations exceeding about 10 µmol/litre veratridine induces a sustained depolarization of the node of Ranvier due to an increase in P_{Na} (*Ulbricht* 1969). It is caused by the two effects of veratridine on Na channels; block of inactivation and shift of activation to more negative potentials, thus allowing the spontaneous opening of Na channels at the level of the normal resting potential. Some pharmacologically important effects of veratridine occur at lower concentrations when the resting membrane potential shows very little, if any depolarization. At this stage of veratridine action, the presence of modified Na channels is apparent as a distinct delay in the final phase of repolarization of the action potential (after-depolarization). The effect reflects the large value of τ_s that determines the rate at which modified Na channels deactivate after repolarization (*Ulbricht* 1969). By this mechanism, veratridine greatly prolongs the phase of increased P_{Na} and Na influx associated with each action potential.

Other ceveratrum alkaloids are similar to veratridine in producing after-depolarizations in nerve fibres, but individual alkaloids differ with respect to duration (*Graham* and *Gasser* 1931; *Shanes* 1952; *Honerjäger* 1973). The alkamines germine and veracevine induce after-depolarizations of relatively short duration in crustacean nerve axons. The half-life of after-depolarization decay is 6–8 ms (*Honerjäger* 1973). In the same

study it was shown that number and nature of the ester groups attached to the alkamine modify the duration of after-depolarization. For example, replacement of the 3β-hydroxyl in veracevine by an acetyl (cevacine), angeloyl (cevadine), or veratroyl group (veratridine) causes a progressive prolongation of the after-depolarization up to about 3 s (half-life) in the case of veratridine. Even longer-lasting after-depolarizations were observed with the di-, tri-, and tetraester alkaloids in guinea-pig papillary muscle (Sect. 4.2.5). The semisynthetic germine ester germine-3-acetate produces an after-depolarization in curstacean nerve fibres that decays with a half-life of 40–70 ms. Voltage-clamp experiments on squid axons showed that this alkaloid induces a TTX-sensitive slow component of Na permeability (*Honerjäger* 1973). After repolarization this component of P_{Na} deactivates about 20-times faster than the P_{Na} induced by veratridine. This may indicate that all the various ceveratrum alkaloids react with Na channels, but differ in the degree to which they slow the *m*-gating process.

3.3 Batrachotoxin

A detailed voltage-clamp analysis carried out on the frog node of Ranvier showed that batrachotoxin alters both the gating mechanism and ion selectivity of Na channels (*Khodorov* and *Revenko* 1979). The Na channels lose the ability to inactivate, and the voltage-dependence of activation is shifted by about 50 mV to more negative voltages. Therefore, a fraction of Na channels is permanently activated at the normal level of resting potential, resulting in depolarization. The time constant of activation is also affected by batrachotoxin, but to a much lesser extent than by veratridine. Batrachotoxin increases the relative permeability of the Na channels toward larger ions, including Ca ions. This finding, by *Khodorov* and *Revenko* (1979), is of particular interest with regard to the positive inotropic effect on myocardial cells of batrachotoxin, as well as other Na channel-gate toxins (Chap. 4). If myocardial Na channels were to lose their ionic selectivity and become significantly permeable to Ca ions, this would explain a positive inotropic effect of the Na channel-gate toxins. It seems, however, that this effect of batrachotoxin on neural Na channels cannot be extended to cardiac Na channels, at least as far as the action of veratridine and $ScTX_{II}$ is concerned. The Ca influx induced by these Na channel-gate toxins in cardiac cells in culture does not occur through Na channels, but by way of Na-Ca exchange (Sect. 5.3.2).

Khodorov and *Revenko* (1979) further showed that the modification of Na channels by batrachotoxin requires a specific functional state of the Na channels, namely their open configuration. Thus the effect develops

much more rapidly if the node of Ranvier is stimulated repetitively in such a way that the Na channels are not inactivated by the holding potential and the pulses are large enough to activate Na channels. The concentration-effect relationship suggests that each channel receptor binds only one molecule of batrachotoxin. A study of the effect of batrachotoxin on the action potential of guinea-pig papillary muscle led to the same conclusion (Sect. 4.3.2).

3.4 Aconitine

The mode of action of aconitine on Na channels was elucidated in voltage-clamp experiments on the frog node of Ranvier (*Schmidt* and *Schmitt* 1974; *Mozhayeva* et al. 1977), and was found to be very similar to that of batrachotoxin. Aconitine-modified Na channels lose the property of inactivation and open at more negative potentials than the normal resting potential. These channels open with a time constant about twice as large as normal Na channels. As with batrachotoxin, the development of the effect is speeded up by periodical depolarizations if they lead to an activation of Na channels. This suggests that the open configuration of the Na channel gate is more favourable for the interaction with aconitine. Aconitine, like batrachotoxin, reduces the selectivity of Na channels for monovalent cations (*Mozhayeva* et al. 1977).

3.5 Grayanotoxins

Grayanotoxins have been found to depolarize the membranes of various excitable cells (see *Starkus* and *Narahashi* 1978). As shown on the squid giant axon, this is due to a selective and TTX-sensitive increase in resting P_{Na} (*Narahashi* and *Seyama* 1974). The effect of grayanotoxins on the time- and voltage-dependence of activation and inactivation of Na channels has not been published in detail.

3.6 Scorpion Toxins

Venom of *Leiurus quinquestriatus* delays the repolarization of the action potential, reduces the resting membrane potential and induces spontaneous activity in myelinated nerve fibres (*Adam* et al. 1966). Voltage-clamp experiments on the frog node of Ranvier showed that the main effect of the venom is to slow the inactivation of Na channels (*Koppenhöfer* and *Schmidt* 1968a,b). Venoms or toxins of other North African scorpions

(*Buthus thamulus, B. eupeus, Androctonus australis* HECTOR) have the same principal effect on nerve fibres (see *Khodorov* 1979). In the squid giant axon, which allows application of substances to either side of the axolemma, venom of *B. thamulus* is effective only if applied from the extracellular side (*Narahashi* et al. 1972). More recently, *Catterall* (1980) showed that a toxin purified from *L. quinquestriatus* venom increases the fraction of Na channels activated by veratridine, aconitine, or grayanotoxin I in cultured neuroblastoma cells: His findings indicate that scorpion toxin and the group of alkaloidal and diterpenoid toxins (lipid-soluble toxins) bind to separate receptor sites of the Na channel which interact allosterically.

In contrast to the venoms of North African scorpions, which modify Na inactivation, venom of the American scorpion *Centruroides sculpturatus* alters the activation gate without modifying the *h* gate in the frog node of Ranvier (*Cahalan* 1975). This venom causes a shift of the activation voltage-dependence by 40–50 mV in the hyperpolarizing direction, while the modification of the Na channel requires depolarization.

While many Na channel-gate toxins alter the function of isolated cardiac muscle by modifying sarcolemmal Na channels, scorpion toxins seem to act mainly by releasing neurotransmitters from intracardiac nerve fibres, i.e. by their effect on neural Na channels (Sect. 4.6).

3.7 Sea Anemone Toxins

3.7.1 Toxin II from Anemonia sulcata (ATX_{II})

In the crayfish giant axon, ATX_{II} has little or no effect on resting potential, but produces a marked prolongation of the falling phase of action potentials (*Rathmayer* and *Béress* 1976). As shown in the frog node of Ranvier, and crayfish giant axons, the main effect of ATX_{II} is to slow the rate of the Na channel inactivation (*Bergman* et al. 1976; *Romey* et al. 1976). The activation of Na channels is not markedly altered. The curve relating steady-state inactivation to membrane potential shows a decrease in slope under the influence of ATX_{II}, so that moderate depolarizations inactivate a larger than normal fraction of Na channels. The receptor for ATX_{II} does not seem to be accessible from inside the axolemma. Like scorpion toxin, ATX_{II} increases the fraction of Na channels modified by veratridine (*Catterall* 1980). Scorpion toxin and ATX_{II} appear to act at a common receptor site associated with the Na channel (*Catterall* 1980).

3.7.2 Anthopleurin A

Low concentrations of anthopleurin A produce slow transient depolarizations and a prolongation of the repolarization phase in the crayfish giant axon, while high concentrations induce a sustained depolarization (*Low* et al. 1979). Voltage-clamp experiments show that anthopleurin A alters the kinetics of Na channels (*Low* et al. 1979). Modified Na channels are activated at more negative membrane potentials, and the inactivation is slowed as is the removal of activation after repolarization.

3.8 Coral Toxin

Goniopora toxin prolongs the falling phase of the action potential in rabbit myocardium (*Fujiwara* et al. 1979), and this effect is abolished by TTX. This is so far the only available evidence indicating that the toxin slows the kinetics of Na channels.

3.9 Silent Na Channels

The basic effect of the various Na channel-gate toxins was discovered in excitable membranes that produce their action potential by the activation of Na channels. However, it is becoming increasingly evident that neither the presence of a Na channel-dependent mechanism of excitation, nor excitability as such are prerequisites for Na channel-gate toxins to cause the appearance of persistently activated Na channels. Veratridine opens Na channels in the pancreatic β-cell membrane which normally produces impulses by the activation of Ca channels (*Donatsch* et al. 1977). The action potential of chick embryonic heart cells in an early stage of development is due to the activation of TTX-insensitive, slow Na-Ca channels. Nevertheless, veratridine depolarizes these cells and the effect is blocked by TTX (*Sperelakis* and *Pappano* 1969; *Bernard* and *Couraud* 1979; *Romey* et al. 1980). Polypeptide toxins also produce bioelectric effects that are blocked by TTX in slow cells of the chick embryo heart (*Bernard* and *Couraud* 1979; *Romey* et al. 1980). These effects are described in detail in Chap. 4. Veratridine produces a TTX-sensitive depolarization in non-spiking sensory dendrites of the crab (*Lowe* et al. 1978). In an inexcitable cell line derived from a rat brain tumor, veratridine or polypeptide toxins open TTX-sensitive Na channels (*Romey* et al. 1979). When exposed to Na channel-gate toxins, fibroblasts exhibit an increased uptake of Na that is blocked by TTX (*Munson* et al. 1979; *Pouysségur* et al. 1980). There are conflicting reports as to whether Na channel-gate toxins open Na channels in glial cells (*Villegas* et al. 1976; *Tang* et al. 1979).

As it is highly unlikely that the Na channel-gate toxins create Na-selective and TTX-sensitive ionic channels in these membranes, it is generally assumed that Na channels pre-exist in a state which under normal conditions precludes their electrical activation. The term silent Na channels has been suggested by *Romey* et al. (1979). If these Na channels were in a state characterized by faster inactivation kinetics than activation kinetics, this would explain why they are normally electrically silent, but able to open in the presence of a toxin that specifically slows the inactivation (*Romey* et al. 1979).

3.10 Antagonists

3.10.1 Non-Competitive Antagonists

TTX and STX are potent and selective blockers of Na channels and they have no other known action (*Narahashi* 1974). TTX and STX also block the flow of Na ions through Na channels modified by Na channel-gate toxins, and thus are specific antagonists of Na channel-gate toxins. The blockers and the gate toxins modify different properties of the Na channel. TTX and STX, in partially blocking concentrations, reduce the total available Na permeability, but do not alter the kinetics of the unblocked Na channels. In contrast, the gate toxins alter the kinetic (m and/or h) behaviour of the Na channels. This difference suggests different receptor sites at the Na channel for blockers and gate toxins respectively, and thus a non-competitive type of antagonism. *Catterall* (1975) investigated the nature of this antagonism by using the initial rate of Na influx into cultured neuroblastoma cells to quantify the effect of veratridine or batrachotoxin. He has shown that activation of Na influx by the Na channel-gate toxins is non-competitively inhibited by TTX. Further proof that the receptors for TTX and Na channel-gate toxins are not identical was obtained in experiments on the specific binding of labelled TTX to nerve membrane preparations. This binding (and that of labelled STX) was unaffected even by high concentrations of Na channel-gate toxins (see *Catterall* 1980).

Although the TTX-sensitivity of biological effects points to the involvement of Na channels, there are some instances in which the lack of sensitivity to TTX does not rule out the participation of Na channels. Examples of cells possessing TTX-insensitive Na channels are denervated skeletal muscle fibres (*Redfern* et al. 1970) and giant neurons of the snail *Helix aspersa* (*Chamberlain* and *Kerkut* 1969). These TTX-insensitive Na channels are susceptible to the action of Na channel-gate toxins such as veratridine (*Leicht* et al. 1971) or batrachotoxin (*Albuquerque* and *Warnick* 1972).

Normal Na channels and those modified by veratrine are blocked by the local anaesthetic lidocaine (frog node of Ranvier; *Hille* 1968). Lidocaine and tetracaine inhibit veratridine-induced Na uptake by embryonic cardiac cells (*Fosset* et al. 1977).

An increase in external Ca concentration is known to reduce the depolarizing effect of veratridine (*Ulbricht* 1969). To understand this antagonism it is necessary to recall the effect of external Ca ions on normal Na channels. An increase in $[Ca]_o$ shifts the voltage dependence of both activation and inactivation to less negative membrane potentials (*Frankenhaeuser* and *Hodgkin* 1957). Varatridine-modified Na channels lose the inactivation gate, but their activation gate is similarly sensitive to changes of $[Ca]_o$ as that of normal Na channels (frog node of Ranvier; *Ulbricht* 1969). Thus, increasing $[Ca]_o$ at a given level of depolarization reduces the fraction of activated veratridine-modified Na channels and may lead to repolarization. This may also explain why concentrations of external Ca higher than 2 mmol/litre inhibit the veratridine-induced Na uptake by embryonic cardiac cells (*Fosset* et al. 1977). It is not necessary to assume a specific, e.g. competitive, interaction between Ca ions and veratridine to account for this antagonism. However, the inhibition by external Ca ions of the veratridine-induced Na influx into neuroblastoma cells (*Catterall* 1975) and cardiac cells in culture (*Galper* and *Catterall* 1979) appears to be of the competitive type.

3.10.2 Competitive Antagonists

The clarification of a pharmacological antagonism usually requires establishing complete concentration-effect relationships in systems where the effect is a more or less direct measure of the degree of receptor occupancy by the drug. In the case of Na channel-gate toxins, *Catterall* (1975) was the first to obtain complete concentration-effect relationships for their effect on Na permeability by using the stimulation of ^{22}Na influx in cultured neuroblastoma cells. With this system he showed that there are competitive interactions among veratridine, batrachotoxin, aconitine, and grayanotoxin I (see *Catterall* 1980). The effect of saturating concentrations of batrachotoxin is *reduced* by each of the other lipid-soluble toxins, suggesting that batrachotoxin is a full agonist, whereas veratridine, aconitine, and grayanotoxin are partial agonists acting at a common receptor site of the Na channel. A competitive antagonist without noticeable intrinsic effect on the Na channels has apparently not yet been found.

4 Cardiac Action of Na Channel-Gate Toxins

4.1 Role of Na Channels in the Cardiac Action Potential

4.1.1 Na Channels in Different Cell Types of the Heart

During the last 15 years the application of voltage-clamp techniques to cardiac tisssues has provided much information on the transmembrane ionic currents underlying the action potential of cardiac cells, which is important for an understanding of the cardiac action of Na channel-gate toxins. The reader is referred to the reviews by *Trautwein* (1973) and *Reuter* (1979) and to the articles by *McAllister* et al. (1975) and by *Beeler* and *Reuter* (1977). In the case of mammalian *ventricular* myocardium, the action potential has been shown to result from the sequential and transient activation of a fast inward Na current (I_{Na}), a secondary, slow inward current carried by Ca and Na ions, (I_{si}), and an outward K current (I_K) (*Trautwein* 1973; *Reuter* and *Scholz* 1977; *McDonald* and *Trautwein* 1978). The fast P_{Na} system responsible for I_{Na} is very similar to that of nerve cells and the term Na channels, originally applied to the ionic pathwahs of the Na conductance mechanism of nerve cells (*Hille* 1970), is now also used for that of cardiac cells (*Hondeghem* and *Katzung* 1977). The rapid upstroke of the action potential is caused by the rapid increase of I_{Na}, and the first time derivative of membrane potential during the upstroke ($\dot{V}$) provides an indirect estimate of I_{Na} (*Reuter* 1979; *Walton* and *Fozzard* 1979). The electrotonic current resulting from the potential change during the upstroke is the stimulus for excitation of adjacent cells. Therefore, I_{Na} is the basis for conduction of the action potential, and conduction velocity is largely determined by the $\dot{V}_{max}$ of the action potential. I_{Na} subsides completely within a few milliseconds after its activation, but the membrane potential remains at a positive level because of the now-apparent activation of I_{si}. The subsequent repolarization process is determined by the inactivation of I_{si} and the activation of I_K. As in ventricular myocardial cells, a fast, inward Na current is responsible for the upstroke of the action potential in *Purkinje* fibres and *atrial* muscle fibres (*Trautwein* 1973). The action potential of Purkinje fibres exhibits a higher value of $\dot{V}_{max}$ than the fibres of the working myocardium. This allows the Purkinje fibre to play its physiological role in distributing excitation, leading to the nearly simultaneous contraction of the different parts of the ventricles. In Purkinje fibres, I_{Na} is *not* completely inactivated after the upstroke and participates in the ionic currents flowing during the plateau phase (*Attwell* et al. 1979). Thus, the action potential duration of Purkinje fibres, but not of ventricular muscle fibres, is markedly shortened by the specific Na channel blocker TTX

(*Coraboeuf* et al. 1979). The slowly rising action potentials of cells of the *sinoatrial node* are insensitive to TTX (*Yamagishi* and *Sano* 1966) indicating that Na channels are not involved in producing the rising phase of the action potential. Yet the presence of Na channels in this cell type is indicated by the observation that hyperpolarization of pacemaker cells by application of carbachol produces an increase in $\dot{V}_{max}$ of the action potential that is entirely suppressed by TTX (*Kreitner* 1975). Hyperpolarization by the voltage-clamp technique also reveals a fast Na current that is inactivated by depolarization and blocked by TTX (*Noma* et al. 1977). The upstroke of the action potential of *atrioventricular nodal* fibres shows two components (*Ruiz-Ceretti* and *Ponce Zumino* 1976). The first of these is attributed to the activation of Na channels because it depends strongly on $[Na]_o$ and is inhibited by TTX. Its relatively low $\dot{V}_{max}$ of about 13 V/s is accounted for by the low resting potential of nodal cells causing inactivation of the Na channels. The voltage-dependence of $\dot{V}_{max}$ of atrioventricular nodal action potentials corresponds to that of Na channels (*Shigeto* and *Irisawa* 1974). The second component of the action-potential upstroke is attributed to the slow inward current (*Ruiz-Ceretti* and *Ponce Zumino* 1976).

In summary, electrophysiologic experiments revealed the presence of Na channels in the plasmalemma of cells of the sinoatrial and atrioventricular nodes, atrial and ventricular myocardium, and of Purkinje fibres. Na channel gate toxins are expected to modify the electrical activity of all cells possessing Na channels unless the Na channels lack the pharmacologic receptor for alteration of the gating mechanism by the toxin.

The effects of Na channel-gate toxins on membrane currents of cardiac cells under voltage-clamp conditions are largely unknown. However, there is substantial indirect evidence obtained by intracellular potential recording suggesting that these toxins affect the kinetics of I_{Na} in a way similar to their effect on neural Na channels. A slowing of I_{Na} inactivation, as produced in the nerve membrane by sea anemone or scorpion toxins, or the removal of inactivation combined with a slowing of activation in a fraction of Na channels, as produced by veratridine in the node of Ranvier, would add a component of Na current to the membrane currents flowing during the plateau and repolarization phases of the cardiac action potential. This should drive the membrane potential from the normal level determined by the balance of I_{si} and I_K towards the equilibrium potential for Na ions (approx. + 50 mV) until the delayed inactivation of the modified Na channels and normal repolarizing mechanisms allow a return of the membrane potential to the normal resting level. Indeed, a prolongation of the repolarization phase is the characteristic effect on cardiac cells of many Na channel-gate toxins. Strong evidence for a selective modification of I_{Na} by these agents is the prevention of

their effect on the action potential in Na-poor medium or in the presence of TTX, i.e. under conditions where I_{Na} is absent and the action potential occurs through the activation of I_{si}.

4.1.2 Delayed Repolarization and Oscillatory After-Potentials

The repolarization of the cardiac action potential proceeds in certain phases that are affected differently by individual Na channel-gate toxins. The first or early phase of repolarization to be distinguished in Purkinje fibres occurs immediately after the rapid upstroke and extends from the spike to the beginning of the plateau phase. This early repolarization, which is absent or much less pronounced in atrial and ventricular muscle fibres, has received scant attention in the study of Na channel-gate toxins and seems to be little affected by these agents (*Schmidt* 1960; *Heistracher* and *Pillat* 1962; *Hogan* and *Albuquerque* 1971; *Arbel* et al. 1975; *Shimizu* et al. 1979). The early phase of repolarization is followed by the plateau phase and a phase of rapid repolarization during which the resting potential level is approached. In purely descriptive terms, there are two ways in which the course of repolarization following the plateau phase may be prolonged, and Na channel-gate toxins can be classified on this basis. First, repolarization can be slowed by a prolongation of the plateau phase, i.e., by a broadening of the action potential at nearly all potential levels between the peak of the plateau potential and the resting potential. Second, repolarization can be slowed, more or less abruptly, at any point during the fast phase of repolarization which follows the plateau phase; the latter and a variable, initial part of the former then remain unaffected. This second modification is usually called depolarizing after-potential or after-depolarization. These terms should replace the term negative after-potential (e.g., Fig. 1 in *Shanes* 1958), which was introduced when electrical activity was measured with extracellular electrodes. The intracellular potential is changed in the positive direction during an after-depolarization.

It should be noted that a slowing of the rate of repolarization may have either an *anti-arrhythmic* or an *arrhythmogenic* effect, depending upon the level of membrane potential at which the slowing occurs. A broadening of the plateau phase at near-zero membrane potential, where both I_{Na} and I_{si} are inactivated in the course of the action potential and unable to recover from inactivation, will make the cell refractory against premature action potentials for as long as the membrane is kept at this depolarized level. If, however, the rate of repolarization is slowed at more negative levels of membrane potential (negative to about -20 mV), spontaneuous action potentials often arise from the prolonged repolarization phase (*Cranefield* 1977). This is probably the most important cause

of the arrhythmias produced by Na channel-gate toxins. The coupling interval and the shape of the triggered action potential depend on the recovery kinetics of I_{Na} and I_{si} during the after-depolarization. As shown by *Gettes* and *Reuter* (1974) this recovery is voltage dependent, the time constant for recovery of $\dot{V}_{max}$ increasing from less than 20 ms at −80 mV to more than 100 ms at −60 mV. When the membrane is further depolarized to −9 mV, I_{Na} is completely inactivated and the time constant for recovery of I_{si} increases from about 60 ms to about 250 ms. The critical toxin-induced prolongation of the repolarization phase which leads to re-excitation will therefore depend on the level of membrane potential at which the individual agent slows repolarization. In the case of aconitine (see following sections), which slows repolarization at about −60 mV, triggered activity occurs as soon as the action potential is prolonged by only about 30 ms (cat papillary muscle; *Heistracher* and *Pillat* 1962). In contrast, veratridine (see following sections), which prolongs the repolarization phase already at −20 mV, induces spontaneous activity after prolonging the action potential by more than 400 ms (guinea-pig papillary muscle; *Honerjäger* and *Reiter* 1975).

After-depolarizations, which result from a delay of the repolarization process, have to be distinguished from *oscillatory after-potentials,* which occur after the membrane has repolarized completely (*Bozler* 1943; *Ferrier* 1977). The latter phenomenon is frequently observed in cardiac cells under conditions of Ca overload and in association with after-contractions (*Reiter* 1962; *Kaufmann* et al. 1963). Oscillatory after-potentials result from an oscillatory inward current that is thought to be triggered by a phasic release of Ca ions from an intracellular store (*Kass* et al. 1978a,b). Thus, an oscillatory Ca release from an intracellular store is regarded as the cause for both after-contractions and oscillatory after-potentials. *Kass* et al. (1978b) suggested that the oscillatory inward current may represent either the flow of cations through a non-selective ion channel or the inward movement of Na ions via an alectrogenic Na-Ca exchange mechanism activated by the rise in free intracellular Ca concentration. Although oscillatory after-potentials are inhibited by the specific Na channel blocker TTX (*Kass* et al. 1978b; *Rosen* and *Danilo* 1980), oscillatory after-potentials are not likely to be mediated by a delayed reopening of Na channels. The work by *Kass* et al. (1978b) suggests that any intervention which suppresses the intracellular Ca release responsible for the oscillatory after-potentials will also inhibit oscillatory after-potentials. TTX has a negative inotropic action (Sect. 4.2.5) and may thus inhibit oscillatory after-potentials indirectly by reducing intracellular Ca release.

Cranefield (1977) has extended the term after-depolarization to include oscillatory after-potentials. He distinguishes between "early after-depolari-

zations", which interrupt the repolarization phase of the action potential, and "delayed after-depolarizations", which follow complete repolarization.

4.2 Ceveratrum Alkaloids

4.2.1 Sinoatrial Node

There are no reports on the effects of ceveratrum alkaloids on intracellular potentials in the sinoatrial node, but there is some information on the effects on atrial rate in the dog heart-lung preparation and in isolated guinea-pig atria. *Benforado* (1957) investigated the effects of nine ceveratrium ester alkaloids (veratridine, cevadine, veratroylzygadenine, vanilloylzygadenine, germbudine, neogermitrine, germitetrine, protoveratrine A, and protoveratrine B) on the dog heart-lung preparation by means of electrocardiographic (ECG) recording. Only cevadine produced a consistent chronotropic effect, i.e. a sinus tachycardia. The general lack of chronotropic activity shows clearly that the marked bradycardia seen following administration of ester alkaloids to the intact animal has no direct cardiac component (*Benforado* 1957). The mechanism of the positive chronotropic effect of cevadine is unknown. Cevine, the 3-α-hydroxyl isomer of the alkamine veracevine, causes a bradycardia in the dog heart-lung preparation (*Moe* and *Krayer* 1943) by an unknown mechanism. Germine-3-acetate (31–540 μmol/litre) has a positive chronotropic effect on isolated guinea-pig atrium that is abolished by 0.5 μmol/litre propranolol (*Seifen* 1969). This may indicate that germine-3-acetate affects the sinoatrial node by releasing catecholamines from intracardiac nerve fibres.

4.2.2 Atrium

Horackova and *Vassort* (1973, 1974) analysed the effect of the alkaloid mixture veratrine (veratrine sulphate, Sigma) on small atrial bundles of the frog heart. They used the double sucrose-gap technique to record both membrane potential and membrane current under membrane-potential control. Veratrine prolongs the repolarization phase of the action potential, which agrees with the earlier findings that veratrine and one of its constituents, cevadine, prolong the action potential in isolated dog and rat atrial tissue (*Brooks* et al. 1955; *Matsuda* et al. 1953). The addition of TTX (3 μmol/litre) completely suppresses the effect of veratrine on the action potential of frog atrial preparations. Under voltage-clamp conditions, veratrine prolongs the phase of inward current associated with moderate step depolarizations from the normal resting potential, and this induced inward current decays only slowly after repolarization

(inward "tail" current). The veratrine-induced inward current is abolished by TTX (3 μmol/litre), and veratrine fails to modify the remaining inward current (I_{si}) if external Na ions are replaced by sucrose. If Na ions are replaced by Li, veratrine increases inward current, as in the presence of external NA. These findings indicate that veratrine prolongs the open state of Na channels in frog atrial fibres. During a depolarizing pulse, the decay of I_{Na} is slowed by veratrine, indicating that the *h* gate closes more slowly in a fraction of Na channels. In the modified channels, the time constant of inactivation (τ_h) during depolarization by 40 mV from the normal resting potential is increased to 1.1–1.9 s (18°–20°C), i.e. by 3 orders of magnitude. There is no obvious effect on the activation of Na channels upon depolarization, but the removal of activation after repolarization is slowed, as indicated by the inward tail currents that decline exponentially with time constants of 0.4–0.7 s. This shows that veratrine has little or no effect on the rate constant α_m, but markedly reduces β_m [1]. These effects are not identical to the effect of veratridine on Na channels in the frog node of Ranvier (Sect. 3.2), although in both types of cells, veratridine and veratrine, respectively, increase the Na inward current associated with the action potential. In the frog node of Ranvier, veratridine diminishes both α_m and β_m, i.e, τ_m is increased during depolarization as well as after repolarization [2]. Furthermore, veratridine completely removes inactivation in the neural Na channels. It is not clear whether this discrepancy reflects a genuine difference between neural and myocardial Na channels or whether the cardiac effects are due to ceveratrum alkaloids other than veratridine present in the alkaloidal mixture veratrine.

Horackova and *Vassort* (1973, 1974) were the first to show that the effect on sarcolemmal P_{Na} and the positive inotropic effect of veratrine are intimately linked. They found that the positive inotropic effect is abolished by TTX (3 μmol/litre), which also blocks the veratrine-induced prolongation of the action potential. The positive inotropic effect of veratrine on frog atrial muscle develops during identical repetitive depolarizations under voltage-clamp conditions indicating that it is related to the change of membrane *current* and not to the veratrine-induced alteration of the duration of the action *potential*. As shown by *Horackova* and *Vassort* (1974) the veratrine-induced Na inward current does not lead to an increase in the rate of force development of the *simultaneous* contraction within a given excitation-contraction cycle. In a previously resting

1 α_m and β_m are the *rate* constants for the activation and deactivation, respectively, of the *m* gate of the Na channels (*Hodgkin* and *Huxley* 1952). These rate constants are related to the *time* constant of the *m* gate by the equation $\tau_m = 1/(\alpha_m + \beta_m)$

2 *Ulbricht* (1969) uses the symbols α_s and β_s for the veratridine-modified Na channels

veratrine-treated muscle, the positive inotropic effect appears only during the course of several excitations above a critical frequency. This shows that the bioelectric and positive inotropic effect of veratrine are linked by a slowly responding accumulative process (Sect. 4.2.5). All the findings suggest that veratrine increases the force of contraction by increasing the intracellular Na concentration through its effect on the Na channels. An intracellular accumulation of Na ions is expected to activate Na-Ca exchange (Chap. 5) which could explain the positive inotropic effect.

4.2.3 Atrioventricular Node

There are no reports on the effect of ceveratrum alkaloids on the transmembrane electrical activity of cells of the atrioventricular node. Using extracellular recording electrodes, *Swain* and *McCarthy* (1957) studied the effect of ceveratrum alkaloids on atrioventricular conduction in the dog heart-lung preparation. Veratrine, its main constituents veratridine and cevadine, and protoveratrine (a mixture of the protoveratrines A and B) each slow atrioventricular conduction. In the case of veratrine this effect is particularly pronounced at high frequencies, while at low frequencies veratrine may even accelerate atrioventricular conduction. At high frequencies the effect of veratrine is characterized by alternation of atrioventricular conduction time. The spontaneous firing rate of the atrioventricular node recorded after elimination of the activity of the sinoatrial node is enhanced by protoveratrine.

4.2.4 Purkinje Fibres

Arbel et al. (1975) studied the effect of veratrine (Sigma) on the isolated ventricular conduction system of the dog heart with intracellular microelectrodes. They found that superfusion of Purkinje fibres in the right bundle branch with solution containing 0.1–1 μg/ml veratrine causes a slowing of repolarization that affects the plateau phase and terminal repolarization phase of the action potential. The latter effect may result in the appearance of a distinct after-depolarization. Higher veratrine concentrations induce oscillatory responses superimposed on the prolonged repolarization phase. The after-depolarization was followed in some experiments by a slight hyperpolarization. The prolonging effect on the repolarization phase is reversed by washout with veratrine-free solution. In ventricular muscle cells of the anterior papillary muscle dissected together with the bundle branch, the prolongation of the action potential by veratrine is less, both in absolute units and if related to the control duration, than that recorded simultaneously from Purkinje fibres.

The effect on repolarization is interpreted as resulting from the persistent activation of Na channels because it is inhibited by TTX (0.3–3 μmol/litre). *Arbel* et al. (1975) note that TTX abolished the effect of veratrine on repolarization at a time when the Purkinje fibre is still excitable, indicating that at least a major fraction of the normal Na channels that mediate the upstroke of the action potential is not blocked by that concentration of TTX. One might thus conclude that the Na channels activated by veratrine are more sensitive to TTX than normal Na channels. In this context it is of interest that even during the normal action potential of Purkinje fibres, a component of persistent and TTX-sensitive Na current was detected (*Attwell* et al. 1979); this explains why TTX has a marked shortening effect on the normal action potential of Purkinje fibres (*Coraboeuf* et al. 1979). It appears that, in the absence (*Coraboeuf* et al. 1979) as well as in the presence of veratrine (*Arbel* et al. 1975), the effect of TTX on the repolarization phase requires lower concentrations than its inhibitory effect on the rate of rise of the action potential. As pointed out by *Attwell* et al. (1979), such a differential sensitivity does not necessarily indicate that the Na channels activated during upstroke of the action potential and those activated during the plateau phase differ in their sensitivity to TTX. Rather, the blockade of the same small fraction of Na channels by TTX may result in a larger effect on action potential duration than on upstroke velocity, if the small fraction of the Na current blocked by TTX is a large fraction of the *net* inward membrane current flowing during the plateau phase. Thus, the different sensitivity to TTX of the two phases of the action potential might be due to the fact that the upstroke is almost entirely the result of net inward Na current through Na channels, whereas during the plateau a considerable fraction of the inward ionic current is balanced by outward K current. This consideration applies equally to the situation when the action potential is prolonged by Na channel-gate toxins. It is therefore not necessary to postulate that veratrine activates an additional population of Na channels differing by an abnormally high sensitivity to TTX from normal Na channels responsible for the upstroke of the action potential. In the frog node of Ranvier, normal and veratridine-modified Na channels were identical in their sensitivity to TTX (*Ulbricht* 1974).

Veratridine (0.1 μmol/litre) has recently been shown to increase the force of contraction of canine Purkinje fibres stimulated at 1 Hz (*Vassalle* and *Bhattacharyya* 1980). The positive inotropic effect, as well as the prolongation of the action potential observed in the same study, are antagonized by the local anaesthetics procaine or benzocaine.

4.2.5 Ventricular Muscle

Although the direct positive inotropic effect of ceveratrum alkaloids had already been discovered at the beginning of this century (see *Krayer* and *Acheson* 1946), analytical and quantitative studies of this effect were performed only in recent years (*Reiter* 1963; *Koch-Weser* 1966; *Horackova* and *Vassort* 1973, 1974; *Honerjäger* and *Reiter* 1975, 1977a; *Honerjäger* 1977, 1980). An understanding of the cardiac effects of these alkaloids was only possible after *Ulbricht* (1969) had shown that veratridine alters the Na channels of the excitable membrane. Detailed information on the effects of individual ceveratrum alkaloids on ventricular myocardium was obtained in the isolated isometrically contracting papillary muscle of the guinea pig (*Honerjäger* and *Reiter* 1975, 1977a; *Honerjäger* 1977, 1980).

In this section, various aspects of the positive inotropic effect are described including the concentration-effect relationships, the modifications of individual phases of the isometric contraction curve and the differentiation of the direct from a neurally mediated positive inotropic effect. Effects on transmembrane electrical activity are also described. Finally, the mechanism of positive inotropic action is discussed, as well as arguments suggesting that the positive inotropic effect is an indirect consequence of the modification of sarcolemmal Na channels leading to increased Na influx, intracellular Na accumulation and increased Na-Ca exchange.

Positive Inotropic Effect

The positive inotropic effect of ceveratrum alkaloids on the isometrically suspended guinea-pig papillary muscle results from an increase in the *rate* of force development, while the time to peak force is unaltered or slightly shortened (Figs. 2, 3). The term klinotropic was introduced to denote influences on the steepness of the contraction curve (*Bohnenkamp* 1922; *Reiter* 1972a). The positive inotropic effect of ceveratrum alkaloids is thus of the positive klinotropic type. With respect to their influence on the relaxation phase, two types of effect can be distinguished. Veratridine (Fig. 2), as well as cevadine (*Reiter* 1963; *Honerjäger* 1977), veracevine, zygadenine, and veratroylzygadenine (*Honerjäger* 1977) markedly prolong relaxation time and thereby total contraction time. In contrast, no major effect on total contraction time is observed under the influence of germitrine (Fig. 3), other germine di- and triesters or the protoveratrines A and B (*Honerjäger* 1977). This varied effect on the relaxation phase is probably due to the different modifications of the repolarization phase by these alkaloids. Furthermore, TTX inhibits the effect of veratridine on relaxation in addition to that on the repolarization phase suggesting a causal connection (see Fig. 9). A direct effect on the rate of Ca sequestration by sarcoplasmic reticulum thus seems to be ruled out.

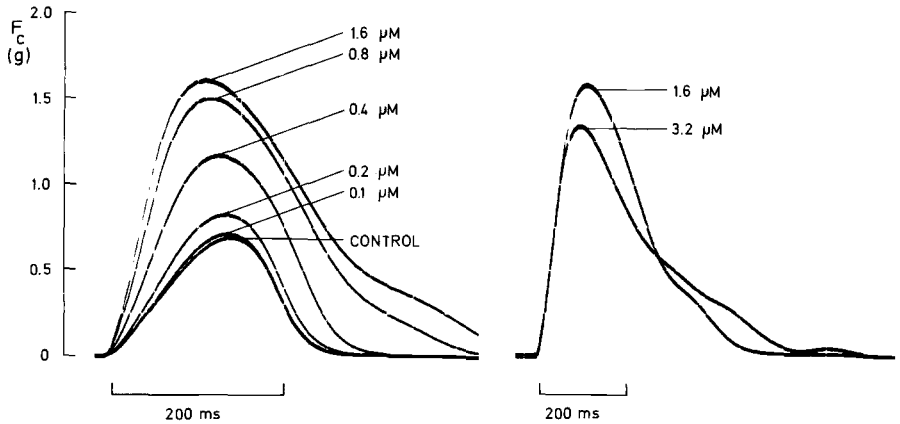


Fig. 2. The positive inotropic effect of veratridine. Isometric contraction records from an isolated guinea-pig papillary muscle contracting at 1 Hz and exposed to cumulatively increasing concentrations of veratridine. Note the prolongation of the relaxation phase. (From *Honerjäger* and *Reiter* 1975)

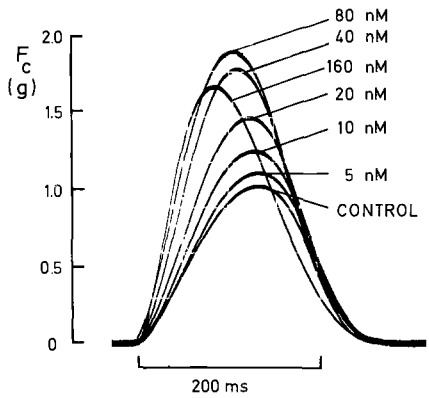


Fig. 3. The positive inotropic effect of germitrine. Isometric contraction records from an isolated guinea-pig papillary muscle contracting at 1 Hz and exposed to cumulatively increasing concentrations of germitrine. Note that this ceveratrum alkaloid does not markedly alter the duration of contraction. (From *Honerjäger* and *Reiter* 1977a, by permission of American Heart Association)

Indeed, veratridine (1 µmol/l to 1 mmol/l) is reportedly without effect on Ca uptake by sarcoplasmic reticulum isolated from rabbit skeletal muscle (*Johnson* and *Inesi* 1969).

The positive inotropic activity resides in the alkamine part of the ceveratrum alkaloids, but esterification increases the potency. The alkamines zygadenine and veracevine (each at 0.5 mmol/litre) produce a positive inotrpic effect, while germine (0.8 mmol/litre) and protoverine (5 mmol/litre) are inactive (*Honerjäger* 1977). Graded, steady-state positive inotropic effects can be obtained with different concentrations of ceveratrum alkaloids, suggesting a reversible binding reaction with the receptor for the positive inotropic effect. In fact, the positive inotropic effect of

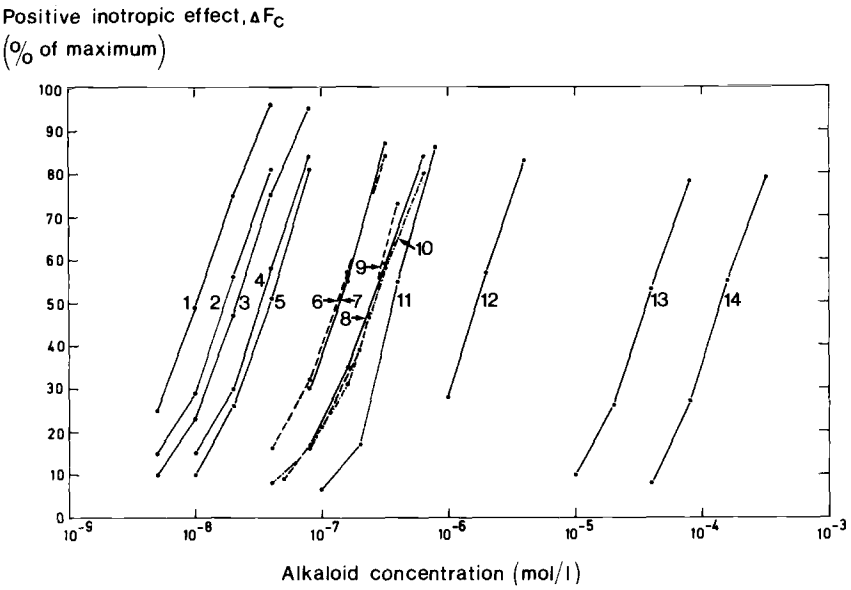


Fig. 4. Concentration-effect relationships for the positive inotropic effect of cevera-trum ester alkaloids: *Abscissa,* molar concentration of alkaloid, logarithmic scale; *ordinate,* positive inotropic effect expressed as percent of the maximum increase in force of contraction obtained with each alkaloid. Means of at least six guinea-pig papillary muscles for each alkaloid (SEM $< 7\%$).Germitetrine (1), protoveratrine A (2), germitrine (3), protoveratrine B (4), neogermitrine (5), desacetylgermitetrine (6), germerine (7), germbudine (8), veratroylzygadenine (9), neogermbudine (10), vera-tridine (11), cevadine (12), zygacine (13), and germine-3-acetate (14). (From *Honer-jäger* 1977)

veratridine disappears during washout with alkaloid-free medium, although only very slowly (*Honerjäger* and *Reiter* 1975). The concentration-depen-dence of the positive inotropic effect obtained with 14 different cevera-trum ester alkaloids is shown in Fig. 4. The absolute maximum increase in force of contraction, corrected for cross-sectional area of individual muscles, does not differ significantly among the various alkaloids. The concentration-effect relationships are nearly parallel and relatively steep. Each curve extends over approximately 1.5 logarithmic units. The con-centration-effect relationship for the increase of P_{Na} by veratridine is less steep and compatible with a reversible one-to-one binding reaction between veratridine molecules and the receptor at the Na channel (*Catte-rall* 1975). Presumably, the concentration-effect curve for the positive inotropic effect of ceveratrum alkaloids is limited by the capacity of the muscle to increase force development and not by the ability of cevera-trum alkaloids to increase sarcolemmal P_{Na} (*Honerjäger* and *Reiter* 1975, 1977a). The maximum positive inotropic effect of veratridine and

germitrine was found to be 68% and 81%, respectively, of that of the cardioactive steroid dihydro-ouabain tested on the same papillary muscle (*Honerjäger* and *Reiter* 1975, 1977a).

Like other depolarizing interventions, veratridine causes a release of noradrenaline from intracardiac adrenergic nerve endings (*Moss* et al. 1974). The release is mainly of the exocytotic type (*Thoa* et al. 1975; *Ross* and *Kelder* 1979). In addition, veratridine has a TTX-resistant, reserpine-like noradrenaline-depleting effect on the storage vesicles, but this effect does not normally lead to increased release of noradrenaline from the nerve ending (*Bönisch* et al. 1980). The positive inotropic effect of ceveratrum alkaloids, including veratridine, persists in muscles that have been depleted of noradrenaline by reserpine pretreatment (*Koch-Weser* 1966; *Honerjäger* and *Reiter* 1975, 1977a). This argues against the participation of a neural mechanism in the positive inotropic action under normal conditions (1 Hz contraction frequency). In contrast, concentrations of veratridine or cevadine exceeding those maximally effective at a frequency of 1 Hz increase the force of the rested-state contraction entirely by a neurally mediated mechanism (*Honerjäger* 1980). This positive inotropic effect is absent in the presence of a neuroactive, but not yet cardioactive concentration of TTX (100 nmol/litre) and in muscles from reserpine-pretreated animals. It is inhibited by 50 nmol/litre (−)propranolol, but not by the same concentration of the dextrorotatory enantiomer. The concentration-effect relationships for the direct and the neurally mediated positive inotropic effect of veratridine are illustrated in Fig. 5. While all these findings demonstrate that ceveratrum alkaloids affect isolated ventricular mammalian myocardium normally by a direct myotropic action, *Basseches* and *Bianchi* (1976) conclude, on the basis of their experiments on the perfused frog ventricle, that veratridine acts by enhancing transmitter release from cholinergic and adrenergic nerve fibres. The discrepancy may in part be due to the fact that *Basseches* and *Bianchi* (1976) used a field stimulus on their preparations which also excited both cholinergic and adrenergic nerve terminals. Under these conditions the frog ventricle may be more sensitive to the neural effects of veratridine.

Transmembrane Electrical Activity

Veratridine prolongs the repolarization phase of the action potential in guinea-pig papillary muscle (*Honerjäger* and *Reiter* 1975) and the effect of a relatively high concentration (2 μmol/litre) is illustrated in Fig. 6. For this experiment the papillary muscle was stimulated only once every 5 min which, because of the frequency-dependence of the inotropic action, prevents the positive inotropic effect of veratridine. Secondary superimposed effects on the action potential expected to result from

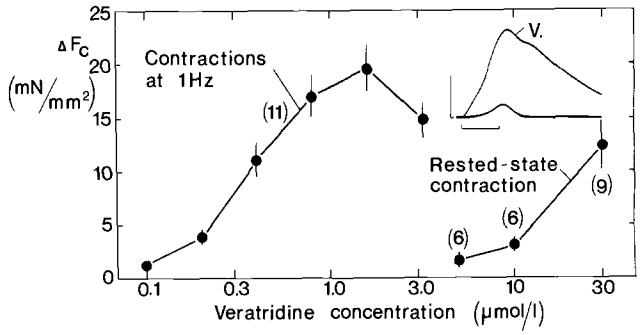


Fig. 5. Concentration-effect relationships for the direct *(left curve)* and neurally mediated *(right curve)* positive inotropic effect of veratridine on guinea-pig papillary muscle. The direct (reserpine-insensitive) effect was measured on muscles contracting at 1 Hz and exposed to cumulatively increasing concentrations. The presynaptic (reserpine-sensitive) effect was obtained on muscles that were incubated at rest with a single concentration of veratridine to determine its effect on the subsequent rested-state contraction. Number of muscles is given in parentheses. The *inset* shows a control rested-state contraction and a second one amplified by exposure of the resting muscle to 30 μmol/litre veratridine *(V)*; calibration: 5 mN (vertical), 0.2 s (horizontal). (From *Honerjäger* 1980)

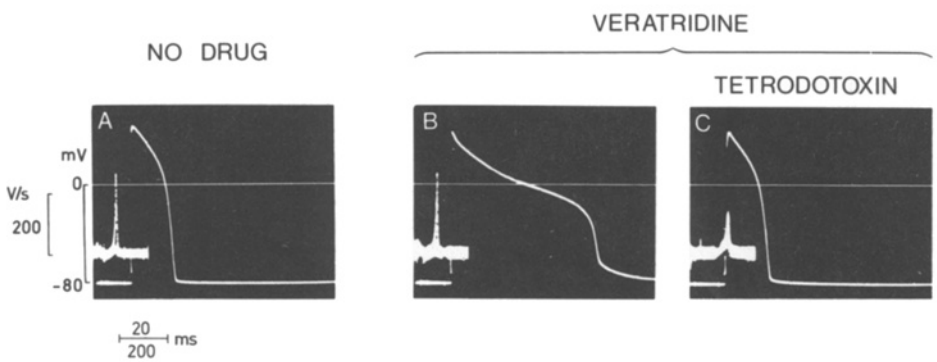


Fig. 6 A–C. Effect of veratridine on the transmembrane action potential of guinea-pig papillary muscle and blockade of the effect by TTX. Before **(A)**, 25 min after addition of 2 μmol/litre veratridine **(B)**, and 7 min after additonal application of TTX (10 μmol/litre) **(C)**. Continuous microelectrode impalement. Stimulation frequency was 0.2 min^{-1}. The broad trace is the differentiation of the upstroke of the action potential and was obtained at the faster sweep speed. (From *Honerjäger* 1977)

increased intracellular Ca, notably an abbreviation of the action potential (*Isenberg* 1975; *Bassingthwaighte* et al. 1976), are hence avoided. Veratridine does not affect the resting membrane potential or $\dot{V}_{max}$ (Fig. 6). The overshoot of the action potential is slightly reduced (by 4 mV). The plateau phase assumes an upward concave contour in contrast to the convex shape present under control conditions. The repolarization phase is

slowed particularly as it proceeds from +16 mV to −20 mV and from −60 mV to the resting potential level. Additional application of TTX (10 μmol/litre) completely restores the original action potential duration while reducing $\dot{V}_{max}$ by about 50% (Fig. 6C). The sensitivity of the veratridine effect to TTX strongly suggests that it is mediated by Na channels. As discussed in Sect. 4.2.4, the stronger effect of TTX on repolarization than on $\dot{V}_{max}$ does not argue against the identity of the Na channels responsible for the upstroke with those activated by veratridine during the plateau phase. A prolongation of the cardiac action potential may lead to an extracellular accumulation of K ions resulting in an after-depolarization (*Cleeman* and *Morad* 1976). In the presence of veratridine such an effect may play an additional role during the final phase of repolarization.

Reiter (1963) pointed out that the monoesteralkaloids veratridine and cevadine differ in their effect on the repolarization phase. Cevadine prolongs the plateau phase of the action potential whereas veratridine predominantly slows the subsequent phase of normally fast repolarization. This difference is reflected by the relaxation phase of the isometric contraction. Cevadine slows the initial part and veratridine delays the final part of relaxation (*Reiter* 1963).

The effect of the germine triester *germitrine* on action potential differs from that of veratridine in that only the very final phase of repolarization is prolonged, causing the appearance of an after-depolarization lasting longer than 1 min (*Honerjäger* and *Reiter* 1977a). As shown in Fig. 7, germitrine stops the repolarization process at a level about 6 mV positive to the resting potential. Thereafter the membrane depolarizes again slightly, to a maximum level about 9 mV positive to the resting potential, and then repolarizes very slowly. The original level of the resting potential is eventually reached after a slight hyperpolarization (Fig. 8). The after-depolarization produced by di- and triesters of germine, as well as by the two tetraesters of protoverine, protoveratrine A and protoveratrine B (Fig. 8) must be distinguished from the oscillatory after-potentials observed under conditions of Ca overload. The latter occur after complete repolarization and in an oscillatory manner: They are of shorter duration and not mediated by Na channels (Sect. 4.1.2). The germitrine-induced after-depolarization is completely and reversibly blocked by 10 μmol/litre TTX, suggesting that it results from a delayed activation of Na channels (*Honerjäger* and *Reiter* 1977a). The amplitude of the after-depolarization increases with the concentration of germitrine.

The demonstration of the germitrine effect requires a very low stimulation frequency (cf. Fig. 7). If a germitrine-treated muscle is stimulated repetitively at intervals shorter than the duration of the germitrine-induced after-depolarization, the resting potential shows a stepwise

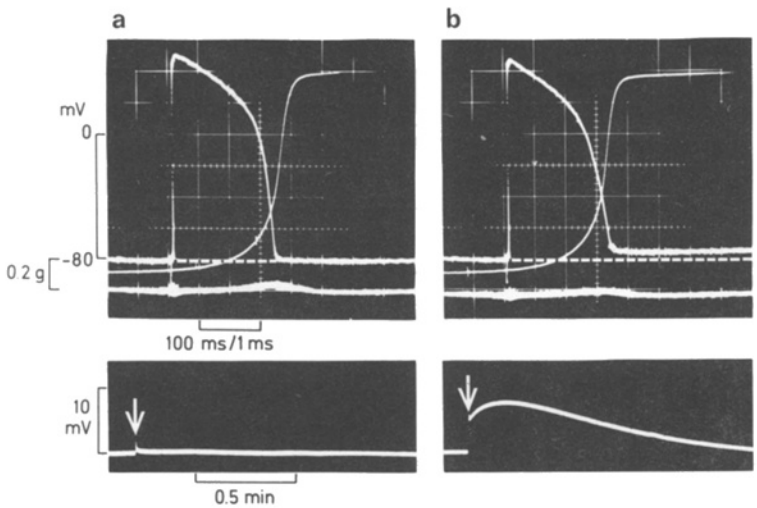


Fig. 7 a,b. Effect of germitrine on the transmembrane action potential and contraction of a guinea-pig papillary muscle stimulated once every 10 min. The *upper panels* show the action potential and isometric contraction at a slow sweep speed and the upstroke of the action potential at a fast sweep speed. The records shown in the *lower panels* were obtained simultaneously with the corresponding upper records on a second oscilloscope at higher gain and very slow sweep speed. They show the membrane potential before and during a period of 1.5 min after the action potential. The action potential causes the interruption *(arrow)* of these traces. Records were obtained before (**a**) and 74 min after (**b**) addition of 2 μmol/litre germitrine. Note incomplete repolarization (**b**, *upper panel*), which gives rise to an after-depolarization (**b**, *lower panel*). (From *Honerjäger* and *Reiter* 1977a, by permission of American Heart Association)

decrease (*Honerjäger* and *Reiter* 1977a). This phenomenon is analogous to the well-known "summation" of after-depolarizations observed if veratridine-treated nerve fibres are subjected to high-frequency stimulation (*Ulbricht* 1969). In the presence of high germitrine concentrations, the repetitive stimulation leads eventually to arrhythmic activity of the papillary muscle if the after-depolarization reaches the threshold to elicit an action potential. At 80 nmol/litre germitrine, the maximally effective inotropic and non-arrhythmic concentration at 1 Hz frequency, the summation of after-depolarizations results in a decrease of the resting potential by about 10 mV in the steady-state (*Honerjäger* and *Reiter* 1977a).

Mechanism of the Positive Inotropic Effect

Studies of the effects of veratridine (*Reiter* 1963; *Honerjäger* and *Reiter* 1975) and germitrine (*Honerjäger* and *Reiter* 1977a) revealed a close association of the bioelectric and inotropic effects in guinea-pig papillary muscle that strongly suggests a causal relationship. The results may be summarized as follows:

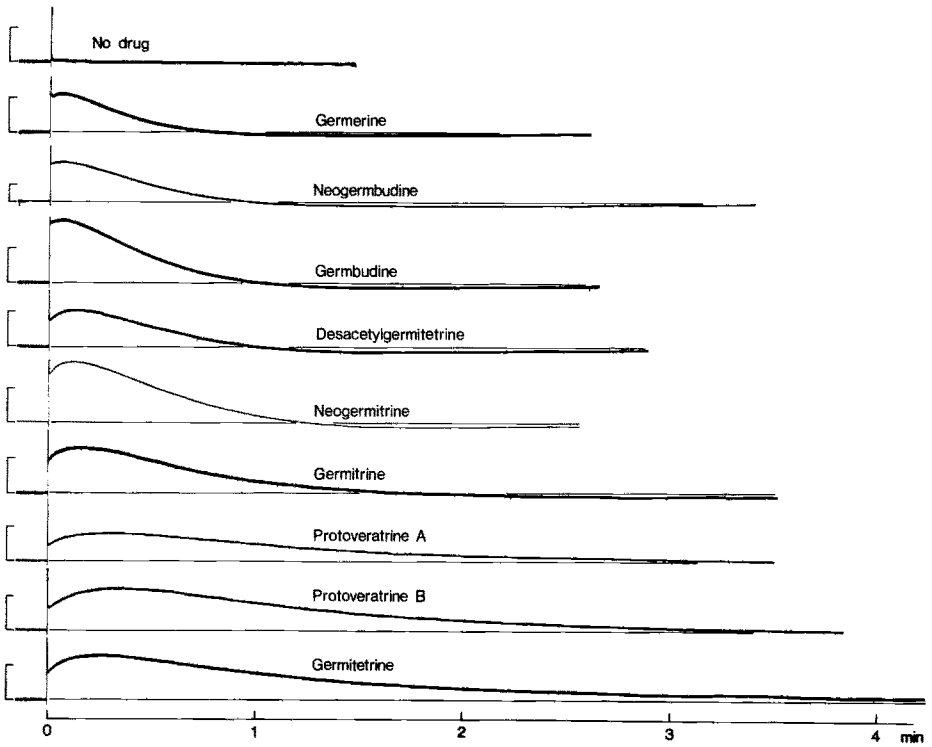


Fig. 8. After-depolarizations induced in guinea-pig papillary muscle by various cevegetatrum ester alkaloids. High-gain records of transmembrane potential immediately before and after the stimulation of an action potential. The action potential causes the interruption of the traces at the time marked 0. Experimental procedure as in Fig. 7. The following alkaloid concentrations were used (μmol/litre): germerine (4); neogermbudine (10); germbudine (8); desacetylgermitetrine (4); neogermitrine (2); germitrine (2); protoveratrine A (3); protoveratrine B (12); and germitetrine (4). Vertical calibration was 5 mV. (From *Honerjäger* 1977)

1. Inotropically effective concentrations of veratridine or germitrine also produce changes of the transmembrane electrical activity attributable to an increased P_{Na}.
2. TTX inhibits the bioelectric as well as the positive inotropic effect of veratridine or germitrine.
3. While the bioelectric and inotropic effects appear to occur simultaneously in repetitively stimulated preparations, a closer analysis reveals that the positive inotropic effect is in fact delayed with respect to the phase of increased P_{Na} produced by either veratridine (*Honerjäger* 1977) or germitrine (*Honerjäger* and *Reiter* 1977a) and decays slowly in the non-excited muscle.

4. As a consequence of the delayed and transient inotropic response to the alkaloid-induced P_{Na}, the positive inotropic effect does not manifest itself when contractions are separated by long rest intervals (e.g., 5 min). The inotropic effect appears and grows as the frequency is increased from 0.004 Hz to 0.5 Hz.
5. The positive inotropic response to the combination of a ceveratrum alkaloid with dihydro-ouabain is much larger than the sum of the responses to either drug alone. This synergism points to the importance of the intracellular Na concentration in mediating the positive inotropic effect of ceveratrum alkaloids. The extent of the alkaloid-induced increase in $[Na]_i$ must be enhanced by an additional inhibition of the Na pump.

TTX has proved a valuable tool in identifying the mechanism of the positive inotropic action of ceveratrum alkaloids and Na channel-gate toxins in general. The selective action of TTX in blocking Na channels of excitable membranes at an extracellular membrane site has been extensively documented (see *Narahashi* 1974). While suppressing I_{Na}, TTX does not significantly affect the slow inward current in frog atrial myocardium (*Tarr* 1971) or, at 47 μmol/litre, in dog ventricular myocardium (*Beeler* and *Reuter* 1970b). With regard to the analysis of changes in contractile activity it is important to note that TTX does not appear to penetrate through the plasmalemma as shown in studies on the squid giant axon (*Narahashi* et al. 1966; *Rojas* and *Rudy* 1976). Thus, TTX is unlikely to interfere directly with any intracellular process of excitation-contraction coupling or the contraction of the contractile proteins. TTX may affect myocardial force of contraction by two recognized mechanisms[3]. It abolishes the positive inotropic effect associated with field stimulation by blocking the excitability of intracardiac adrenergic nerve fibres (*Feinstein* and *Paimre* 1968). This effect requires very low concentrations (31–63 nmol/litre) that have virtually no effect on the Na channels of guinea-pig myocardial cells as judged by the upstroke of the action potential (*Baer* et al. 1976). Similarly low concentrations of TTX likewise abolish the presynaptic (or "indirect") positive inotropic effect of veratridine or cevadine (see p. 26). The second mechanism by which TTX affects myocardial force involves the blockade of sarcolemmal Na channels. At a frequency of 1 Hz, 10 μmol/litre TTX reduces $\dot{V}_{max}$ by about 50% and peak force of contraction by about 30% in noradrenaline-depleted guinea-pig papillary muscle (*Honerjäger* and *Reiter* 1975). This direct negative inotropic action has to be taken into account when TTX is used as an antagonist of positive inotropic agents.

3 The citrate buffer present in the commercial preparation of TTX does not cause a significant inotropic effect of its own when tested at a concentration corresponding to 15 μmol/litre TTX (*Honerjäger* and *Reiter* 1975)

The antagonistic effect of TTX against both the bioelectric and inotropic effects of veratridine is illustrated in Fig. 9. TTX completely and reversibly abolishes the positive inotropic effect of veratridine. The negative inotropic effect of TTX in the presence of veratridine is much larger than that observed in its absence, showing the specific nature of the antagonism. As Fig. 10 shows, TTX antagonizes the positive inotropic effect of ceveratrum alkaloids selectively. The effects of representatives of three other classes of inotropic agents, a cardioactive steroid, a catecholamine and a methylxanthine are not, or much less, inhibited by TTX. Interestingly, the positive inotropic effect of dihydro-ouabain, which also depends critically on Na influx (*Reiter* 1972a), is less sensitive to TTX than that of the ceveratrum alkaloids veratridine, cevadine, and germitrine. In the case of the steroid, the increase in intracellular Na concentration results from inhibition of the Na pump, and the extent of this increase is diminished if passive Na influx is inhibited by TTX. This might explain the slight antagonism observed (Fig. 10). TTX is expected to be more effective in reducing the alkaloid-induced Na influx than the normal Na influx, on which the inotropic action of the steroid may depend, for the following reasons: Firstly, the normal Na influx probably occurs through TTX-sensitive Na channels as well as through TTX-insensitive ion channels such as slow (Ca, Na) channels (*Reuter* and *Scholz* 1977). Secondly, the Na influx induced by Na channel-gate toxins during the repolarization phase is probably more strongly inhibited by TTX than the Na influx occurring during the upstroke, as suggested by the higher TTX sensitivity of the repolarization phase (Sect. 4.2.5).

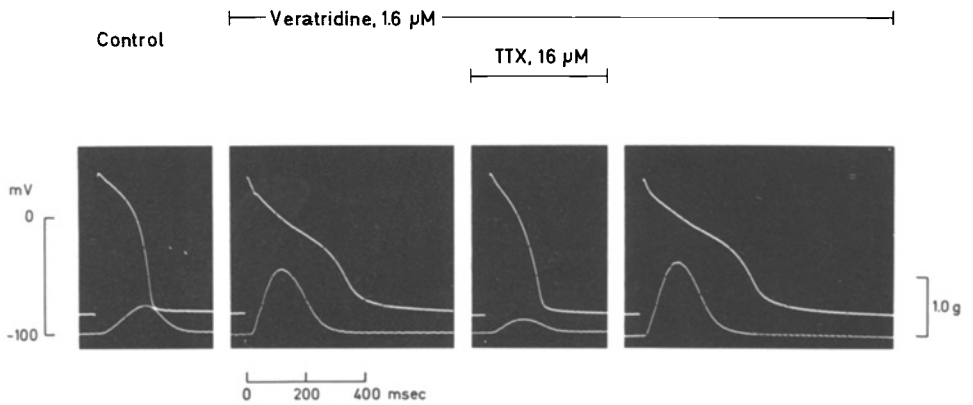


Fig. 9. Reversible inhibition of the effects of veratridine on action potential and contraction by TTX in guinea-pig papillary muscle. The records were obtained (from left to right) before drug application, 50 min after addition of veratridine (1.6 µmol/litre), 5 min after additonal application of TTX (16 µmol/litre), and after washout of TTX during maintained exposure to veratridine. Muscle was from a reserpine-pretreated animal. Contraction frequency was 1 Hz. (From *Honerjäger* and *Reiter* 1975)

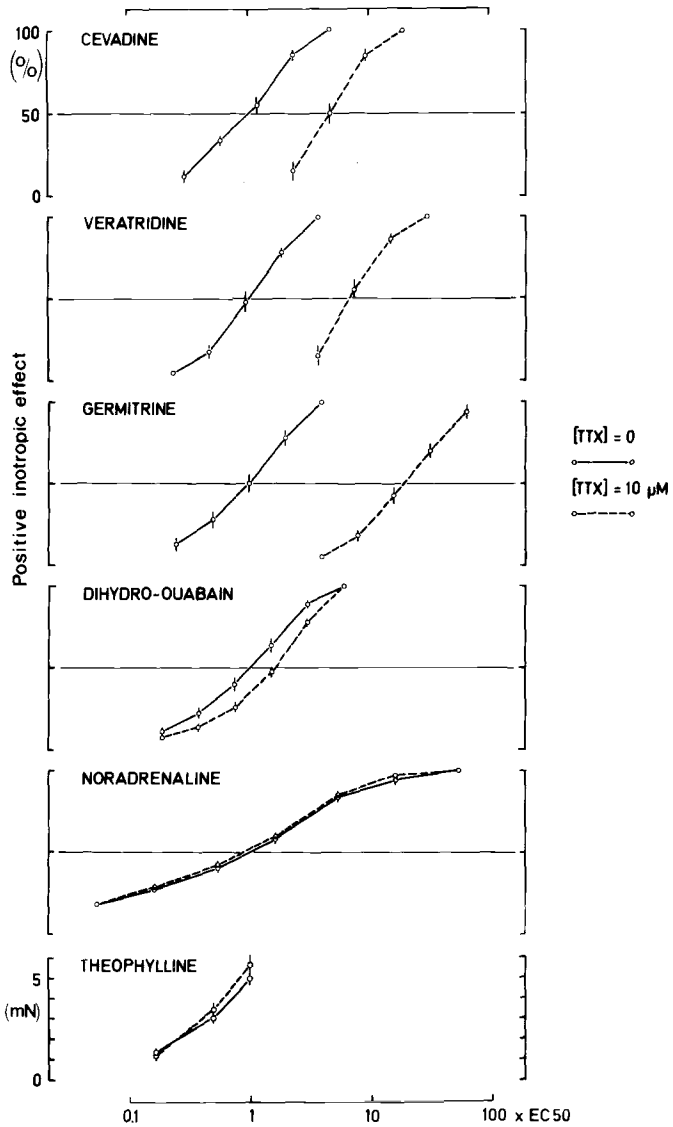


Fig. 10. Specificity of TTX as an antagonist of inotropic drugs. Concentration-effect relationships obtained in the absence and presence of TTX (10 µmol/litre) by cumulative drug additions. *Ordinate:* positive inotropic effect expressed as percent of the maximum effect obtainable under each condition, except in the case of theophylline where the absolute increase of force of contraction is given; *abscissa:* drug concentration in logarithmic scale expressed in units of half-maximally effective concentrations in the absence of TTX. Means ± SEM *(vertical bars)* of at least six guinea-pig papillary muscles. For the ceveratrum alkaloids (cevadine, veratridine, and germitrine) control and TTX experiments were done on separate muscles. Each of the other drugs was tested both in the absence and presence of TTX on the same muscle. Contraction frequency was 1 Hz. (From *Honerjäger* 1977)

The inhibitory effect of 10 μmol/litre TTX is fully surmountable by increases in the concentration of the ceveratrum alkaloids (Fig. 10). This should not be taken as evidence for a competitive type of antagonism between the alkaloids and TTX. The antagonism between Na channel-gate toxins and TTX at the level of Na channels is non-competitive (Sect. 3.10.1). The inotropically effective range of alkaloid concentrations probably modifies only a small fraction of Na channels, and this fraction can still be affected by the gate toxins at a TTX concentration (10 μmol/litre) that blocks only about 50% of the Na channels (*Honerjäger* and *Reiter* 1975).

Although the inhibition of veratridine effects by TTX suggests a causal relationship between the bioelectric and the inotropic effect of veratridine, it remains uncertain whether veratridine increases force of contraction by increasing Na influx or by prolonging the repolarization phase (thereby indirectly prolonging the phase of Ca influx through slow channels). However, the prolongation of the action potential, under the conditions of Fig. 9, is restricted to negative levels of membrane potential where a prolongation of repolarization per se produces little positive inotropic effect (*Wood* et al. 1969). In the case of germitrine the positive inotropic effect is even associated with a marked shortening of the action potential duration, in addition to the reduction of the resting membrane potential reflecting the increased P_{Na} (*Honerjäger* and *Reiter* 1977a). This rules out a secondary effect on I_{si} as a cause of the positive inotropic effect for this ceveratrum alkaloid. The strongest evidence in support of the hypothesis that ceveratrum alkaloids act by increasing inward Na current is provided by the voltage-clamp experiments of *Horackova* and *Vassort* (1973, 1974) on frog atrial muscle (Sect. 4.2.2).

The germitrine-induced after-depolarization is particularly suitable for a study of the temporal relationship between the phase of increased P_{Na} and the positive inotropic effect. By choosing an appropriate alkaloid concentration, the amplitude of the after-depolarization can be adjusted to a level which is well below the activation threshold for I_{si} (-40 mV; *New* and *Trautwein* 1972) and which leaves the muscle electrically excitable throughout the course of the after-depolarization. Test contractions elicited at various times during or after the alkaloid-induced after-depolarization (Fig. 11) reveal a phase during which the ability of the muscle to develop force is increased. This positive inotropic influence reaches its maximum 1 min after the conditioning stimulus and thereafter decays with a half-life of 2.5 min. In contrast, the after-depolarization attains a peak value about 10 s after the conditioning action potential and decays with a half-life of 32 s. Thus the phase of increased P_{Na} clearly precedes the phase of increased contractility. This is compatible with a role of the intracellular Na concentration in mediating the positive inotropic effect.

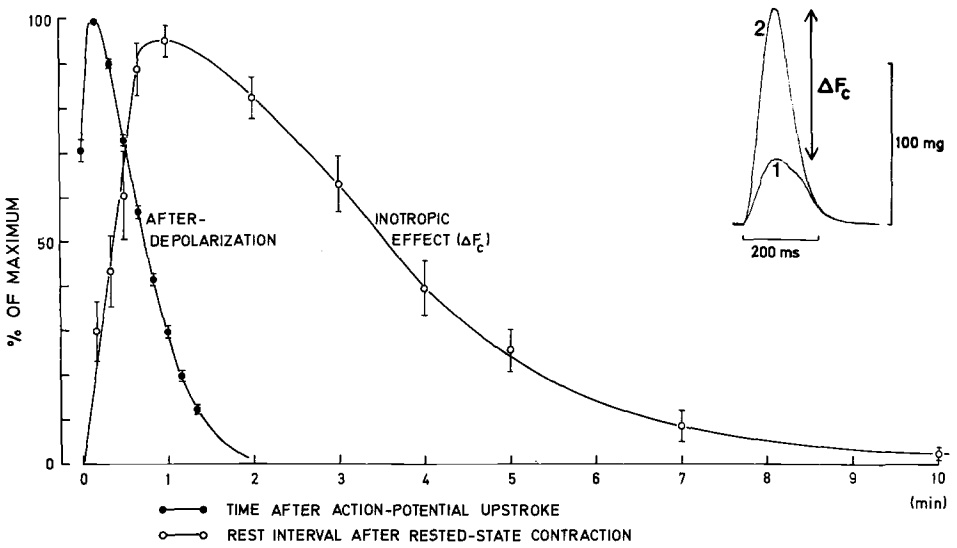


Fig. 11. Temporal relationship between the germitrine-induced after-depolarization and the germitrine-induced positive inotropic effect as determined by single test contractions during and after the after-depolarization. *Ordinate:* membrane potential during the after-depolarization which followed an action potential elicited at 0 time (100% = 8.1 ± 0.4 mV) (●) and peak force of test contraction minus peak force of prior rested-state contraction (100% = 79 ± 16 mg) (○). The time-course of the after-depolarization is shown by means ± SEM of 27–29 records obtained from six muscles incubated with 2 μmol/litre germitrine for at least 1 h. The positive inotropic effect (means ± SEM of six to eight muscles) was determined in different muscles. *Inset* shows enhancement of test contraction (trace 2) elicited 1 min after the conditioning rested-state contraction (trace 1), i.e. during the falling phase of the after-depolarization. (From *Honerjäger* and *Reiter* 1977a, by permission of American Heart Association)

$[Na]_i$ will continue to rise during the period of increased P_{Na} and subsequently decline owing to the activity of the Na pump. Direct verification of this point by the use of an intracellular Na-sensitive micro-electrode would be of great interest.

It is generally accepted that the contraction of cardiac cells is directly linked to the increase in free Ca concentration of the myoplasm. An increased intracellular Na concentration can mediate a positive inotropic effect indirectly by increasing the transsarcolemmal influx of Ca ions, thereby loading cellular Ca stores that release Ca during contraction. If Na-Ca exchange is enhanced by the depolarization produced by the action potential (Sect. 5.3.4; *Mullins* 1979), an increased level of $[Na]_i$ may not only increase the steady influx of Ca ions but especially that occurring during the action potential. The evidence suggesting the existence of a Na-Ca exchange mechanism in the plasmalemma is discussed in Chap. 5.

Few attempts have been made to rule out alternative mechanisms of the positive inotropic effect by direct biochemical experiments. The activity of Na, K-ATPase isolated from guinea-pig hearts is not affected by concentrations of ceveratrum alkaloids (veratridine, cevadine, protoveratrine A and B, germitetrine, desacetylgermitetrine) that are much higher than those causing a maximum positive inotropic effect on guinea-pig papillary muscle (*Portius* and *Repke* 1964). Veratridine, cevadine, and protoveratrine lack an inhibitory effect on the active Na-K transport of erythrocytes (*Kahn* and *Acheson* 1955). *Sperelakis* and *Pappano* (1969) noted that veratrine did not significantly change the internal K and Na content of intact embryonic chick hearts during 15 min, which argues against inhibition of the Na pump. There is apparently no report on whether inotropically effective concentrations of ceveratrum alkaloids influence the concentration of cyclic nucleotides in myocardial cells. However, it should be noted that many functional characteristics of the inotropic action of ceveratrum alkaloids (and other Na channel-gate toxins) differ clearly from those associated with agents thought to act by increasing the cellular content of cyclic adenosine 3′,5′-monophosphate (cAMP) (Sect. 5.1).

4.2.6 Cardiac Cells in Culture

During the embryonic development of chick and rat hearts, $\dot{V}_{max}$ of the cardiac action potential and the susceptibility of action potential and contraction to TTX were shown to increase progressively (*Bernard* and *Gargouil* 1968; *Ishima* 1968; *Shigenobu* and *Sperelakis* 1971; *Sperelakis* and *Shigenobu* 1972; *Pappano* 1972; *McDonald* et al. 1972; *DeHaan* et al. 1975; *McDonald* and *Sachs* 1975; *Iijima* and *Pappano* 1979). Thus, in the early embryonic stage (2–4 days in ovo), cardiac cells seem to lack fast Na channels. The action potential is mainly due to the opening of a slow Na channel insensitive to TTX (*Sperelakis* and *Shigenobu* 1972). Cardiac cells cultured in the form of monolayers invariably display TTX-insensitive action potentials even if the cells are taken from embryos older than 5 days. Cultured in aggregates, they generally retain the TTX sensitivity of the embryonic heart from which they were derived (*McDonald* et al. 1972; *McLean* and *Sperelakis* 1976).

Sperelakis and *Pappano* (1969) investigated the effects of veratrine and veratridine on ventricular myoblasts obtained from 7–15-day chick embryos, but grown in monolayers. Veratridine (1.5–15 μmol/litre) depolarizes the cells within a few minutes to membrane potentials of about −12 mV, and action potentials and beating cease. Before the depolarization begins, the repolarization phase of the action potential is prolonged by veratridine. TTX (63 μmol/litre), although without effect

on action potential magnitude or $\dot{V}_{max}$, prevents the depolarization and prolongation of the action potential by veratridine. The depolarization by veratridine also occurs in Na-free Li solution. Veratridine reduces the membrane resistance. This is not prevented by TTX and is attributed to an increased K permeability. In 3- and 16-day aggregates of chick embryonic heart cells, veratridine produces depolarization and blocks the electrical and mechanical activities at concentrations exceeding 10 μmol/litre (*Romey* et al. 1980). *Romey* et al. (1980) suggest that, like other Na channel-gate toxins, veratridine reveals Na channels that are normally in a silent form in monolayers or 3-day aggregates.

The activation of Na channels by veratridine leads to an increase of Na influx into the myoblasts as determined with ^{22}Na (*Fosset* et al. 1977). The effect is inhibited by TTX, the half-maximally effective concentration being 6.6 nmol/litre at a veratridine concentration of 22 μmol/litre (*Fosset* et al. 1977). This degree of TTX sensitivity is similar to that of $\dot{V}_{max}$ in cells at later stages of embryonic development (*McDonald* et al. 1972; *Romey* et al. 1980), but much higher than that of Na channels in adult guinea-pig ventricular myocardium (*Baer* et al. 1976; see also Fig. 6). Veratridine increases the influx of Ca ions in addition to that of Na ions (Sect. 5.3.2). Protoveratrine B also increases the Na uptake by cardiac cells of the chick embryo (*Couraud* et al. 1976).

4.3 Batrachotoxin

Batrachotoxin belongs to the most toxic substances known. Its lethal effect on mammals, which occurs after parenteral administration of less than 1 μg/kg or 1.86 nmol/kg, appears to be mainly due to its cardiac arrhythmogenic action (*Daly* and *Witkop* 1971). A study on anaesthetized rabbits showed that batrachotoxin produces a variety of ventricular arrythmias, in addition to complete block of atrioventricular conduction (*Kayaalp* et al. 1970). Predominant effects are the activation of multifocal ventricular ectopic beats interrupted by transient ventricular fibrillation or tachycardia. The terminal event is ventricular fibrillation.

4.3.1 Purkinje Fibres

In spontaneously active Purkinje fibres isolated from the dog heart, the initial effect of batrachotoxin on the action potential is a prolongation of the final phase of repolarization (*Hogan* and *Albuquerque* 1971). It occurs at the lowest tested concentration of 1.9 nmol/litre at a time when there are no changes in the maximum diastolic membrane potential, $\dot{V}_{max}$, overshoot of the action potential, or rate of spontaneous diastolic depolarization. With increasing time of exposure to the toxin, the delay

of repolarization progresses until the membrane fails to repolarize completely during the diastolic interval. At this stage the upstroke velocity and overshoot of the action potential are depressed, as expected from the inactivating influence of depolarization. The membrane potential of fibres depolarized by batrachotoxin is restored if the external Na concentration is reduced to 1 mmol/litre. At a concentration of 4.7 μmol/litre, TTX prevents the effect of batrachotoxin (1.9 nmol/litre) on the repolarization phase for as long as 30 min. These results clearly indicate the involvement of Na channels in the effect of batrachotoxin on the Purkinje fibre membrane. *Hogan* and *Albuquerque* (1971) point out that "TTX did not block the action potential of the Purkinje fiber in a concentration which antagonized BTX [batrachotoxin] action". According to these authors, "resting sodium channels are opened by BTX" and "resting sodium channels in the electrogenic membrane may be functionally different from the sodium channels for membrane excitation". The TTX concentration used (4.7 μmol/litre) causes a partial inhibition of $\dot{V}_{max}$ in dog Purkinje fibres (approx. 50%, *Coraboeuf* et al. 1979). That this concentration causes complete inhibition of the effect of batrachotoxin, as opposed to partial inhibition of $\dot{V}_{max}$, does not argue against the identity of the Na channels involved in generating the action potential with those modified by batrachotoxin, as discussed in connection with the effect of veratrine on dog Purkinje fibres (Sect. 4.2.4). *Hogan* and *Albuquerque* (1971) state that "the same sequence of alterations produced by BTX on the Purkinje fiber membrane was observed whether or not the tissue was being driven". Since their preparations were reportedly spontaneously active, this does not rule out a dependency of the effect of batrachotoxin on electrical activity. Such a dependency was reported to exist in the eel electroplaque (*Bartels-Bernal* et al. 1977), frog node of Ranvier (Sect. 3.3), and guinea-pig papillary muscle (Sect. 4.3.2).

4.3.2 Ventricular Muscle

Similar to its effect on Purkinje fibres, batrachotoxin prolongs the repolarization phase of the action potential in guinea-pig muscle, and this effect is inhibited by TTX (*Honerjäger* and *Reiter* 1977b). The results indicate that batrachotoxin causes its effect on the ventricular action potential by selectively prolonging the open state of Na channels. At low concentrations of the alkaloid (0.75–60 nmol/litre), the effect on repolarization occurs only after a series of conditioning action potentials. The first action potential after addition of batrachotoxin is unaltered even after prolonged exposure of the resting muscle to the toxin. During repetitive stimulation, the effect on action potential duration develops at a progressively increasing rate and eventually gives rise to spontaneous depolariza-

tions arising from the prolonged repolarization phase. For a given effect, measured in terms of the prolongation of the action potential or the first appearance of a coupled extrasystole, the product of batrachotoxin concentration and number of preceding action potentials during exposure to that concentration of batrachotoxin is virtually constant. The effect thus fits the quantitative requirements of an irreversible one-to-one binding reaction of batrachotoxin molecules with sarcolemmal receptors that are accessible only during the action potential. As in the frog node of Ranvier (Sect. 3.3), the binding of batrachotoxin seems to require specifically the opening of Na channels. Prolonged depolarization by exposure to a high-K solution does not lead to the expression of the batrachotoxin effect in guinea-pig papillary muscle. Removal of batrachotoxin from the bathing solution during continued stimulation of the muscle causes the effect to decrease gradually over several hours, indicating a very slow dissociation of batrachotoxin. The dissociation of batrachotoxin (as manifested by the disappearance of its effect on the repolarization phase) does not require activity and can thus be demonstrated, even in the presence of toxin, simply by resting the muscle.

Concomitantly with the prolongation of the action potential, batrachotoxin produces a positive klinotropic and positive inotropic effect and prolongs relaxation time in guinea-pig papillary muscle (*Honerjäger* and *Reiter* 1977b). These effects persist in preparations from reserpine-pretreated animals, and are prevented by the presence of TTX (10 μmol/litre). The sensitivity to TTX suggests that the positive inotropic effect results from the increased Na influx induced by batrachotoxin. A reserpine-resistant, TTX-sensitive positive inotropic effect of batrachotoxin is also observed in the isolated cat papillary muscle (*Shotzberger* et al. 1976). In guinea-pig papillary muscle (*Honerjäger* and *Reiter* 1977b), the rested-state contraction elicited during incubation of the resting muscle with high concentrations of batrachotoxin (0.6–1.2 μmol/litre) is increased in amplitude and rate of rise. This inotropic effect is absent in muscles from reserpine-pretreated guinea-pigs, pointing to the involvement of endogenous noradrenaline as in the case of high concentrations of veratridine or cevadine (Sect. 4.2.5).

4.4 Aconitine

4.4.1 Sinoatrial Node and Atrium

In a preparation consisting of the sinoatrial node and extranodal tissue of the rabbit heart, aconitine (1 μg/ml) produces a bigeminal rythm, followed by flutter and irregular activity (*Matsumura* and *Takaori* 1959b).

The intracellular records demonstrate that both nodal and extranodal fibres participate in the abnormal rhythm.

4.4.2 Purkinje Fibres

Aconitine produces very similar effects on Purkinje fibres isolated from dog (*Schmidt* 1960), calf or sheep hearts (*Heistracher* and *Pillat* 1962). Aconitine increases the rate of spontaneous depolarization thus causing a positive chronotropic effect on isolated Purkinje fibres. At this stage of action, parameters of the transmembrane action potential are not altered. Subsequently, aconitine selectively slows the terminal part of repolarization (at about -60 mV) which results in the appearance of after-depolarization. The duration of the after-depolarization increases from beat to beat until premature action potentials arise from the prolonged repolarization phase. Following a stage of bigeminy and trigeminy, a flutter-like activity results and, finally, the preparations are arrested at a reduced membrane potential (-55 to -45 mV). Decreasing the extracellular Na concentration to 10% of the normal level causes an immediate, though transient, interruption of the aconitine-induced spontaneous activity (*Schmidt* 1960).

Peper and *Trautwein* (1967) analysed the effect of aconitine on sheep Purkinje fibres with a voltage-clamp technique. In the presence of aconitine (1 μg/ml) the current-voltage relation, obtained by changing the membrane potential at constant and relatively slow rates, shows an abnormal inward current with a maximum near -60 mV. Application of TTX (63 μmol/litre) blocks this current as well as the normal excitatory Na current. In Na-free solution, aconitine fails to affect the current-voltage relation. These findings suggest that aconitine abolished the inactivation gate in a fraction of Na channels, thus causing a persistently activated component of P_{Na}.

4.3.3 Ventricular Muscle

Matsuda et al. (1959) describe the effects of amorphous aconitine (Merck) and of the purified alkaloids aconitine and mesaconitine on isolated right ventricular tissue of the dog heart. No essential difference was noted among the three alkaloidal preparations. A few minutes after drug administration (0.01–0.1 μg/ml), the muscle suddenly undergoes a flutter-like, automatic and rapid excitation. Non-stimulated, resting preparations do not become spontaneously active if aconitine is added, and aconitine does not affect the resting transmembrane potential in these fibres. The automatic activity is shown to result from one of two mechanisms. Most frequently, the first visible effect is a decrease of the resting potential, followed by oscillatory potential changes following each action potential

and superimposed on the decreased level of resting potential. *Schmidt* (1960), in his study on dog ventricular trabeculae, reported no oscillatory after-potentials under the influence of aconitine, but only a slowing of the final repolarization phase, which then led to premature action potentials. This mechanism of arrhythmogenesis was observed less frequently by *Matsuda* et al. (1959).

Heistracher and *Pillat* (1962) report the effects of aconitine (0.05–1.0 μg/ml) on transmembrane potentials of the isolated cat papillary muscle. The initial electrophysiologic effect appears to be a prolongation of the repolarization phase near its end (after-depolarization). The slowing of repolarization is less abrupt and less pronounced than that observed in dog ventricular muscle (*Schmidt* 1960). The after-depolarization may escape detection if the arrhythmogenic effect of aconitine develops rapidly. In the second stage of aconitine action, extrasystoles appear in the form of bigeminy or trigeminy. The premature action potentials seem to arise from the aconitine-induced after-depolarization. Subsequently, the papillary muscles show sustained high-frequency activity. The phase of automatic activity is followed by the termination of activity owing to a reduction of the resting membrane potential to about −55 mV in right ventricular muscle isolated from the rabbit heart (*Matsumura* and *Takaori* 1959a). An as yet unexplained effect of aconitine is the appearance of spike-like depolarizations arising from the normal resting potential and having an amplitude of up to 40 mV (*Heistracher* and *Pillat* 1962).

In the isolated cat papillary muscle, the time to development of aconitine-induced automaticity is inversely related to aconitine concentration (0.25–1 μg/ml), diastolic tension (60%–140% or peak tension) and stimulation frequency (1–4 Hz) during the preautomatic period (*Tanz* et al. 1973). As also noted by earlier investigators, the aconitine arrhythmia is not reversed by repeated washing of the preparations. The cumulative effect of repetitive stimulation may indicate that myocardial Na channels, like neural Na channels (*Mozhayeva* et al. 1977), interact with aconitine only when they are in the open configuration. The aconitine-induced arrhythmia is rapidly abolished by 3 μmol/litre TTX (*Tanz* 1974).

Although aconitine clearly induces a long-lasting activation of Na channels in Purkinje fibres (*Peper* and *Trautwein* 1967) and probably also in ventricular muscle, there is apparently no evidence that aconitine produces a positive inotropic effect. In this respect, aconitine differs from all other cardioactive Na channel-gate toxins reviewed in this chapter. It may seem questionable therefore whether an increase in sarcolemmal Na permeability is strictly linked to positive inotropic action. One possible explanation for the failure of aconitine to produce a positive inotropic effect under the conditions used by previous investigators (e.g., Fig. 1 in *Tanz* et al. 1973) is that the transition to the state of extrasystoles

and spontaneous activity occurs without a sufficiently long-lasting phase during which aconitine increases the Na influx associated with each action potential, but does not yet produce extrasystoles. In fact, while the stage of action characterized by the prolonged repolarization phase is easily demonstrated with many other Na channel-gate toxins, this has proven difficult with aconitine (*Heistracher* and *Pillat* 1962). A careful analysis of the electrophysiologic and inotropic effect of aconitine in the prearrhythmic phase of action is clearly necessary to settle this point. We have recently observed that the arrhythmogenic effect of aconitine (0.5–1.0 μmol/litre) is preceded by a small, but distinct positive klinotropic and inotropic effect in guinea-pig papillary muscle (*P. Honerjäger* and *A. Meissner,* unpublished work).

4.5 Grayanotoxins

4.5.1 Sinoatrial Node

In the isolated sinoatrial node preparation of the rabbit heart, grayanotoxin I (0.1 mmol/litre) decreases the maximum diastolic potential, increases the rate of spontaneous diastolic depolarization, thereby causing an increase in firing frequency and, finally, inhibits the action potentials (*Seyama* 1978). These effects are fully reversible by washing with toxin-free medium. TTX (10 μmol/litre) abolishes all effects on the transmembrane potentials, indicating that grayanotoxin I activates Na channels in the sinoatrial node. Thus, although this cell type is characterized by TTX-resistant electrical activity, the presence of Na channels can be demonstrated by pharmacological (*Kreitner* 1975) or electrical hyperpolarization (*Noma* et al. 1977) or by applying the Na channel-gate toxin grayanotoxin I (*Seyama* 1978).

4.5.2 Atrium

In resting right atrial strips obtained from the rabbit heart, grayanotoxin I (0.1 mmol/litre) produces a marked depolarization (by 26 mV), which is reversed by the withdrawal of external Na ions or the application of 10 μmol/litre TTX (*Seyama* 1978). A less-pronounced depolarization is observed with lower concentrations of grayanotoxin I or α-dihydro-grayanotoxin II applied to isolated and stimulated left atria of the guinea-pig (*Akera* et al. 1976; *Ku* et al. 1977). The addition of TTX (0.8 μmol/litre) reverses the depolarization produced by grayanotoxin I (0.5 μmol/litre) and partially restores the amplitude of the action potential, which is reduced by grayanotoxin I owing to the reduced resting potential (*Akera* et al. 1976). Thus grayanotoxin I presumably induces a persistent activa-

tion of Na channels resulting in depolarization of the resting membrane. Concentrations of grayanotoxin I that alter the membrane potential also cause a positive klinotropic and positive inotropic effect under isometric conditions (*Akera* et al. 1976). This effect is inhibited by TTX (0.8 μmol/litre). The racemic mixture of propranolol (10 μmol/litre) also inhibits the positive inotropic effect of both grayanotoxin I and α-dihydro-grayanotoxin II (*Ku* et al. 1977). These authors state "that a portion of the effects of grayanotoxins on isometric contractile force may be mediated by a beta-adrenergic mechanism". However, the Na channel blocking action of propranolol (*Morales-Aguillera* and *Vaughan Williams* 1965) might be responsible for this antagonism. At 5 μmol/litre, grayanotoxin I produces arrhythmia in isolated guinea-pig left atria (*Akera* et al. 1976). The grayanotoxins enhance the ouabain-sensitive uptake of the potassium analog rubidium by guinea-pig ventricular slices, which is interpreted as a stimulation of the Na-K pump secondary to the toxin-induced increase of Na influx (*Ku* et al. 1977). The grayanotoxins do not affect Na, K-ATPase isolated from rat brain or guinea-pig heart (*Akera* et al. 1976; *Ku* et al. 1977).

4.5.3 Atrioventricular Node

There are no reports on the effect of grayanotoxins on the transmembrane electrical activity of cells of the atrioventricular node. In the dog heart-lung preparation, examined with extracellular electrodes, grayanotoxin I (andromedotoxin) prolongs the atrioventricular conduction time and increases the spontaneous firing rate of the atrioventricular node if the faster rhythm of the sinoatrial node is suppressed (*Swain* and *McCarthy* 1957).

4.5.4 Purkinje Fibres

Conduction through the Purkinje system is reported to be slowed by grayanotoxin I (andromedotoxin) in the dog heart (*Swain* and *McCarthy* 1957). This occurs at a time when ventricular myocardial conduction is not affected. Possibly, the effect on Purkinje fibre conduction is related to a depolarization as observed in atrila cells (Sect. 4.5.2).

4.5.5 Ventricular Muscle

Hotta et al. (1980) studied 18 structurally related grayanotoxins which produced a concentration-dependent reversible positive inotropic effect on isolated guinea-pig papillary muscle.

4.6 Scorpion Toxins

4.6.1 Isolated Mammalian Heart

Corrado et al. (1968) investigated the effects of crude dried venom of the Brazilian scorpion *Tityus serruluatus* on the isolated guinea-pig heart. In final concentrations of approximately 1 μg/ml, the venom produces a short-lasting bradycardia followed by an increase of force and frequency of contractions. The effects are reversible and reproducible in the same preparation. The bradycardia is blocked by atropine and potentiated by neostigmine. The positive chronotropic and inotrpic action is abolished by propranolol or bretylium. It is absent in hearts of reserpine-pretreated guinea pigs. Hexamethonium neither affects the bradycardia nor the tachycardia in doses which abolish the nicotine-induced bradycardia and positive inotropic effect. Hence the venom probably acts on the postganglionic nerve terminals to cause the release of acetylcholine and noradrenaline. *Langer* et al. (1975) have shown that a purified toxin from *T. serrulatus* increases the release of ^{3}H-noradrenaline from guinea-pig atria. Less extensive experiments were performed by other investigators with venoms of *Leiurus quinquestriatus, Buthus minax, B. occitanus,* and *Androctonus australis* HECTOR using the isolated heart of rabbits or guinea pigs. Similar to *Tityus* scorpion venom, the other scropion venoms seem to alter cardiac function mainly through the release of neurotransmitters from intracardiac nerve fibres (*Zlotkin* et al. 1978).

Coraboeuf et al. (1975) used the isolated rat heart to study the effects of pure $ScTX_{II}$ on contraction and transmembrane electrical activity (at 24°–25°C). $ScTX_{II}$ produces a reserpine-resistant positive inotropic effect that is associated with an increase in the height of the plateau of the ventricular action potential and a prolongation of the repolarization phase. The effect on the action potential persists for hours following a single injection of toxin into the coronary arteries. Resting potential and $\dot{V}_{max}$ are only slightly altered. The lengthening of the action potential produced by $ScTX_{II}$ is greatly diminished by injections of TTX, Ca-rich medium or procaine, and it is prevented during perfusion with low-Na solution. The atrial action potential is also prolonged by $ScTX_{II}$. According to *Coraboeuf* et al. (1975), $ScTX_{II}$ increases plateau height by slowing down the inactivation of Na channels or by inducing an incomplete Na inactivation. The effect on the action potential might indirectly favour the penetration of Ca through the slow channel because of a stronger and longer-lasting activation of the potential- and time-dependent slow inward Ca current, and this could explain the positive inotropic effect. The authors do not discuss the possibility of increased Na-Ca exchange.

Confirming earlier investigations, *Coraboeuf* et al. (1975) find that $ScTX_{II}$ produces a positive inotropic effect also on isolated guinea-pig and rabbit hearts, but that this effect is absent in preparations obtained from reserpine-pretreated animals. Guinea-pig and rabbit ventricular action potentials are insensitive to the scropion toxin in doses that are markedly effective in the rat heart. As pointed out by *Coraboeuf* et al. (1975), this suggests the existence of species differences in the sensitivity of myocardial Na channels to scorpion toxin.

4.6.2 Cardiac Cells in Culture

$ScTX_{II}$ has marked effects on the mechanical and electrical activity of nerve-free myoblast cultures derived from the chick embryonic heart (*Fayet* et al. 1974; *Bernard* and *Couraud* 1979). $ScTX_{II}$ increases the frequency of the spontaneous contractions, and this effect is followed by cell fibrillation and contracture (*Fayet* et al. 1974). The bioelectric cause of these phenomena was elucidated by *Bernard* and *Couraud* (1979). They used cells from 11-day-old chick embryonic hearts cultured as aggregates in suspension. With their culture technique, they obtain two populations of cells which differ in their value of $\dot{V}_{max}$ ("fast" and "slow" cells). The effect of $ScTX_{II}$ depends on the type of cell.

Fast Cells. This population of cells has resting potentials between -40 and -72 mV. $\dot{V}_{max}$ exceeds 15 V/s and is significantly related to the level of the resting potential, reaching a value of 125 V/s at the most negative resting potential. TTX (0.4 μmol/litre) reduces $\dot{V}_{max}$ by about 90%. $ScTX_{II}$ (30 nmol/litre) causes approximately a tenfold increase in the duration of the action potential, while it does not significantly alter $\dot{V}_{max}$. TTX (0.1 μmol/litre) rapidly suppresses the toxin-induced modification of the action potential. D 600, the methoxy derivative of verapamil, at a concentration of 1 μmol/litre, does not prevent prolongation of the action potential by $ScTX_{II}$. These results suggest that $ScTX_{II}$ prolongs the open state of Na channels in cultured cells with expressed Na channels, perhaps by slowing inactivation as in neural Na channels (Sect. 3.6).

Slow Cells. This population of cells has resting potentials between -40 and -62 mV, and $\dot{V}_{max}$ is 10 V/s or less, irrespective of the resting potential, and unaffected by TTX at 0.4 μmol/litre. The low value of $\dot{V}_{max}$, its lack of correlation with the level of the resting potential, and its insensitivity to TTX indicate that the upstroke of the action potential is not mediated by fast Na channels. In these cells, $ScTX_{II}$ (30 nmol/litre), in addition to prolonging the repolarization phase of the action potential, increases $\dot{V}_{max}$ significantly from 8.6 to 36.8 V/s on average, while having

no effect on the level of the resting membrane potential. *Both* effects are suppressed by TTX (0.1 μmol/litre). $ScTX_{II}$ restores action potentials in cells when electrical activity was previously reduced by D 600 (0.5 μmol/litre). *Bernard* and *Couraud* (1979) conclude that $ScTX_{II}$ increases $\dot{V}_{max}$ (in slow cells) and prolongs the repolarization phase of the action potential (in both types of cells) by retarding the inactivation of Na channels. The fact that $ScTX_{II}$ conveys TTX sensitivity to the electrical activity of slow cells shows that these normally TTX-resistant cells contain silent Na channels (Sect. 3.9).

Effect on Na and Ca Influx. $ScTX_{II}$ causes a TTX-sensitive increase of Na influx in embryonic cardiac cells (*Couraud* et al. 1976), as might be expected from the electrophysiological actions described above. The influx of Ca ions is enhanced as well. The effect of Na channel-gate toxins on Ca influx in cultured heart cells is discussed in the section on Na-Ca exchange (Sect. 5.3.2).

4.7 Sea Anemone Toxins

4.7.1 Toxin II from Anemonia sulcata

Isolated Mammalian Heart. In the heart-lung preparation of the cat, ATX_{II} produces a positive inotropic effect (*Alsen* et al. 1976). The threshold concentration is approximately 2 nmol/litre, and a maximum positive inotropic effect occurs at around 100 nmol/litre. In the inotropic concentration range, ATX_{II} has no significant chronotropic action. Toxic symptoms occur at 160 nmol/litre. They are characterized by periods of ventricular fibrillation alternating with periods of normal spontaneous rhythm. In the isolated guinea-pig heart stimulated at 3 Hz, ATX_{II} produces a half-maximal positive inotropic effect at about 5 nmol/litre on the ventricle and atrium (*Alsen* et al. 1976). Arrhythmia occurs at 25 nmol/litre ATX_{II}.

Atrium. In guinea-pig atrium, ATX_{II} (10 nmol/litre) prolongs the repolarization phase of the action potential at all levels of membrane potential and produces a positive klinotropic and positive inotropic effect (*Ravens* 1976). The prolonged phase of repolarization is associated with a prolongation of the relaxation phase of the isometric contraction.

Ventricular Muscle. Ravens (1976) analysed the effects of ATX_{II} on the transmembrane electrical activity and contraction of the isolated guinea-pig papillary muscle contracting at 1 Hz. At concentrations of 5–20 nmol/

litre, the toxin produces graded positive klinotropic and positive inotropic effects. They reach steady-state in about 30 min and disappear within about 1 h of superfusion with toxin-free solution. Inotropic concentrations induce a prolongation of the action potential at negative levels of membrane potential. This prolongation is only partially reversed during a 1-h washout period. Concentrations up to 20 nmol/litre leave the resting membrane potential and the amplitude of the action potential unaffected. $\dot{V}_{max}$ is slightly reduced by 20 nmol/litre ATX_{II}. The prolonged repolarization phase is associated with a prolongation of the relaxation phase of the isometric contraction. The effects of ATX_{II} are not modified by catecholamine depletion with reserpine. TTX (0.5 μmol/litre) completely and reversibly inhibits the effect on action potential duration and the positive inotropic effect. ATX_{II} (10 nmol/litre) fails to prolong the action potential and to increase force of contraction if extracellular K is raised from 2.7 to 14.7 mmol/litre, and raising the K concentration after the effects of ATX_{II} have developed causes their disappearance. The sensitivity to TTX of the toxin-modified repolarization phase suggests that it is due to the persistent activation of Na channels. This might result from a delayed inactivation of the Na channels, which is the main effect of ATX_{II} on neural Na channels (Sect. 3.7.1).

Cardiac Cells in Culture. Romey et al. (1980) analysed the effects of ATX_{II} on cardiac cell aggregates in culture obtained from 3- and 16-day-old chick embryo hearts, respectively. The younger cells exhibit low values of $\dot{V}_{max}$ and their action potential is insensitive to TTX; they will be referred to as slow cells. The older cells show values of $\dot{V}_{max}$ greater than 100 V/s and their action potentials are blocked by TTX (0.1 μmol/litre); these cells will be called fast cells. Very similar to scorpion toxin (Sect. 4.6.2), ATX_{II} produces different effects on slow and fast cells. In fast cells, ATX_{II} only prolongs the falling phase of the action potential and thus produces qualitatively the same effect as observed in adult guinea-pig myocardial cells (*Ravens* 1976). In slow cells, ATX_{II} produces an increase of $\dot{V}_{max}$ (from 12.5 to 25 V/s on average), in addition to prolonging the falling phase of the action potential. The increase of $\dot{V}_{max}$ occurs under conditions where any steady-state inactivation of the Na channels is prevented by a long-lasting hyperpolarizing prepulse. In fast cells, TTX (0.1 μmol/litre) slows $\dot{V}_{max}$ and abolishes the effect of ATX_{II} on the repolarization phase. The same concentration of TTX blocks the two effects of ATX_{II} on the action pontential of slow cells, namely the increase in $\dot{V}_{max}$ and the prolongation of the falling phase. These results as well as those obtained with scorpion toxin (Sect. 4.6.2) suggest that the polypeptide toxins slow Na inactivation in fast cells, thereby prolonging the repolarization phase of the action potential. In slow cells,

the polypeptide toxins cause the appearance of otherwise silent Na channels, as suggested by the TTX-sensitive increase in $\dot{V}_{max}$, and these Na channels seem to inactivate only slowly, as shown by the TTX-sensitive prolongation of the repolarization phase. Thus, ATX_{II} reveals Na channels which are not normally expressed in embryonic heart cells derived at an early stage of development. In addition, *Romey* et al. (1980) showed that ATX_{II} exerts a positive inotropic effect on embryonic cardiac cells along with its effect on the action potential. The inotropic effect is blocked by TTX (0.1 μmol/litre) suggesting that it is causally related to the modification of the Na channels by ATX_{II}. The link may be increased Na-Ca exchange across the sarcolemma, as indicated by the observation that ATX_{II} increases Ca influx as well as Na influx (*Romey* et al. 1980). The effect of Na channel-gate toxins on Ca influx is discussed in the section on Na-Ca exchange (Sect. 5.3.2).

4.7.2 Anthopleurin A

Sinoatrial Node. At concentrations of 5 or 30 nmol/litre, anthopleurin A has no significant effect on the spontaneous heart rate of isolated atria from the rabbit, cat, guinea pig or rat (*Shibata* et al. 1976).

Atrium. Anthopleurin A produces a reversible positive inotropic effect on isolated left atria from the rabbit, cat, guinea pig or rat at a contraction frequency of 1.6 Hz (*Shibata* et al. 1976). Half-maximally effective concentrations are 1–3 nmol/litre. The effect is not modified by propranolol (1 μmol/litre). TTX (2 μmol/litre) decreases the sensitivity of guinea-pig atria to the positive inotropic action of anthopleurin A (*Shibata* et al. 1978). Anthopleurin A (50 nmol/litre) does not alter the cAMP content of guinea-pig atria (*Shibata* et al. 1976).

Purkinje Fibres. Shimizu et al. (1979) studied the effects of anthopleurin A on the transmembrane electrical activity of isolated canine Purkinje fibres and ventricular muscle fibres in a preparation containing fibres of the right bundle branch and of the anterior papillary muscle. In Purkinje fibres stimulated at 1.67 Hz, anthopleurin A (3.9–39 nmol/litre) prolongs the repolarization phase of the action potential by prolonging the duration of the plateau phase. It has little effect on the subsequent phase of repolarization, i.e. the times to 50% and 90% repolarization are prolonged to an equal extent. The refractory period is increased along with the prolongation of the plateau phase of the action potential. At high concentrations of the polypeptide (19–39 nmol/litre), premature action potentials develop from the prolonged repolarization phase at potential levels between −10 and −50 mV. Up to the highest concentration tested

(39 nmol/litre), anthopleurin A does not significantly affect the resting membrane potential, amplitude or $\dot{V}_{max}$ of the action potential. In concentrations below 19 nmol/litre, anthopleurin A produces no significant change in the firing rate of spontaneously active Purkinje fibres. *Shimizu* et al. (1979) did not test whether TTX inhibits the effect of anthopleurin A on the repolarization phase, as has been observed in the presence of batrachotoxin (*Hogan* and *Albuquerque* 1971) or veratrine (*Arbel* et al. 1975). An inhibition by TTX would be expected if anthopleurin A slows the inactivation of Purkinje fibre Na channels as it does that of neural Na channels (Sect. 3.7.2) and ventricular myocardial Na channels.

Ventricular Muscle. Anthopleurin A increases the force of contraction of isolated papillary muscles and ventricular strips of the guinea-pig heart driven at 1.6 Hz (*Shibata* et al. 1976). Half-maximally effective concentrations are 4.4–4.8 nmol/litre. At a threshold concentration near 2 nmol/litre, anthopleurin A also increases the force of the isolated cat papillary muscle stimulated at 1 Hz (*Scriabine* et al. 1979): As shown in this study the positive inotropic and positive klinotropic effects of anthopleurin A are associated with a marked prolongation of the relaxation phase (at 64 nmol/litre). Arrhythmia is produced by 120 nmol/litre. As in dog Purkinje fibres, but to a smaller extent, anthopleurin A increases the action potential duration and the refractory period in dog ventricular muscle fibres (*Shimizu* et al. 1979): The prolongation of the repolarization phase is already manifest at positive levels of membrane potential. In this tissue, anthopleurin A, at concentrations of up to 39 nmol/litre, does not affect the resting potential, $\dot{V}_{max}$, or the amplitude of the action potential. Using a voltage-clamp technique (single sucrose gap) on the isolated guinea-pig papillary muscle, *Hashimoto* et al. (1980) have recently shown that anthopleurin A (9.7–39 nmol/litre) induces a maintained inward current during depolarizing pulses superimposed on the outward current and reaching a maximum value between -40 and -20 mV. The inward current represents a persistent component of Na flux through Na channels since it is blocked by TTX. TTX likewise abolishes the prolongation of the action potential produced by anthopleurin A in guinea-pig papillary muscle (*Hashimoto* et al. 1980). *Ochi* and colleagues (*Hashimoto* et al. 1980) were the first to suggest that anthopleurin A produces its positive inotropic effect by increasing Na influx.

Anthopleurin A (50 nmol/litre) does not affect the activity of Na, K-ATPase isolated from guinea-pig or dog hearts, of phosphodiesterase isolated from guinea-pig hearts, and it does not alter the cAMP content of guinea-pig ventricle (*Shibata* et al. 1976).

4.8 Coral Toxin

The cardiac action of goniopora toxin was examined in isolated left atrial preparations of the rabbit (*Fujiwara* et al. 1979). At 30 nmol/litre, the polypeptide toxin prolongs the action potential at all levels of repolarization, while no significant change is observed either in the resting membrane potential, the overshoot or $\dot{V}_{max}$. The effect on action potential duration persists during superfusion with toxin-free solution for 2 h. TTX (1 μmol/litre) abolishes the effect on the replarization phase. At 3–100 nmol/litre goniopora toxin produces a positive inotropic effect that also persists during washout with toxin-free solution. In line with an irreversible binding reaction, the positive inotropic effect during exposure to a given concentration of the toxin does not reach a steady-state, but progresses and is eventually followed by arrhythmia characterized by coupled extrasystoles. Increasing the concentration of the toxin accelerates the development of the positive inotropic effect. Propranolol, phentolamine or atropine (each at 1 μmol/litre) do not modify the positive inotropic effect. The positive inotropic and arrhythmogenic effect are both abolished by TTX (1 μmol/litre). In atria depolarized by an elevated extracellular K concentration (27 mmol/litre) and treated with 0.5 μmol/litre isoprenaline to restore excitability (0.25 Hz), goniopora toxin fails to increase force of contraction. The results suggest that goniopora toxin modifies the cardiac action potential by prolonging the open state of Na channels and that the positive inotropic effect is linked to the increase in sarcolemmal P_{Na}.

5 Sarcolemmal Na Permeability and Myocardial Force of Contraction: Na-Ca Exchange

5.1 Introduction

For an understanding of the positive inotropic action of the Na channel-gate toxins it is necessary to consider the role played normally by Na channels in the excitation-contraction cycle of the heart. The most important function of the Na channels is to allow a rapid conduction of the excitation wave, originating in the sinoatrial or atrioventricular node, to all cells of the atrial and ventricular myocardium. The nearly simultaneous excitation of all atrial and ventricular cells assures the coordinated contraction of these cells, i.e. the function of the heart as a pump. The process which couples sarcolemmal excitation to contraction of the myocardial cell does not seem to depend so much on the activation of Na

channels, but seems to be intimately related to events occurring during the plateau phase of the action potential, notably the Ca inward current (*Beeler* and *Reuter* 1970a,b,c; *New* and *Trautwein* 1972; *Trautwein* et al. 1975) and electrogenic Na-Ca exchange. Thus, contractions can still be elicited if Na channels are blocked by TTX or completely inactivated by sustained depolarization of the sarcolemma. It is nevertheless very likely that Na channels, in addition to permitting the rapid conduction of the cardiac action potential, influence excitation-contraction coupling, because their activation leads to an influx of Na ions into the cell. Several lines of evidence, reviewed here, suggest that an increased concentration of intracellular Na ions promotes an influx of Ca ions across the sarcolemma (Na-Ca exchange). This is expected to result in a positive inotropic effect. Na influx through Na channels is greatly enhanced by the Na channel-gate toxins, because they drastically prolong the time during which the Na channels are in the open state.

The intracellular Na concentration may also affect the Ca transport by organelles of the myocardial cell. If exposed to Na ions, cardiac mitochondria (*Carafoli* and *Crompton* 1978) release Ca. It seems difficult, however, to explain a maintained positive inotropic effect by a mechanism that depletes cellular stores and thus, eventually, the cell of Ca ions. A decrease of the [K]/[Na] ratio may impair Ca uptake by cardiac sarcoplasmic reticulum (*Katz* and *Repke* 1967).

Ravens (1976) suggested an explanation for the positive inotropic effect of Na channel-gate toxins that does not involve changes of intracellular Na concentration. According to this hypothesis, the toxin interacts with a sarcolemmal receptor controlling Na channel gating as well as a plasmalemmal Ca store that releases Ca during contraction. However, since TTX, a selective blocker of Na channels, abolishes the postive inotropic effect of Na channel-gate toxins (see Chap. 4), it is not necessary to postulate that the positive inotropic effect of these toxins results from a modification of structures other than those regulating Na channel gating.

5.2 Na-Ca Exchange in the Squid Giant Axon

The giant axons of certain species of squid are particularly suitable for studying the role of intracellular Na in regulating Ca flux across an excitable membrane, because $[Na]_i$ can be selectively altered experimentally either by injection of a Na salt into the axoplasm of an intact axon (*Baker* et al. 1969) or by changing the concentration of Na in the solution used to perfuse an axon intracellularly (*Di Polo* 1979). *Baker* et al. (1969) showed that the intraaxonal injection of NaCl to raise $[Na]_i$ by 67 or 120 mmol/litre in axons of *Loligo forbesi* previously depleted of

intracellular Na causes an increase in the unidirectional influx of Ca ions by factors of 2 and 4, respectively. These experiments were performed with an external solution in which most of the Na was replaced by Li ions (Li-seawater). In other experiments of their study $[Na]_i$ was raised by prolonged stimulation at high frequency. This resulted in an increase of Ca influx irrespective of whether the influx was measured in Na-, Li- or dextrose-seawater. The additional demonstration of a component of Na efflux, which is insensitive to cardioactive steroids, but activated by external Ca ions, led to the hypothesis that the enhancement of Ca influx by internal Na involves a transmembrane ion exchange in which the exit of Na ions is linked to the entry of Ca ions (*Baker* et al. 1969).

A detailed analysis of the component of Ca influx enhanced by intracellular Na ions was performed by *Di Polo* (1979) using the technique of intracellular dialysis on axons of the tropical squid *Dorytheutis plei*. The main findings of this study may be summarized as follows: An increase of $[Na]_i$ of 0–120 mmol/litre increases Ca influx, and the Na_i-dependent Ca influx requires a threshold level of $[Ca^{2+}]_i$ of 40 nmol/litre and increases as $[Ca^{2+}]_i$ is raised to 0.8 μmol/litre. The Na_i-dependent Ca influx requires the presence of ATP. The results of *Baker* et al. (1969) indicate that the entry of one Ca ion may be linked to the exit of more than two Na ions, which would make Na-Ca exchange sensitive to the membrane potential. In line with this prediction, both the Na efflux component (*Baker* and *McNaughton* 1976) and the Ca influx component (*Di Polo* 1979) constituting the Na-Ca exchange under physiological conditions, i.e. in the presence of ATP, were found to be augmented by depolarization.

Baker et al. (1969) pointed out that the exchange of external Ca for internal Na which they observed may represent ion movements in a direction opposite to that occurring under normal conditions. The normal function of a Na-Ca exchange system might be to pump Ca out of the cell in exchange for external Na, as suggested by *Reuter* and *Seitz* (1968). In this case the energy for the uphill transport of Ca ions from the cell could be provided by the downhill movement of Na ions, and the transmembrane gradient for Na ions would be maintained by the Na pump. Interestingly, although a Ca efflux-Na influx system operates in axons poisoned with cyanide (*Blaustein* and *Hodgkin* 1969), later work has shown that 50%–90% of the Ca efflux from unpoisoned squid axons is independent of external Na ions and requires the presence of ATP (*Baker* and *McNaughton* 1978; *Di Polo* and *Beaugé* 1979).

The effect of intracellular Na ions on unidirectional Ca *efflux* has also been examined. Raising $[Na]_i$ from 5 to 75 mmol/litre in internally dialyzed axons of *Loligo pealei* inhibits the $[Na]_o$-dependent component of Ca efflux (*Blaustein* 1977), but the uncoupled Ca efflux, which may

constitute the main part of Ca efflux from intact axons (*Baker* and *McNaughton* 1978), is insenstitive to changes in intracellular Na concentration (*Di Polo* and *Beaugé* 1979). Thus, an increase of $[Na]_i$ will affect the intracellular Ca concentration of squid axon through an increase of Ca influx with little effect on Ca efflux.

5.3 Na_i-Ca_o Exchange in Cardiac Preparations

5.3.1 Guinea-Pig Atrium

Glitsch et al. (1970) examined the relationship between the intracellular Na concentration and Ca influx in resting left atria of guinea pigs. They produced different levels of $[Na]_i$ by equilibrating the resting muscles in K-rich solution ($[Na]_i$ = 12.5 mmol/kg fibre water, as determined by flame photometry), in normal solution ($[Na]_i$ = 20 mmol/kg) or in cold K-poor, Ca-poor solution ($[Na]_i$ = 60 mmol/kg). An intermediate level of Na_i was established by high-frequency stimulation in K-poor, Ca-poor solution ($[Na]_i$ = 40.5 mmol/kg). Subsequently all preparations were placed for 10 min into a medium containing ^{45}Ca, 0.65 mmol/litre $[K]_o$ to prevent a decrease of $[Na]_i$, and 0.7–7 μmol/litre acetylcholine to prevent spontaneous activity of the atria. After the uptake period the preparations were washed for 25 min with inactive solution before the radioactive analysis was performed. Under these conditions, the increase of $[Na]_i$ was associated with an increase of Ca uptake by the atria. A nearly fivefold increase in $[Na]_i$ caused in increase in Ca uptake by a factor of about 2.6.

5.3.2 Cardiac Cells in Culture

To define the relationship between Na fluxes and Ca fluxes in myocardial cells an approach different from that of *Glitsch* et al. (1970) was used by *Fosset* et al. (1977). They analysed the Ca influx induced by veratridine in monolayer cultures of cardiac myoblasts obtained from 10-day-old chick embryos. Although these authors did not report the actual changes of $[Na]_i$ in their experiments, the various concentrations of veratridine which they applied in a medium containing Na ions (140 mmol/litre) and ouabain increased Na influx and presumably caused a graded increase of $[Na]_i$. No information on the transmembrane potential of the myoblasts is given in this article, but the work by *Sperelakis* and *Lehmkuhl* (1968) and *Sperelakis* and *Pappano* (1969) suggests that either ouabain or the lowest effective concentration of veratridine (1.5 μmol/litre) used by *Fosset* et al. (1977) caused permanent depolarization and inexcitability and thus eliminated possible complications resulting from spontaneous

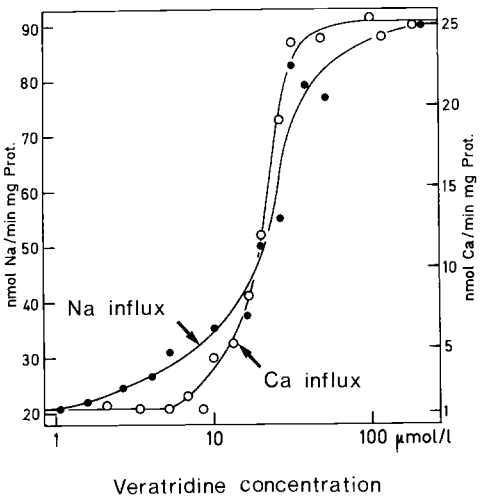


Fig. 12. Concentration-effect relationships for the enhancement of Na influx and Ca influx by veratridine in chick embryonic cardiac cells in culture. The experiments were performed in the presence of 0.5 mmol/litre ouabain. (Drawn after *Fosset* et al. 1977)

activity of cultured heart cells. *Fosset* et al. (1977) showed that veratridine increases Ca influx up to 25-fold (Fig. 12). They could exclude the possibility that this influx uses Na channels opened by veratridine, because veratridine fails to increase Ca influx if external Na is replaced by Li ions, i.e. under conditions where veratridine retains the ability to open Na channels thereby allowing the influx of Li ions (*Sperelakis* and *Pappano* 1969). However, because it is abolished by TTX, the veratridine effect on Ca influx does require the opening of Na channels. Veratridine-induced Ca influx is insensitive to manganese or cobalt ions or to the compound D 600 at concentrations at which these substances normally inhibit slow Ca channels. Thus, the veratridine-induced Ca influx is coupled to the presence of an inwardly directed Na gradient and open Na channels, but the Ca ions enter the cell neither through Na channels nor through slow Ca channels. These findings strongly suggest the existence in cardiac cells of a Ca uptake mechanism that is increased by intracellular Na accumulation (*Fosset* et al. 1977).

Results very similar to those of *Fosset* et al. (1977) were obtained by *Couraud* et al. (1976) who used $ScTX_{II}$. The latter authors suggest that the sarcolemma of cardiac cells in culture contains two types of Ca channels, the well-known slow Ca channel and a Ca channel that is "coupled to the passive Na action potential ionophore" and therefore affected by the toxin. This interpretation disregards the observation by the authors themselves that ouabain greatly enhances the effect of $ScTX_{II}$ on Ca influx, an observation which points to the importance of intracellular Na accumulation in linking the effect of the scorpion toxin on Na channels to its effect on Ca influx. It appears that all the results of *Couraud* et al. (1976) are compatible with the concept that $ScTX_{II}$ increases Na influx

by opening Na channels and thereby indirectly activates an exchange of intracellular Na for extracellular Ca ions. An increase of both Na and Ca influx is also produced by ATX_{II} (*Romey* et al. 1980).

5.3.3 Purkinje Fibres

The experiments of *Glitsch* et al. (1970), *Couraud* et al. (1976) and *Fosset* et al. (1977) do not clarify whether the activating effect of intracellular Na ions on Ca influx involves an actual exchange of internal Na ions for external Ca ions, as in the squid giant axon (*Baker* et al. 1969). If the cardiac sarcolemma possesses a Na-Ca exchange system, raising the extracellular Ca concentration will increase Na efflux thereby reducing the intracellular Na concentration under conditions where $[Na]_i$ is not controlled by the Na pump. Using Na-sensitive glass micro-electrodes, *Deitmer* and *Ellis* (1978) indeed showed that raising the bath concentration of Ca produces a decrease in the intracellular Na activity of sheep heart Purkinje fibres even when the Na-K pump is inhibited by strophantidin.

5.3.4 Myocardial Contraction in Low Extracellular Na

If extracellular Na is reduced in the presence of extracellular Ca, a contracture develops which is associated with a large increase in the influx of Ca into the heart cells (*Niedergerke* 1963). A study on frog atrial trabeculae revealed that this contracture is transient and, after spontaneous relaxation, even a 100-fold increase in the bathing Ca concentration (from 0.1 to 10 mmol/litre) fails to induce any increase in tension (*Chapman* 1974). The results obtained by *Chapman* (1974, 1979) stongly suggest that the increase in Ca influx resulting from the reduction of $[Na]_o$ critically depends on the presence of Na inside the cells. This points to the existence of a Na-Ca exchange mechanism.

Voltage-clamp experiments on frog atrial trabeculae (*Benninger* et al. 1976; *Horackova* and *Vassort* 1979a) indicate that the tonic component of tension (Sect. 6.1) results from a transmembrane Na-Ca exchange that is voltage-dependent and therefore activated by the depolarization used to elicit tonic tension. The tonic component of tension exists in addition to a phasic component that is related to both I_{si} and intracellular Ca stores (*Horackova* and *Vassort* 1976, 1979b).

5.3.5 Inotropic Effect of Cardioactive Steroids

If one accepts the view that cardioactive steroids produce their positive inotropic effect by inhibiting the sarcolemmal Na pump, one has to conclude that the myocardial cell possesses a mechanism that translates some

consequence of this membrane effect into an enhancement of the intracellular Ca transient during contraction (*Allen* and *Blinks* 1978) and thus into a positive inotropic effect. One consequence of the Na pump inhibition by cardioactive steroids is an increase in intracellular Na concentration (*Lee* et al. 1980). A Na-Ca exchange in the sarcolemma would thus provide exactly the mechanism to couple an inhibition of the Na pump to a positive inotropic effect. *Akera* and *Brody* (1978) and *Reiter* (to be published) reviewed the evidence in support of the theory that the positive inotropic effect of cardioactive steroids results from their effect on $[Na]_i$ secondary to the inhibition of the Na pump.

5.3.6 Cardiac Membrane Vesicles

A transmembrane Na-Ca ion exchange was demonstrated in membrane vesicles of presumed sarcolemmal origin. The vesicles were obtained by centrifugation techniques from the ventricle of the heart of the rabbit (*Reeves* and *Sutko* 1979), dog (*Pitts* 1979), and ox (*Miyamoto* and *Racker* 1980). Recent studies indicate that this Na-Ca exchange involves the exchange of more than two Na ions with one Ca ion and is thus electrogenic (*Reeves* and *Sutko* 1980; *Philipson* and *Nishimoto* 1980). Na channel-gate toxins have apparently not been used to alter Na fluxes of cardiac membrane vesicles. The demonstration of a toxin-activated and TTX-inhibited Na flux would provide strong evidence for the sarcolemmal nature of such vesicles. The need for further purification of cardiac sarcolemmal membranes has been stressed by *Sulakhe* and *St. Louis* (1980).

6 Comparison of Cardiac Actions of Na Channel-Gate Toxins with Those of Other Positive Inotropic Drugs

As shown in Chap. 4, the cardiac action of Na channel-gate toxins has been analysed and characterized in terms of their influence on mechanical and electrical activity and on transsarcolemmal ion movements. The purpose of the following paragraphs is to compare some of these effects with those of other classes of positive inotropic agents on the same aspects of myocardial function. This will serve to reinforce the conclusion that Na channel-gate toxins represent a separate class of positive inotropic substances characterized by a distinct mode of action. The discussion deals mainly with effects observed in isolated ventricular preparations of the mammalian heart.

6.1 Isometric Contraction Curve

Na channel-gate toxins increase the force of myocardial contraction by accelerating the rate of force development, i.e. by a positive klinotropic effect (Figs. 2, 3). Hence, they act by increasing the intensity of the "active state" of the contractile elements and differ in this respect from the relatively few interventions which, like the addition of fluoride, produce a positive inotropic effect by prolongation of the active state (*Reiter* 1972a).

Na channel-gate toxins produce variable effects on the relaxation phase of the isometric contraction. The relaxation time may be prolonged to such an extent that total contraction time is lengthened (Fig. 2, veratridine), or the prolongation may just compensate a simultaneous abbreviation of time to peak force resulting in a nearly unchanged total contraction time (Fig. 3, germitrine). The very marked prolongation of relaxation time, causing an increase in total contraction time, is observed in the presence of those toxins which slow repolarization during, or shortly after, the plateau phase of the action potential (e.g., cevadine, veratridine, batrachotoxin, ATX_{II}, anthopleurin A, goniopora toxin; see Chap. 4 for references). In contrast, relatively little effect on the total contraction time is produced by those toxins inducing a slight depolarization of the resting membrane potential (e.g., germitrine, grayanotoxins). It is well known that an electrical prolongation of the repolarization phase (by injecting a depolarizing current with the sucrose-gap technique), at a level positive to about -30 mV, is associated with prolonged relaxation phase of the contraction (*Morad* and *Trautwein* 1968). The resulting component of mechanical activity is maintained as long as the membrane is kept at the depolarized level of membrane potential and is therefore called "tonic" tension (*Morad* and *Goldman* 1973). The markedly prolonged relaxation phase observed with some of the Na channel-gate toxins can thus be explained in terms of the known dependence of mechanical activity on membrane potential. Recent studies indicate that Na channel-gate toxins may prolong relaxation time by an additional mechanism related to the increase in intracellular Na concentration rather than to the prolonged repolarization phase. *Vassort* and colleagues (*Roulet* et al. 1979) have shown that veratrine prolongs the relaxation time of frog atrial trabeculae even if the preparation is activated by voltage-clamp depolarizations of constant duration, i.e. if the prolongation of the action potential produced normally by veratrine is prevented. According to *Roulet* et al. (1979), the relaxation phase is directly influenced by an electrogenic sarcolemmal Na-Ca exchange mechanism. An increase in Na_i is thus expected to decrease the efficiency of the Na-Ca exchange to restore the low diastolic level of the free intracellular Ca concentration

after repolarization. This interpretation could also explain the prolongation of relaxation time produced by Na channel-gate toxins which, like germitrine (Fig. 3), prolong the action potential only at membrane potential levels far negative to −30 mV (Sect. 4.2.5).

Na channel-gate toxins have never been observed to abbreviate total contraction time by shortening relaxation time. Such a relaxant effect is typically produced by inotropic agents which elevate the cellular concentration of cAMP, for instance by β-adrenoceptor agonists, histamine, or phosphodiesterase inhibitors (*Korth* 1978; *Scholz* 1980). While the inotropic effect of the toxins clearly differs in this respect from the cAMP-increasing drugs, it is difficult, if not impossible, to distinguish certain other positive inotropic agents from Na channel-gate toxins solely on the basis of the modification of the isometric contraction curve. Thus, like germitrine, the cardioactive steroid dihydro-ouabain produces a positive klinotropic and inotropic effect with little effect on total contraction time (*Reiter* 1972b).

6.2 Blockade of Sarcolemmal Na Channels by Tetrodotoxin

In the absence of a competitive antagonist for Na channel-gate toxins which lacks intrinsic activity (cf. Sect. 3.10.2), the most specific way to test whether a positive inotropic agent acts by prolonging the open state of Na channels is to use the non-competitive antagonist TTX (or STX). TTX occludes Na channels and thereby prevents the effects of Na channel-gate toxins on membrane potential and Na and Ca influx. In guinea-pig papillary muscle, a TTX concentration which reduces $\dot{V}_{max}$ by 50% (10 μmol/litre) has no inhibitory influence on the positive inotropic effect of noradrenaline or theophylline and slightly inhibits that of dihydro-ouabain, but prevents the positive inotropic effect of half-maximally effective concentrations of cevadine, veratridine, and germitrine (Fig. 10). The fact that TTX fails to affect the positive inotropic effect of noradrenaline and theophylline is in agreement with the view that these agents act by increasing the cellular concentration of cAMP and that such an increase mediates the enhancement of slow inward Ca current and of the amount of Ca releasable from, and sequestered by an intracellular Ca store (for references see *Scholz* 1980). TTX lacks an effect on slow inward Ca current and is not expected to gain access to the intracellular space during extracellular application (Sect. 4.2.5). Furthermore, even if applied directly to the sarcoplasmic reticulum as in the experiments on skinned cardiac fibres by *Fabiato* and *Fabiato* (1973), TTX does not affect the Ca release-sequestration cycle as judged from the unchanged mechanical activity. The finding that TTX less effectively

inhibits the positive inotropic effect of dihydro-ouabain than that of ceveratrum alkaloids, although the action of both cardioactive steroids and Na channel-gate toxins depends on Na influx, has been discussed in Sect. 4.2.5.

The use of TTX for the classification of inotropic mechanisms requires some precautions. It is necessary to rule out that the agent in question acts primarily on neural Na channels to cause the release of noradrenaline from intracardiac nerve endings. Such an effect is also blocked by TTX; in fact by concentrations much lower than those required to block sarcolemmal Na channels. Among the substances covered in this review only scorpion toxins were found to act mainly by a presynaptic mechanism. In the case of veratridine and cevadine, a neural effect is also demonstrable, but requires concentrations in excess of those affecting sarcolemmal Na channels (Sect. 4.2.5). It is also important to note that the pattern of inhibition by TTX depends on whether the Na channel-gate toxin acts reversibly or irreversibly. In the case of reversibly acting toxins, like veratridine (*Honerjäger* and *Reiter* 1975) or ATX_{II} (*Ravens* 1976), TTX produces a stable inhibition if applied after the effects of the gate toxins have attained steady-state. With irreversibly acting toxins, like batrachotoxin (*Honerjäger* and *Reiter* 1977b), the effect of TTX, when applied in a submaximally effective concentration, is to delay the development, but not to prevent the effect of the Na channel-gate toxin. It appears that the change in cardiac membrane potential, such as the delay of the repolarization phase, requires only a small fraction of all Na channels to be modified (*Horackova* and *Vassort* 1973; *Trautwein* 1973). Thus TTX concentrations of 50 μmol/litre or less, which reduce $\dot{V}_{max}$ only up to 80% in guinea-pig papillary muscle (*Baer* et al. 1976), leave a significant fraction of Na channels unblocked, and this unblocked fraction of Na channels may suffice to mediate a prolongation of the action potential or decrease of the resting potential in the presence of a very high concentration of Na channel-gate toxin (*Honerjäger* and *Reiter* 1977b). *Ito* et al. (1979) observed that 1 μmol/litre TTX failed to restore the membrane potential in guinea-pig papillary muscle depolarized by the irreversibly acting palytoxin, and they conclude that "the partial antagonism by TTX implies the possibility that PTX [palytoxin] did not act 'specifically' on the Na channel and produced a leaky state". However, their findings that TTX delayed the onset of the palytoxin-induced depolarization and that reduction of $[Na]_o$ to 12.3 mmol/litre did restore the membrane potential in the presence of palytoxin are compatible with the view that palytoxin acts entirely by selectively opening Na channels.

6.3 Contraction Frequency

The frequency dependence of the positive inotropic effect of veratridine (*Honerjäger* and *Reiter* 1975) or germitrine (*Honerjäger* and *Reiter* 1977a) differs from that of cAMP-increasing agents and, in certain details, from that of the cardioactive steroid dihydro-ouabain. The ceveratrum alkaloids lack a positive inotropic effect on the rested-state contraction (Sect. 4.2.5) whereas threshold effective concentrations at 1 Hz also increase the peak force of the rested-state contraction in the case of adrenaline and theophylline (cat papillary muscle; *Bereşewicz* and *Reuter* 1977) and noradrenaline and N^6-2′-O-dibutyryl cAMP (guinea-pig papillary muscle; *Seibel* et al. 1978). Force-frequency relationships obtained with concentrations of dihydro-ouabain that are submaximally effective at 1 Hz (*Ebner* and *Reiter* 1977) are virtually identical to those obtained with veratridine or germitrine. Like the ceveratrum alkaloids, these concentrations of dihydro-ouabain lack an effect on the rested-state contraction and produce a progressively increasing positive inotropic effect as the frequency is raised stepwise from 0.003 Hz to 0.5 Hz. Ceveratrum alkaloids lack a positive inotropic effect on the rested-state contraction even at concentrations exceeding the maximally effective concentration at a Hz by more than one order of magnitude (Sect. 4.2.5). In the cases of veratridine or cevadine, the demonstration of this lack of positive inotropic effect requires the elimination of their presynaptic effect (Sect. 4.2.5). In contrast, dihydro-ouabain increases the force of the rested-state contraction in concentrations that are maximally or supramaximally effective at 1 Hz (*Ebner* and *Reiter* 1977). In the cases of veratridine and germitrine, the phase of increased P_{Na} is linked to the action potential, which explains the absence of a positive inotropic influence under resting conditions. However, it is conceivable that agents which increase resting P_{Na}, like grayanotoxin I in rabbit atrial fibres (*Seyama* 1978), also increase the rested-state contraction.

6.4 Reduction of Extracellular Na Concentration

Reducing the extracellular Na concentration by one-half greatly diminishes the positive inotropic effect of cardioactive steroids, whereas the inotropic effect of catecholamines is unaffected (*Reiter* 1972a). Using this test, the ceveratrum alkaloids veratridine and cevadine were shown to be influenced in their effect on guinea-pig papillary muscle like the steroids (*Reiter* 1963), pointing to the importance of Na influx for the action of the alkaloids.

6.5 Variation of Extracellular K Concentration

The level of the extracellular K concentration may influence the positive inotropic effect of Na channel-gate toxins by at least two different mechanisms, through its effect on transmembrane potential and on the activity of the Na-K pump. *Ravens* (1976) showed that ATX_{II} failed to prolong the action potential and to produce a positive inotropic effect in guinea-pig papillary muscle if the K concentration was raised from 2.7 to 14.7 mmol/litre. The elevated K concentration caused a fall of the resting potential to about −50 mV, which is expected to inactivate normal Na channels (*Beeler* and *Reuter* 1970a). In contrast to ATX_{II}, agents which increase the cellular cAMP concentration retain their positive inotropic effect and increase amplitude and duration of the action potential through their effect on I_{si} if Na channels are inactivated by depolarization (for references see *Scholz* 1980). Like the positive inotropic effect of ATX_{II}, that of goniopora toxin on rabbit atrial preparations is prevented at an elevated (27 mmol/litre) extracellular K concentration (*Fujiwara* et al. 1979).

Reducing the K concentration below 5.9 mmol/litre enhances the positive inotropic effect of veratridine (*Honerjäger* and *Reiter* 1975). The associated hyperpolarization of the resting potential from about −80 mV at 5.9 mmol/litre $[K]_o$ has presumably little effect on the level of steady-state inactivation of the Na channels, since this seems to be already minimal at −80 mV (*Chen* et al. 1975). It seems more likely that the synergistic action of K withdrawal and veratridine is related to an inhibition of the Na pump by reduction of $[K]_o$, which is expected to increase the extent of the veratridine-induced intracellular Na accumulation and therefore the positive inotropic effect. This test does not discrimiate between veratridine and dihydro-ouabain, the positive inotropic effect of which is likewise enhanced by a reduction in extracellular K concentration (*Reiter* et al. 1966). In contrast, the inotropic effect of adrenaline (*Reiter* et al. 1966) or theophylline (*Scholz* and *de Yazikof* 1971) is not increased by a lowering of extracellular K concentration.

6.6 Inhibition of the Na Pump by Dihydro-Ouabain

Dihydro-ouabain potentiates the positive inotropic effect of veratridine (*Honerjäger* and *Reiter* 1975) and germitrine (*Honerjäger* and *Reiter* 1977a), whereas veratridine and noradrenaline act additively. The increment in intracellular Na concentration induced by Na channel-gate toxins is normally counteracted by the Na-K pump, the activity of which is not directly influenced by Na channel-gate toxins. Hence, an inhibition of

the Na pump will enhance the extent of the increment in intracellular Na concentration caused by agents which increase Na influx. The synergistic action of ceveratrum alkaloids and a specific Na pump inhibitor thus indirectly points to the critical role of intracellular Na concentration for the positive inotropic effect of Na channel-gate toxins.

6.7 Propranolol

(±) Propranolol (5 μmol/litre) shifts the concentration-effect curve for the positive inotropic effect of veratridine to the right by a factor of 2 (*Honerjäger* and *Reiter* 1975). The same concentration of (+) propranolol causes the same degree of inhibition, although this isomer has only about 1/60 the activity of racemic propranolol in blocking the effects of β-adrenoceptor activation (*Howe* and *Shanks* 1966). The antagonism is thus unrelated to the blockade of β-adrenoceptors by propranolol, but is readily explained by the inhibitory effect of propranolol on myocardial Na channels which is identical for both isomers of propranolol (*Pollen* et al. 1969). Similarly, the antagonism of the positive inotropic effect of grayanotoxins by propranolol (10 μmol/litre, Sect. 4.5.2) may be entirely due to the blockade of Na channels by propranolol.

7 Summary and Conclusions

In recent years the detailed analysis of the mode of action of various Na channel-gate toxins has revealed that they prolong the open state of Na channels by mechanisms that differ in some detail. The alkaloids veratridine, batrachotoxin, and aconitine modify both activation and inactivation characteristics, while certain polypeptide toxins like ATX_{II} predominantly affect Na inactivation and one of the scorpion venoms selectively modifies Na activation. These mechanisms were clarified by voltage-clamp experiments on single nerve fibres. Less direct experiments were performed on myocardial cells, but they all indicate that the Na channels of cardiac sarcolemma are also modified by various Na channel-gate toxins. The modification of cardiac Na channels results in a prolongation of the repolarization phase of the cardiac action potential which, depending on the particular toxin, may become evident at any potential level between the plateau and close to the resting potential. In embryonic cardiac cells, the application of Na channel-gate toxins revealed the presence of normally silent TTX-sensitive Na channels.

The prolonged phase of repolarization provides the depolarizing stimulus for coupled premature action potentials and thus explains the arrhythmogenic effect of Na channel-gate toxins. This type of arrhythmia is not specific for this kind of substances, but it is the consequence of a selective alteration of Na channel kinetics and therefore is completely inhibited by TTX.

With the exception of aconitine, all Na channel-gate toxins with a demonstrable effect on myocardial Na channels were also shown to produce a positive inotropic effect in the prearrhythmic stage of action. Thus, a direct positive inotropic effect is observed in the presence of steroid alkaloids, diterpenoids, and polypeptides. Such a uniform response of the contractile mechanisms in the myocardial cell to substances of widely differing chemical structure suggests that the inotropic effect is somehow related to the known common mechanism of action of these toxins, i.e. the modification of the gating system of sarcolemmal Na channels.

The experimental evidence surveyed indicates that the mechanism of the positive inotropic effect of Na channel-gate toxins involves the following chain of subcellular events: The initial step is the alteration of the sarcolemmal Na channels by the toxin. The essentiality of this step is deduced from the observation that TTX prevents or abolishes the positive inotropic effect at concentrations which also prevent or abolish the electrophysiologic changes resulting from the Na channel modification. The selectivity of action of TTX in blocking Na channels is well established. In addition, TTX was shown to cause comparatively little or no antagonism to the positive inotropic effect of drugs that do not affect Na channel kinetics (dihydro-ouabain, noradrenaline, theophylline).

A cause-effect relationship requires that the causative event precedes the effect. This is clearly shown for Na channel-gate toxins in that the modified repolarization phase precedes the positive inotropic effect.

The slowing of Na channel kinetics prolongs the time during which Na ions flow into the cell. In addition, the prolonged repolarization phase indirectly affects voltage- and time-dependent ionic currents other than Na current. The change in membrane potential, however, is not essential for the positive inotropic effect. As shown in voltage-clamp experiments on frog atrial trabeculae, the positive inotropic effect is still present if the prolongation of the action potential is prevented by submitting the preparation to depolarizations of constant amplitude and duration. Hence, the inotropic effect is coupled to the increase in Na current induced by the toxins. The importance of Na influx is also indicated by the fact that the positive inotropic effect of Na channel-gate toxins is potentiated by dihydro-ouabain, an inhibitor of Na efflux.

How does an increase in Na influx mediate a positive inotropic effect? A well-documented mechanism is the Na-Ca exchange, which provides an increase in transsarcolemmal Ca influx in response to an elevation of the intracellular Na concentration. In fact, Na channel-gate toxins were used to demonstrate the existence, in cardiac cells, of a Na-Ca exchange mechanism because they are convenient chemical tools to selectively produce an increase of the intracellular Na concentration in small cells.

Acknowledgments. The author gratefully acknowledges that his research on ceveratrum alkaloids was encouraged by Professor Dr. M. Reiter and Professor Dr. O. Krayer. I am indebted to Drs. P.F. Baker, O. Krayer, M. Lazdunski, M. Reiter, and W. Ulbricht for reading the manuscript and suggesting improvements.

References

Adam KR, Schmidt H, Stämpfli R, Weiß C (1966) The effect of scorpion venom on single myelinated nerve fibres of the frog. Br J Pharmacol 26:666–677

Akera T, Brody TM (1978) The role of Na^+, K^+-ATPase in the inotropic action of digitalis. Pharmacol Rev 29:187–220

Akera T, Ku DD, Frank M, Brody TM, Iwasa J (1976) Effects of grayanotoxin I on cardiac Na^+, K^+-adenosine triphosphatase activity, transmembrane potential and myocardial contractile force. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 199:247–254

Albuquerque EX, Warnick JE (1972) The pharmacology of batrachotoxin. IV. Interaction with tetrodotoxin on innervated and chronically denervated rat skeletal muscle. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 180:683–697

Allen DG, Blinks JR (1978) Calcium transients in aequorin-injected frog cardiac muscle. Nature (London) 273:509–513

Alsen C, Béress L, Fischer K, Proppe D, Reinberg T, Sattler RW (1976) The action of a toxin from the sea anemone *Anemonia sulcata* upon mammalian heart muscles. Naunyn-Schmiedebergs Arch Pharmacol 295:55–62

Arbel ER, Lazzari J, Glick G (1975) Effects of veratrine on repolarization in the canine right bundle branch. Am J Physiol 229:1254–1260

Attwell D, Cohen I, Eisner D, Ohba M, Ojeda C (1979) The steady-state TTX-sensitive ("window") sodium current in cardiac Purkinje fibres. Pflügers Arch 379: 137–142

Baer M, Best PM, Reuter H (1976) Voltage-dependent action of tetrodotoxin in mammalian cardiac muscle. Nature (London) 263:344–345

Baker PF, McNaughton PA (1976) The effect of membrane potential on the calcium transport systems in squid axons. J Physiol (London) 260:24P–25P

Baker PF, McNaughton PA (1978) The influence of extracellular calcium binding on the calcium efflux from squid axons. J Physiol (London) 276:127–150

Baker PF, Blaustein MP, Hodgkin AL, Steinhardt RA (1969) The influence of calcium on sodium efflux in squid axons, J Physiol (London) 200:431–458

Bartels-Bernal E, Rosenberry TL, Daly JW (1977) Effect of batrachotoxin on electroplax of electric eel: Evidence for voltage-dependent interaction with sodium channels. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 74:951–955

Basseches P, Bianchi CP (1976) Mode of action of veratridine on perfused frog ventricle. Arch Int Pharmacodyn Ther 221:190–196

Bassingthwaighte JB, Fry CH, McGuigan JAS (1976) Relationship between internal calcium and outward current in mammalian ventricular muscle: a mechanism for the control of the action potential duration? J Physiol (London) 262:15–37

Beeler GW, Reuter H (1970a) Voltage clamp experiments in ventricular myocardial fibres. J Physiol (London) 207:165–190

Beeler GW, Reuter H (1970b) Membrane calcium current in ventricular myocardial fibres. J Physiol (London) 207:191–209

Beeler GW, Reuter H (1970c) The relation between membrane potential, membrane currents and activation of contraction in ventricular myocardial fibres. J Physiol (London) 207:211–229

Beeler GW, Reuter H (1977) Reconstruction of the action potential of ventricular myocardial fibres. J Physiol (London) 268:177–210

Benforado JM (1957) Studies on veratrum alkaloids. XXVI. Comparison of the cardiac action of various tertiary amine ester alkaloids. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 120: 412–425

Benforado JM (1967) The veratrum alkaloids. In: Root WS, Hofmann FG (eds) Physiological pharmacology, vol 4. Academic Press, New York, pp 331–398

Benninger C, Einwächter HM, Haas HG, Kern R (1976) Calcium-sodium antagonism on the frog's heart: a voltage-clamp study. J Physiol (London) 259:617–645

Berçsewicz A, Reuter H (1977) The effects of adrenaline and theophylline on action potential and contraction of mammalian ventricular muscle under "rested-state" and "steady-state" stimulation. Naunyn-Schmiedebergs Arch Pharmacol 301: 99–107

Béress L, Béress R, Wunderer G (1975a) Isolation and characterization of three polypeptides with neurotoxic activity from *Anemonia sulcata*. FEBS Lett 50:311–314

Béress L, Béress R, Wunderer G (1975b) Purification of three polypeptides with neurotoxic and cardiotoxic activity from the sea anemone *Anemonia sulcata*. Toxicon 13:359–367

Béress L, Wunderer G, Wachter E (1977) Amino acid sequence of toxin III from *Anemonia sulcata*. Hoppe-Seylers Z Physiol Chem 358:986–988

Bergmann C, Dubois JM, Rojas E, Rathmayer W (1976) Decreased rate of sodium conductance inactivation in the node of Ranvier induced by a polypeptide toxin from sea anemone. Biochim Biophys Acta 455:173–184

Bernard C, Gargouil YM (1968) Les perméabilités de la membrane myocardique embryonnaire du rat; étude de leurs évolutions au cours de l'embryogénèse à l'aide d'inhibiteurs: tétrodoxin, manganèse, tetraethylammonium. CR Acad Sci (Paris) 267:1626–1629

Bernard P, Couraud F (1979) Electrophysiological studies on embryonic heart cells in culture. Scorpion toxin as a tool to reveal latent fast sodium channel. Biochim Biophys Acta 553:154–168

Blair RW, Peterson DF, Bishop VS (1978) The effects of authopleurin-A on cardiac dynamics in conscious dogs. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 207:271–276

Blaustein MP (1977) Effects of internal and external cations and of ATP on sodium-calcium and calcium-calcium exchange in squid axons. Biophys J 20:79–111

Blaustein MP, Hodgkin AL (1969) The effect of cyanide on the efflux of calcium from squid axons. J Physiol (London) 200:497–527

Bönisch H, Graefe KH, Keller B (1980) Reserpine-like, tetrodotoxin-resistant effect of veratridine in the rat vas deferens. Naunyn Schmiedebergs Arch Pharmacol 311:R61

Bohnenkamp H (1922) Über die Wirkungsweise der Herznerven. Pflügers Arch 196: 275–310

Bozler E (1943) The initiation of impulses in cardiac muscle. Am J Physiol 138: 273–282

Brooks CMcC, Hoffmann BF, Suckling EE, Orias O (1955) Excitability of the heart. Grune and Stratton, New York, pp 261–266

Cahalan MD (1975) Modification of sodium channel gating in frog myelinated nerve fibres by *Centruroides sculpturatus* scorpion venom. J Physiol (London) 244: 511–534

Carafoli E, Crompton M (1978) The regulation of intracellular calcium by mitochondria. Ann NY Acad Sci 307:269–283

Catterall WA (1975) Activation of the action potential Na ionophore of cultured neuroblastoma cells by veratridine and batrachotoxin. J Biol Chem 250:4053–4059

Catterall WA (1980) Neurotoxins that act on voltage-sensitive sodium channels in excitable membranes. Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol 20:15–44

Chamberlain SG, Kerkut GA (1969) Voltage clamp analysis of the sodium and calcium inward currents in snail neurones. Comp Biochem Physiol 28:787–801

Chapman RA (1974) A study of the contractures induced in frog atrial trabeculae by a reduction of the bathing sodium concentration. J Physiol (London) 237:295–313

Chapman RA (1979) Excitation-contraction coupling in cardiac muscle. Prog Biophys Mol Biol 35:1–52

Chen C, Gettes LS, Katzung BG (1975) Effect of lidocaine and quinidine on steady-state characteristics and recovery kinetics of $(dV/dt)_{max}$ in guinea pig ventricular myocardium. Circ Res 37:20–29

Cleeman L, Morad M (1976) Extracellular potassium accumulation and inward-going potassium rectification in voltage-clamped ventricular muscle. Science 191:90–92

Coraboeuf E, Deroubaix E, Tazieff-Depierre F (1975) Effect of toxin II isolated from scorpion venom on action potential and contraction of mammalian heart. J Mol Cell Cardiol 7:643–653

Coraboeuf E, Deroubaix E, Coulombe A (1979) Effect of tetrodotoxin on action potentials of the conducting system in the dog heart. Am J Physiol 236:H561–H567

Corrado AP, Antonio A, Diniz CR (1968) Brazilian scorpion venom *(Tityus serrulatus)*: an unusual sympathetic postganglionic stimulant. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 164:253–258

Couraud F, Rochat H, Lissitzky S (1976) Stimulation of sodium and calcium uptake by scorpion toxin in chick embryo heart cells. Biochim Biophys Acta 433:90–100

Cranefield PF (1977) Action potentials, afterpotentials, and arrhythmias. Circ Res 41:415–423

Daly J, Witkop B (1971) Batrachotoxin, an extremely active cardio- and neurotoxin from the Colombian arrow poison frog. Clin Toxicol 4:331–342

DeHaan RL, McDonald TF, Sachs HG (1975) Development of tetrodotoxin sensitivity of embryonic chick heart cells in vitro. In: Liebermann M, Sano T (eds) Developmental and physiological correlates of cardiac muscle. Raven Press, New York, pp 155–167

Deitmer JW, Ellis D (1978) Changes in the intracellular sodium activity of sheep heart Purkinje fibres produced by calcium and other divalent cations. J Physiol (London) 277:437–453

DiPolo R (1979) Calcium influx in internally dialyzed squid giant axons. J Gen Physiol 73:91–113

DiPolo R, Beaugé L (1979) Physiological role of ATP-driven calcium pump in squid axon. Nature (London) 278:271–273

Donatsch P, Lowe DA, Richardson BP, Tylor P (1977) The functional significance of sodium channels in pancreatic beta cell membranes. J Physiol (London) 267:357–376

Ebner F, Reiter M (1977) The dependence on contraction frequency of the positive inotropic effect of dihydro-ouabain. Naunyn Schmiedebergs Arch Pharmacol 300: 1–9

Fabiato A, Fabiato F (1973) Activation of skinned cardiac cells. Subcellular effects of cardioactive drugs. Eur J Cardiol 1/2:143–155

Fayet G, Couraud F, Miranda F, Lissitzky S (1974) Electro-optical system for monitoring activity of heart cells in culture: application to the study of several drugs and scorpion toxins. Eur J Pharmacol 27:165–174

Feinstein MB, Paimre M (1968) Mechanism of cardiovascular action of tetrodotoxin in the cat. Circ Res 23:553–565

Ferrier GR (1977) Digitalis arrhythmias: role of oscillatory afterpotentials. Prog Cardiovasc Dis 19:459–474

Fieser LF, Fieser M (1959) Steroids. Reihold, New York

Fosset M, De Barry J, Lenoir MC, Lazdunski M (1977) Analysis of molecular aspects of Na^+ and Ca^{2+} uptakes by embryonic cardiac cells in culture. J Biol Chem 252: 6112–6117

Frankenhaeuser B, Hodgkin AL (1957) The action of calcium on the electrical properties of squid axons. J Physiol (London) 137:218–244

Fujiwara M, Muramatsu I, Hidaka H, Ikushima S, Ashida K (1979) Effects of goniopora toxin, a polypeptide isolated from coral, on electromechanical properties of rabbit myocardium. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 210:153–157

Galper JB, Catterall WA (1979) Inhibition of sodium channels by D 600. Mol Pharmacol 15:174–178

Gettes LS, Reuter H (1974) Slow recovery from inactivation of inward currents in mammalian myocardial fibres. J Physiol (London) 240:703–724

Glitsch HG, Reuter H, Scholz H (1970) The effect of the internal sodium concentration on calcium fluxes in isolated guinea-pig auricles. J Physiol (London) 209:25–43

Graham HT, Gasser HS (1931) Modification of nerve response by veratrine, protoveratrine and aconitine. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 43:163–185

Hashimoto K, Ochi R, Hashimoto K, Inui J, Miura Y (1980) The ionic mechanism of prolongation of action potential duration of cardiac ventricular muscle by anthopleurin-A and its relationship to the inotropic effect. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 215: 479–485

Hashimoto Y, Ashida K (1973) Screening of toxic corals and isolation of a toxic polypeptide from *Goniospora* spp. In: Proceedings of the Second International Symposium on *Snidaria*. Publ Seto Mar Biol Lab 20:703–711

Heistracher P, Pillat B (1962) Elektrophysiologische Untersuchungen über die Wirkung von Chinidin auf die Aconitinvergiftung von Herzmuskelfasern. Naunyn-Schmiedebergs Arch Exp Path Pharmak 244:48–62

Hille B (1968) Pharmacological modifications of the sodium channels of frog nerve. J Gen Physiol 51:199–219

Hille B (1970) Ionic channels in nerve membranes. Prog Biophys Mol Biol 21:1–32

Hodgkin AL, Huxley AF (1952) A quantitative description of membrane current and its application to conduction and excitation in nerve. J Physiol (London) 117: 500–544

Hogan PM, Albuquerque EX (1971) The pharmacology of batrachotoxin. III. Effect on the heart Purkinje fibres. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 176:529–537

Hondeghem LM, Katzung BG (1977) Time- and voltage-dependent interactions of antiarrhythmic drugs with cardiac sodium channels. Biochim Biophys Acta 472: 373–398

Honerjäger P (1973) Electrophysiological effects of various ceveratrum alkaloids on single nerve axons. Naunyn Schmiedebergs Arch Pharmacol 280:391–416

Honerjäger P (1977) Die Kontraktionskraft der Herzmuskulatur bei erhöhter Durchlässigkeit des Sarkolemms für Natriumionen. Habilitationsschrift, Technische Universität München

Honerjäger P (1980) A neurally mediated inotropic effect of veratridine and cevadine on isolated guinea-pig papillary muscle. Naunyn Schmiedebergs Arch Pharmacol 314:157–160

Honerjäger P, Reiter M (1975) The relation between the effects of veratridine on action potential and contraction in mammalian ventricular myocardium. Naunyn-Schmiedebergs Arch Pharmacol 289:1–28

Honerjäger P, Reiter M (1977a) Sarcolemmal sodium permeability and contractile force of guinea pig papillary muscle. Effects of germitrine. Circ Res 40:90–98
Honerjäger P, Reiter M (1977b) The cardiotoxic effect of batrachotoxin. Naunyn-Schmiedebergs Arch Pharmacol 299:239–252
Horackova M, Vassort G (1973) Ionic mechanism of inotropic effect of veratrine on frog heart. Pflügers Arch 341:281–284
Horackova M, Vassort G (1974) Excitation-contraction coupling in frog heart. Effect of veratrine. Pflügers Arch 352:291–302
Horackova M, Vassort G (1976) Calcium conductance in relation to contractility in frog myocardium. J Physiol (London) 259:597–616
Horackova M, Vassort G (1979a) Sodium-calcium exchange in regulation of cardiac contractility. Evidence for an electrogenic, voltage-dependent mechanism. J Gen Physiol 73:403–424
Horackova M, Vassort G (1979b) Slow inward current and contraction in frog atrial muscle at various extracellular concentrations of Na and Ca ions. J Mol Cell Cardiol 11:733–753
Hotta Y, Takeya K, Kobayashi S, Harada N, Sakakibara J, Shirai N (1980) Relationship between structure, positive inotropic potency and lethal dose of grayanotoxins in guinea pig. Arch Toxicol 44:259–267
Howe R, Shanks RG (1966) Optical isomers of propranolol. Nature (London) 210: 1336–1338
Iijima T, Pappano AJ (1979) Ontogenetic increase of the maximal rate of rise of the chick embryo heart action potential: relationship to voltage, time and tetrodotoxin. Circ Res 44:358–367
Isenberg G (1975) Is potassium conductance of cardiac Purkinje fibres controlled by $[Ca^{2+}]_i$? Nature (London) 253:273–274
Ishima Y (1968) The effect of tetrodotoxin and sodium substitution on the action potential in the course of development of the embryonic chick heart. Proc Jpn Acad 44:170–175
Ito K, Karaki H, Urakawa N (1979) Effects of palytoxin on mechanical and electrical activities of guinea pig papillary muscle. Jpn J Pharmacol 29:467–476
Johnson PN, Inesi G (1969) The effect of methylxanthines and local anesthetics on fragmented sarcoplasmic reticulum. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 169:308–314
Kahn JB, Acheson GH (1955) Effects of cardiac glycosides and other lactones, and of certain other compounds, on cation transfer in human erythrocytes. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 115:305–318
Kakisawa H, Kozima T, Yanai M, Nakanishi K (1965) Stereochemistry of grayanotoxins. Tetrahedron 21:3091–3104
Kass RS, Lederer WJ, Tsien RW, Weingart R (1978a) Role of calcium ions in transient inward currents and aftercontractions induced by strophanthidin in cardiac Purkinje fibres. J Physiol (London) 281:187–208
Kass RS, Tsien RW, Weingart R (1978b) Ionic basis of transient inward current induced by strophanthidin in cardiac Purkinje fibres. J Physiol (London) 281:209–226
Katz AM, Repke D (1967) Sodium and potassium sensitivity of calcium uptake and calcium binding by dog cardiac microsomes. Circ Res 21:767–775
Kaufmann R, Fleckenstein A, Antoni H, Wolf H (1963) Ursachen und Auslösungsbedingungen von Myokard-Kontraktionen ohne reguläres Aktionspotential. Pflügers Arch 278:435–446
Kayaalp SO, Albuquerque EX, Warnick JE (1970) Ganglionic and cardiac actions of batrachotoxin. Eur J Pharmacol 12:10–18
Khodorov BI (1979) Some aspects of the pharmacology of sodium channels in nerve membrane. Process of inactivation. Biochem Pharmacol 28:1451–1459
Khodorov BI, Revenko SV (1979) Further analysis of the mechanisms of action of batrachotoxin on the membrane of myelinated nerve. Neuroscience 4:1315–1330
Koch-Weser J (1966) Myocardial actions of veratrum alkaloids. 3rd Intern Pharmacol Congr São Paolo, No 505 (abstr)

Kopeyan C, Martinez G, Rochat H (1979) Amino acid sequence of neurotoxin III of the scorpion *Androctonus australis* Hector. Eur J Biochem 94:609–615

Koppenhöfer E, Schmidt H (1968a) Die Wirkung von Skorpiongift auf die Ionenströme des Ranvierschen Schnürrings. I. Die Permeabilitäten P_{Na} und P_K. Pflügers Arch 303:133–149

Koppenhöfer E, Schmidt H (1968b) Die Wirkung von Skorpiongift auf die Ionenströme des Ranvierschen Schnürrings. II. Unvollständige Natrium-Inaktivierung. Pflügers Arch 303:150–161

Korth M (1978) Effects of several phosphodiesterase-inhibitors on guinea-pig myocardium. Naunyn-Schmiedebergs Arch Pharmacol 302:77–86

Krayer O (1961) The history of the Bezold-Jarisch effect. Naunyn-Schmiedebergs Arch Exp Path Pharmak 240:361–368

Krayer O, Acheson GH (1946) The pharmacology of the veratrum alkaloids. Physiol Rev 26:383–446

Krayer O, George HW (1951) Studies on veratrum alkaloids. XV. The quinine-like effect of veratramine upon the single twitch and upon the "veratrine response" of the sartorius muscle of the frog. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 103:249–258

Krayer O, Meilman E (1977) Veratrum alkaloids with antihypertensive activity. In: Gross F (ed) Antihypertensive agents. Springer, Berlin Heidelberg New York (Handbook of experimental pharmacology, vol 39, pp 547–570)

Kreitner D (1975) Evidence for the existence of a rapid sodium channel in the membrane of rabbit sinoatrial cells. J Mol Cell Cardiol 7:655–662

Ku DD, Akera T, Frank M, Brody TM (1977) The effects of grayanotoxin I and α-dihydrograyanotoxin II on guinea-pig myocardium. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 200: 363–372

Kumazawa Z, Iriye R (1970) Stereochemistry of grayanotoxin II. Tetrahedron 12: 927–930

Kupchan SM, By AW (1968) Steroid alkaloids: The *Veratrum* group. In: Manske RHF (ed) Alkaloids, vol 10. Academic Press, New York, pp 193–285

Kupchan SM, Flacke W (1967) Hypotensive veratrum alkaloids. In: Schlittler E (ed) Antihypertensive agents, vol 7. Academic Press, New York, pp 429–458

Kupchan SM, Zimmerman JH, Afonso A (1961) The alkaloids and taxonomy of *Veratrum* and related genera. Lloydia 24:1–26

Langer SZ, Adler-Graschinsky E, Almeida AP, Diniz CR (1975) Prejunctional effects of a purified toxin from the scorpion *Tityus serrulatus.* Naunyn Schmiedebergs Arch Pharmacol 287:243–259

Lazdunski M, Balerna M, Barhanin J, Chicheportiche R, Fosset M, Frelin C, Jacques Y, Lombet A, Pouysségur J, Renaud JF, Romey G, Schweitz H, Vincent JP (1980) Molecular aspects of the structure and mechanism of the voltage-dependent Na^+ channel. Ann NY Acad Sci 358:169–182

Lee CO, Kang DH, Sokol JH, Lee KS (1980) Relation between intracellular Na ion activity and tension of sheep cardiac Purkinje fibres exposed to dihydro-ouabain. Biophys J 29:315–330

Leicht R, Meves H, Wellhöner HH (1971) The effect of veratridine on *Helix pomatia* neurones. Pflügers Arch 323:50–62

List PH, Hörhammer L (1969) Hagers Handbuch der pharmazeutischen Praxis, vol 2. Springer, Berlin Heidelberg New York

Low PA, Wu CH, Narahashi T (1979) The effect of anthopleurin-A on crayfish giant axon. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 210:417–421

Lowe DA, Bush BMH, Ripley SH (1978) Pharmacological evidence for "fast" sodium channels in nonspiking neurones. Nature (London) 274:289–290

Martinez G, Kopeyan C, Schweitz H, Lazdunski M (1977) Toxin III from *Anemonia sulcata:* Primary structure. FEBS Lett 84:247–252

Matsuda K, Hoffman BF, Ellner CN, Katz M, Brooks CMcC (1953) Veratrine induced prolongation of repolarization in the mammalian heart. In: Proc 19th Intern Physiol Congr, Montreal, pp 596–597

Matsuda K, Hoshi T, Kameyama S (1959) Effects of aconitine on the cardiac membrane potential of the dog. Jpn J Pharmacol 9:419–429
Matsumura M, Takaori S (1959a) The effect of drugs on the cardiac membrane potentials in the rabbit. I. Ventricular muscle fibers. Jpn J Pharmacol 8:134–142
Matsumura M, Takaori S (1959b) The effect of drugs on the cardiac membrane potentials in the rabbit. II. Auricular muscle fibers and the sinoatrial node. Jpn J Pharmacol 8:143–154
McAllister RE, Noble D, Tsien RW (1975) Reconstruction of the electrical activity of cardiac Purkinje fibres. J Physiol (London) 251:1–59
McDonald TF, Sachs HG (1975) Electrical activity in embryonic heart cell aggregates. Developmental aspects. Pflügers Arch 354:151–164
McDonald TF, Trautwein W (1978) Membrane currents in cat myocardium: separation of inward and outward components. J Physiol (London) 274:193–216
McDonald TF, Sachs HG, DeHaan RL (1972) Development of sensitivity to tetrodotoxin in beating chick embryo hearts, single cells, and aggregates. Science 176: 1248–1250
McLean MJ, Sperelakis N (1976) Retention of fully differentiated electrophysiological properties of chick embryonic heart cells in culture. Dev Biol 50:134–141
Miranda F, Kopeyan C, Rochat H, Rochat C, Lissitzky S (1970) Purification of animal neurotoxins. Eur J Biochem 16:514–523
Miyamoto H, Racker E (1980) Solubilization and partial purification of the Ca^{2+}/Na^{+} antiporter from the plasma membrane of bovine heart. J Biol Chem 255: 2656–2658
Moe GK, Krayer O (1943) Studies on veratrum alkaloids. II. The action of veratridine and cevine upon the isolated mammalian heart. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 77: 220–228
Morad M, Goldman Y (1973) Excitation-contraction coupling in heart muscle: membrane control of development of tension. Prog Biophys Mol Biol 27:259–313
Morad M, Trautwein W (1968) The effect of the duration of the action potential on contraction in the mammalian heart muscle. Pflügers Arch 299:66–82
Morales-Aguilera A, Vaughan Williams EM (1965) The effects on cardiac muscle of β-receptor antagonists in relation to their activity as local anesthetics. Br J Pharmacol 24:332–338
Moss J, Thoa NB, Kopin IJ (1974) On the mechanism of scorpion toxin-induced release of norepinephrine from peripheral adrenergic neurons. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 190:39–48
Mozhayeva GN, Naumov AP, Negulyaev YA, Nosyreva ED (1977) The permeability of aconitine-modified sodium channels to univalent cations in myelinated nerve. Biochim Biophys Acta 466:461–473
Mullins LJ (1979) The generation of electric currents in cardiac fibers by Na/Ca exchange. Am J Physiol 236:C103–C110
Munson R, Westermark B, Glaser L (1979) Tetrodotoxin-sensitive sodium channels in normal human fibroblasts and normal human glia-like cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 76:6425–6429
Narahashi T (1974) Chemicals as tools in the study of excitable membranes. Physiol Rev 54:813–889
Narahashi T, Seyama I (1974) Mechanism of nerve membrane depolarization caused by grayanotoxin I. J Physiol (London) 242:471–487
Narahashi T, Anderson NC, Moore JW (1966) Tetrodotoxin does not block excitation from inside the nerve membrane. Science 153:765–767
Narahashi T, Shapiro BI, Deguchi T, Scuka M, Wang CM (1972) Effects of scorpion venom on squid axon membranes. Am J Physiol 222:850–857
New W, Trautwein W (1972) The ionic nature of slow inward current and its relation to contraction. Pflügers Arch 334:24–38
Niedergerke R (1963) Movements of Ca in frog heart ventricles at rest and during contractures. J Physiol (London) 167:515–550

Noma A, Yanagihara K, Irisawa H (1977) Inward current of the rabbit sinoatrial node cell. Pflügers Arch 372:43–51

Ohta M, Narahashi T, Keeler RF (1973) Effects of veratrum alkaloids on membrane potential and conductance of squid and crayfish giant axons. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 184:143–154

Pappano AJ (1972) Action potentials in chick atria: increased susceptibility to blockade by tetrodotoxin during embryonic development. Circ Res 31:379–388

Peper K, Trautwein W (1967) The effect of aconitine on the membrane current in cardiac muscle. Pflügers Arch 296:328–336

Philipson KD, Nishimoto AY (1980) Na^+-Ca^{2+} exchange is affected by membrane potential in cardiac sarcolemmal vesicles. J Biol Chem 255:6880–6882

Pitts BJR (1979) Stoichiometry of sodium-calcium exchange in cardiac sarcolemmal vesicles. Coupling to the sodium pump. J Biol Chem 254:6232–6235

Pollen DW, Scott AC, Wallace WFM (1969) A comparison of the direct effects and adrenergic blocking activity of D, L- and D-propranolol on the electrical and mechanical behaviours of isolated frog ventricle. Cardiovasc Res 3:7–13

Portius HJ, Repke K (1964) Versuch einer Analyse der Beziehungen zwischen chemischer Struktur and Digitalis-ähnlicher Wirksamkeit auf der Rezeptorebene. Arzneim Forsch 14:1073–1077

Pouysségur J, Jacques Y, Lazdunski M (1980) Identification of a tetrodotoxin-sensitive Na^+ channel in a variety of fibroblast lines. Nature (London) 286:162–164

Rathmayer W, Béress L (1976) The effect of toxins from *Anemonia sulcata (Coelenterata)* on neuromuscular transmission and nerve action potentials in the crayfish *(Astacus leptodactylus)*. J Comp Physiol 109:373–382

Ravens U (1976) Electromechanical studies of an *Anemonia sulcata* toxin in mammalian cardiac muscle. Naunyn Schmiedebergs Arch Pharmacol 296:73–78

Redfern P, Lundh H, Thesleff S (1970) Tetrodotoxin resistant action potentials in denervated rat skeletal muscle. Eur J Pharmacol 11:263–265

Reeves JP, Sutko JL (1979) Sodium-calcium exchange in cardiac membrane vesicles. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 76:590–594

Reeves JP, Sutko JL (1980) Sodium-calcium exchange activity generates a current in cardiac membrane vesicles. Science 208:1461–1464

Reiter M (1962) Die Entstehung der „Nachkontraktionen" im Herzmuskel unter Einwirkung von Calcium und von Digitalisglykosiden in Abhängigkeit von der Reizfrequenz. Naunyn Schmiedebergs Arch Pharmacol 242:497–507

Reiter M (1963) Über die inotrope Wirkung von Veratridin and Cevadin auf den Herzmuskel. Naunyn Schmiedebergs Arch Pharmacol 246:45

Reiter M (1972a) Drugs and heart muscle. Annu Rev Pharmacol 12:111–124

Reiter M (1972b) Differences in the inotropic cardiac effects of noradrenaline and dihydro-ouabain. Naunyn Schmiedebergs Arch Pharmacol 275:243–250

Reiter M (to be published) The positive inotropic action of cardioactive steroids on cardiac ventricular muscle. In: Greeff K (ed) Cardiac glycosides. Springer, Berlin Heidelberg New York (Handbook of experimental pharmacology, vol 56)

Reiter M, Stickel FJ, Weber S (1966) The influence of the extracellular potassium concentration on the glycoside effects upon contractile force and action potential duration of the guinea-pig papillary muscle. Experientia 22:665

Reuter H (1979) Properties of two inward membrane currents in the heart. Annu Rev Physiol 41:413–424

Reuter H, Scholz H (1977) A study of the ion selectivity and the kinetic properties of the calcium-dependent, slow inward current in mammalian cardiac muscle. J Physiol (London) 264:17–47

Reuter H, Seitz N (1968) The dependence of calcium efflux from cardiac muscle on temperature and external ion composition. J Physiol (London) 195:451–470

Ritchie JM (1979) A pharmacological approach to the structure of sodium channels in myelinated axons. Annu Rev Neurosci 2:341–362

Rochat H, Rochat C, Kopeyan C, Miranda F, Lissitzky S, Edman P (1970) Scorpion neurotoxins: A family of homologous proteins. FEBS Lett 10:349–351

Rojas E, Rudy B (1976) Destruction of the sodium conductance inactivation by a specific protease in perfused nerve fibres from *Loligo*. J Physiol (London) 262: 501–531

Romey G, Abita JP, Schweitz H, Wunderer G, Lazdunski M (1976) Sea anemone toxin: A tool to study molecular mechanisms of nerve conduction and excitation-secretion coupling. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 73:4055–4059

Romey G, Jacques Y, Schweitz H, Fosset M, Lazdunski M (1979) The sodium channel in non-impulsive cells. Interaction with specific neurotoxins. Biochim Biophys Acta 556:344–353

Romey G, Renaud JF, Fosset M, Lazdunski M (1980) Pharmacological properties of the interaction of a sea anemone polypeptide toxin with cardiac cells in culture. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 213:607–615

Rosen MR, Danilo P (1980) Effects of tetrodotoxin, lidocaine, verapamil, and AHR-2666 on ouabain-induced delayed afterdepolarizations in canine Purkinje fibres. Circ Res 46:117–124

Ross SB, Kelder D (1979) Release of ^{3}H-noradrenaline from the rat vas deferens under various in vitro conditions. Acta Physiol Scand 105:338–349

Roulet MJ, Mongo KG, Vassort G, Ventura-Clapier R (1979) The dependence of twitch relaxation on sodium ions and on internal Ca^{2+} stores in voltage-clamped frog atrial fibres. Pflügers Arch 379:259–268

Ruiz-Ceretti E, Ponce Zumino A (1976) Action potential changes under varied $[Na^+]_o$ and $[Ca^{2+}]_o$ indicating the existence of two inward currents in cells of the rabbit atrioventricular node. Circ Res 39:326–336

Schmidt H, Schmitt O (1974) Effect of aconitine on the sodium permeability of the node of Ranvier. Pflügers Arch 349:133–148

Schmidt RF (1960) Versuche mit Aconitin zum Problem der spontanen Erregungsbildung im Herzen. Pflügers Arch 271:526–536

Scholz H (1980) Effects of beta- and alpha-adrenoceptor activators and adrenergic transmitter-releasing agents on the mechanical activity of the heart. In: Szekeres L (ed) Adrenergic activators and inhibitors. Springer, Berlin Heidelberg New York (Handbook of experimental pharmacology, vol 54/I, pp 651–733)

Scholz H, de Yazikof E (1971) Über den Mechanismus der positiv inotropen Wirkung von Theophyllin am Warmblüterherzen. I. Einfluß der extracellulären Ca-, Na- und K-Konzentration und von Reserpin. Naunyn Schmiedebergs Arch Pharmacol 271: 374–395

Scriabine A, van Arman CG, Morgan G, Morris AA, Bennett CD, Bohidar NR (1979) Cardiotonic effects of anthopleurin-A, a polypeptide from a sea anemone. J Cardiovasc Pharmacol 1:571–583

Seibel K, Karema E, Takeya K, Reiter M (1978) Effect of noradrenaline on an early and a late component of the myocardial contraction. Naunyn Schmiedebergs Arch Pharmacol 305:65–74

Seifen E (1969) The chronotropic effects of ouabain and germine-3-monoacetate as influenced by calcium. Pharmacologist 11:295

Seyama I (1978) Effect of grayanotoxin I on SA node and right atrial myocardia of the rabbit. Am J Physiol 235:C136–C142

Shanes AM (1952) The ultraviolet spectra and neurophysiological effects of "veratrine" alkaloids. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 105:216–231

Shanes AM (1958) Electrochemical aspects of physiological and pharmacological action in excitable cells. II. The action potential and excitation. Pharmacol Rev 10:165–273

Shibata S, Norton TR, Izumi T, Matsuo T, Katsuki S (1976) A polypeptide (AP-A) from sea anemone *(Anthopleura xanthogrammica)* with potent positive inotropic action. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 199:298–309

Shibata S, Izumi T, Seriguchi DG, Norton TR (1978) Further studies on the positive inotropic effect of the polypeptide anthopleurin-A from a sea anemone. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 205:683–692

Shigenobu K, Sperelakis N (1971) Development of sensitivity to tetrodotoxin of chick embryonic hearts with age. J Mol Cell Cardiol 3:271–286

Shigeto N, Irisawa H (1974) The effect of polarization on the action potential of the rabbit AV nodal cells. Jpn J Physiol 24:605–616

Shimizu T, Iwamura N, Toyama J, Yamada K, Shibata S (1979) Effect of cardiotonic polypeptide anthopleurin-A on canine Purkinje and ventricular muscle fibers. Eur J Pharmacol 56:7–13

Shotzberger GS, Albuquerque EX, Daly JW (1976) The effects of batrachotoxin on cat papillary muscle. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 196:433–444

Sperelakis N, Lehmkuhl D (1968) Ba^{++} and Sr^{++} reversal of the inhibition produced by ouabain and local anesthetics on membrane potentials of cultured heart cells. Exp Cell Res 49:396–410

Sperelakis N, Pappano AJ (1969) Increase in P_{Na} and P_K of cultured heart cells produces by veratridine. J Gen Physiol 53:97–114

Sperelakis N, Shigenobu K (1972) Change in membrane properties of chick embryonic hearts during development. J Gen Physiol 60:430–453

Starkus JG, Narahashi T (1978) Sensitivity of excitable and inexcitable membranes to α-dihydrograyanotoxin II. Am J Physiol 235:C204–C211

Sulakhe PV, St Louis PJ (1980) Passive and active calcium fluxes across plasma membranes. Prog Biophys Mol Biol 35:135–195

Swain HH, McCarthy DA (1957) Veratrine, protoveratrine, and andromedotoxin arrhythmias in the isolated dog heart. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 121:379–388

Tanaka M, Hanin M, Yasunobu KT, Norton TR (1977) Amino acid sequence of the *Anthopleura xanthogrammica* heart stimulant, anthopleurin-A. Biochemistry 16: 204–208

Tang CM, Strichartz GR, Orkand RK (1979) Sodium channels in axons and glial cells of the optic nerve of *Necturus maculosa*. J Gen Physiol 74:629–642

Tanz RD (1974) Pharmacology of aconitine-induced automaticity on in vitro cat myocardial preparations. II. Effects of refractory period prolongation, reduced sodium and tetrodotoxin. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 191:232–240

Tanz RD, Robbins JB, Kemple KL, Allen PA (1973) Pharmacology of aconitine-induced automaticity of cat papillary muscle. I. Effect of dose, tension rate and endogenous catecholamines. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 185:427–437

Tarr M (1971) Two inward currents in frog atrial muscle. J Gen Physiol 58:523–543

Thoa NB, Wooten GF, Axelrod J, Kopin IJ (1975) On the mechanism of release of norepinephrine from sympathetic nerves induced by depolarizing agents and sympathomimetic drugs. Mol Pharmacol 11:10–18

Tokuyama T, Daly J, Witkop B (1969) The structure of batrachotoxin, a steroidal alkaloid from the Colombian arrow poison frog, *Phyllobates aurotaenia*, and partial synthesis of batrachotoxin and its analogs and homologs. J Am Chem Soc 91: 3931–3938

Trautwein W (1963) Generation and conduction of impulses in the heart as affected by drugs. Pharmacol Rev 15:277–332

Trautwein W (1973) Membrane currents in cardiac muscle fibers. Physiol Rev 53: 793–835

Trautwein W, McDonald TF, Tripathi O (1975) Calcium conductance and tension in mammalian ventricular muscle. Pflügers Arch 354:55–74

Ulbricht W (1969) The effect of veratridine on excitable membranes of nerve and muscle. Erg Physiol 61:18–71

Ulbricht W (1972a) Rate of veratridine action on the nodal membrane. I. Fast phase determined during sustained depolarization in the voltage clamp. Pflügers Arch 336:187–199

Ulbricht W (1972b) Rate of veratridine action on the nodal membrane. II. Fast and slow phase determined with periodic impulses in the voltage clamp. Pflügers Arch 336:201–212

Ulbricht W (1974) Drugs to explore the ionic channels in the axon membrane. In: Jaenicke L (ed) Biochemistry of sensory functions. Springer, Berlin Heidelberg New York, pp 351–366

Vassalle M, Bhattacharyya M (1980) Local anesthetics and the role of sodium in the force development by canine ventricular muscle and Purkinje fibers. Circ Res 47: 666–674

Villegas J, Sevcik C, Barnola FV, Villegas R (1976) Grayanotoxin, veratrine, and tertodotoxin-sensitive sodium pathways in the Schwann cell membrane of squid nerve fibers. J Gen Physiol 67:369–380

Walton M, Fozzard HA (1979) The relation of $\dot{V}_{max}$ to I_{Na}, $\bar{G}_{Na}$, and h_∞ in a model of the cardiac Purkinje fiber. Biophys J 25:407–420

Wiesner K, Kao W, Jay EWK (1969) A rigorous, purely chemical structure proof for aconitine and delphinine. Can J Chem 47:2734–2737

Wood EH, Heppner RL, Weidmann S (1969) Inotropic effects of electric currents. Circ Res 24:409–445

Wunderer G, Eulitz M (1978) Amino acid sequence of toxin I from *Anemonia sulcata.* Eur J Biochem 89:11–17

Wunderer G, Fritz H, Wachter E, Machleidt W (1976) Amino acid sequence of a coelenterate toxin: Toxin II from *Anemonia silcata.* Eur J Biochem 68:193–198

Yamagishi S, Sano T (1966) Effect of tetrodotoxin on the pacemaker action potential of the sinus node. Proc Jpn Acad 42:1194–1196

Zlotkin E, Miranda F, Rochat H (1978) Chemistry and pharmacology of *Buthinae* scorpion venoms. In: Bettini S (ed) Arthropod venoms. Springer, Berlin Heidelberg New York (Handbook of experimental pharmacology, vol 48, pp 317–369)

Rev. Physiol. Biochem. Pharmacol., Vol. 92

Factors Influencing Renal Sodium Reabsorption in Volume Expansion

FRANKLYN G. KNOX * and JOHN A. HAAS *

Contents

* Nephrology Research Laboratories, Departments of Physiology and Biophysics and Medicine, Mayo Clinic and Foundation, Rochester, Minnesota, 55905, USA

1 Introduction

This review discusses factors which influence renal sodium reabsorption in volume expansion. The factors are considered under seven headings: hemodynamic factors; glomerular filtration rate; physical factors; segmental sodium reabsorption; hormonal factors; response of the perinatal kidney to volume expansion; and gastrointestinal or hepatoportal control of renal sodium excretion. The results discussed consist primarily of clearance, micropuncture, microperfusion, and histologic studies. It seems justified to inject a word of caution in regard to interpretation of the data contained herein. In the majority of the studies, the animals were anesthetized, subjected to varying degrees of surgical trauma, and subsequently given an extracellular volume expansion (ECVE). Inasmuch as these maneuvers are not physiologic, extrapolation of the results to normal renal function should be done with caution.

2 Renal Sodium Reabsorption

2.1 Hemodynamic Factors

2.1.1 Renal Blood Flow and Renal Vascular Resistance

Expansion of the extracellular fluid volume (ECFV) by an infusion of isotonic saline has been shown to decrease renal vascular resistance and increase renal blood flow (*Barger* et al. 1961; *Earley* and *Friedler* 1965a; *Wallin* et al. 1971). In initial studies, the extent to which this increased renal blood flow alone results in increased sodium excretion was evaluated in clearance experiments in dogs by infusing vasodilators alone, or in the presence of a saline load (*Earley* and *Friedler* 1965b). The results of these studies demonstrated that in hydropenic animals, increasing renal blood flow by vasodilators alone was accompanied by an increased sodium excretion in spite of an unchanged filtered load. In animals receiving a saline load, increased renal blood flow of the same magnitude was associated with a threefold greater natriuresis. Further studies demonstrated that infusion of iso-oncotic Ringer's solution, designed not to alter plasma protein concentration, resulted in large increases in arterial pressure, renal blood flow, and urinary sodium excretion. If the kidneys were vasodilated with acetylcholine prior to the iso-oncotic Ringer's loading, the additional natriuresis seen with the vasodilated kidney was significantly reduced (*Martino* and *Earley* 1967). These studies were taken as evidence that increases in renal blood flow, per se, can increase

sodium excretion, but can only partially account for the natriuresis accompanying saline loading. The possibility exists, however, that the natriuretic effect seen with vasodilators is due to a direct action of the drug on the renal tubule and that the increased renal blood flow per se is not necessarily natriuretic. For example, secretin is a vasodilator which is not natriuretic (*Marchand* et al. 1977a). Further, small infusions of saline which increase urinary sodium excretion may not result in increases in renal blood flow (*Martino* and *Earley* 1967).

2.1.2 Intrarenal Distribution of Blood Flow

Volume expansion may be associated with increased medullary renal blood flow, since increased sodium excretion is accompanied by a decrease in urinary osmolality and the extraction ratio of *p*-aminohippurate (PAH) (*Earley* and *Friedler* 1964, 1965a; *Friedler* and *Earley* 1966). This decrease in urinary osmolality, which could not be accounted for by changes in either antidiuretic hormone (ADH) or solute excretion, and the assumption that PAH is extracted only from blood perfusing the cortex, led *Earley* and *Friedler* to hypothesize that saline loading in the dog results in an increased medullary blood flow, and that there may be a causal relationship between this intrarenal distribution of blood flow and the associated natriuresis of ECVE. The issue of whether a change in the intrarenal distribution of blood flow is associated with the renal vasodilation seen with volume expansion has subsequently been studied with a variety of techniques. The different techniques used to measure intrarenal blood flow distribution include the use of extractable substances such as PAH, dye dilution, washout of inert gases like ^{85}Kr and ^{133}Xe, H_2 clearance, glomerular basement-membrane antibody technique, and radioactive-labeled microspheres. A description of the different methods and a discussion of their validity is given by *Barger* and *Herd* (1973). Initial studies which utilized the inert-gas washout or H_2 clearance method to evaluate intrarenal distribution of blood flow reported that in volume expanded dogs, blood flow in the renal cortex increases, but there was not a significant change in the distribution of blood flow within the cortex (*Munck* et al. 1970; *Loyning* 1974). This finding was essentially confirmed in a subsequent study also carried out in dogs. *Bovee* and *Webster,* utilizing the inert-gas washout method and PAH extraction, reported that the increase in renal blood flow during moderate saline loading is limited to the cortex, but during large saline loads, cortical and noncortical flows increase proportionately (*Bovee* and *Webster* 1971). These findings are in agreement with recent observations of *Velasquez,* who applied the dye-dilution technique for quantitation of intrarenal blood flow distribution, and reported that during the early phase of saline

diuresis renal vasodilatation is confined to the cortex, but during later stages of saline loading noncortical blood flow increases also (*Velasquez* et al. 1973, 1975).

Interestingly, a study in the rat utilizing the X^e washout method found no significant change in either total renal blood flow or outer cortical blood flow after volume expansion with saline (*Kinney* and *DiScala* 1974). More recent results evaluating intrarenal distribution of blood flow during ECVE have been obtained with radioactive microspheres. These studies have shown that, in the dog, an intrarenal distribution of blood flow to inner cortical nephrons occurs (*Blantz* et al. 1971; *Stein* et al. 1972; *Bruns* et al. 1974). Surprisingly, in the rat, an intrarenal distribution of blood flow to the superficial cortex following volume expansion has been reported (*Wallin* et al. 1971). However, this discrepancy was attributed to an axial streaming of the microspheres caused by the renal vasodilation and reduced hematocrit accompanying volume expansion. The mechanism of cortical blood flow distribution during acute saline loading in the dog has been examined with microspheres (*Migdal* et al. 1975); their data showed that hemodilution without volume expansion or with intravascular volume expansion alone resulted in a distribution of blood flow to the superficial cortex. This superficial distribution of blood flow was caused by a decreased hematocrit. During saline loading, distribution of blood flow to the inner cortex occurred, which was hypothesized to be a consequence of expansion of the intrarenal interstitial volume.

Two mechanisms have been proposed whereby increased blood flow to inner cortical nephrons could affect renal handling of sodium during volume expansion. The first is the medullary washout hypothesis of *Earley* and *Friedler* (1965a,b). They proposed that saline loading produces an increase in inner cortical and presumably medullary blood flow. This causes a reduction in medullary interstitial hypertonicity, thus reducing the osmotic movement of water out of the descending limb. A larger volume of tubular fluid with the same amount of sodium, but at a lower concentration, would enter the water impermeable ascending limb. Reabsorption of sodium to the same minimal concentration in the ascending limb would result in the delivery of a larger volume of fluid and an increased total amount of sodium beyond the loop of Henle. This alteration would be most marked in the inner cortical nephrons whose loops descend into the medulla.

Another mechanism whereby intrarenal distribution of blood flow may modulate the natriuresis of ECVE is that it could result in a selective decrease in the filtration fraction in inner cortical nephrons and consequent reduction in proximal sodium reabsorption. This hypothesis assumes a direct relationship between peritubular capillary protein oncotic pressure and proximal sodium reabsorption. This hypothesis is based on

experimental observations in several different species. Perhaps the most convincing was a series of experiments in which *Nissen* made use of the unique blood supply to the kidney of the cat (*Nissen* 1968). He calculated the filtration fraction from the postglomerular circulation by comparing the plasma concentrations of inulin and protein in the blood leaving the two venous drainage areas with the concentrations in cortical blood. He observed a greater fall of the filtration fraction in the inner cortex than in the outer cortex after volume expansion. Micropuncture studies in the rat by *Daugharty* et al. (1972), who calculated superficial nephron filtration fraction (SNFF) from systemic and efferent arteriolar protein concentrations, and *Barratt* et al. (1973), who calculated SNFF by means of the antiglomerular basement membrane antibody technique, showed that the filtration fraction was reduced to a greater extent in the whole kidney compared to the superficial cortex during Ringer loading. Likewise in dogs, using the Hanssen technique and microspheres, estimated superficial nephron filtration fraction remained unchanged after volume expansion, but juxtamedullary filtration fraction decreases significantly (*Bruns* et al. 1974).

2.2 Glomerular Filtration Rate

2.2.1 Effect of Changes in GFR

Associated with increases in renal blood flow, several studies have shown that glomerular filtration rate (GFR) is elevated by ECFV expansion (*de Wardener* et al. 1961; *Levinsky* and *Lalone* 1963; *Davidman* et al. 1972). This observation is important as urinary sodium excretion represents the difference between the filtered load of sodium and subsequent reabsorption by the tubules. Therefore, a parallel change in filtered load and sodium excretion seen following volume expansion could, theoretically, explain the rise in sodium excretion seen following volume expansion, without necessarily invoking changes in tubular reabsorption. However, *de Wardener* et al. showed that saline infusion increased urinary sodium excretion independent of changes in GFR. In these studies, GFR was prevented from increasing by simultaneously decreasing the perfusion pressure to the kidney (*de Wardener* et al. 1961). This observation was subsequently confirmed by a number of other investigators who also demonstrated that when ECFV is acutely increased in the presence of fixed adrenocortical activity, sodium excretion increased independently of changes in GFR (*Levinsky* and *Lalone* 1963; *Rector* et al. 1964).

2.2.2 Intrarenal Distribution of GFR

Whereas increases in GFR may not entirely account for the natriuresis of ECVE, the relationship between changes in ECFV and distribution of single neprhon glomerular filtration rate (SNGFR) may be important as it has been proposed that a redistribution of filtrate may modify urinary sodium excretion.

Intrarenal distribution of filtrate before and after volume expansion has been evaluated with a number of techniques. The first is an indirect evaluation and involved comparing superficial SNGFR to total kidney glomerular filtration rate.

The results are conflicting, with some studies reporting equal changes in whole kidney GFR and superficial SNGFR after volume expansion (*Bartoli* and *Earley* 1971; *Mandin* et al. 1971; *Daugharty* et al. 1972; *Davidman* et al. 1972), while others found redistribution of filtrate to outer cortical nephrons (*Gertz* et al. 1967; *Barratt* et al. 1973). These data should be critically evaluated for several reasons. First, an increased distribution of filtrate to outer cortical nephrons was found when a previously punctured tubule was repunctured during acute volume expansion (*Mandin* et al. 1971; *Stein* et al. 1972). In contrast, no change in the intrarenal distribution of filtrate was found when a freshly punctured tubule was utilized. This difference has been atrributed to artifactual alterations in intratubular dynamics in the repunctured tubule due to the high tubular pressure associated with volume expansion, the so-called recollection artifact. However, in sharp contrast, a similar artifact was not noted in other studies in either the dog or rat, in which ECVE caused a proportional increase in both SNGFR and GFR (*Brenner* et al. 1971a; *Schneider* et al. 1972). Second, these results involve comparison of only superficial SNGFR and total kidney GFR, without direct measurement of SNGFR in deep nephrons. It has also been proposed that the disagreement between the results concerning the changes in SNGFR distribution following volume expansion could be explained on the basis of the degree of volume expansion. *Herrera-Acosta* concluded that a 10% body weight volume expansion did not change intrarenal filtrate distribution, whereas a progressive volume expansion to 15% of body weight results in a disproportionate increase in the filtration rate of superficial nephrons in comparison to total kidney GFR (*Herrera-Acosta* et al. 1972).

Another method used to study the distribution of GFR is the ferrocyanide technique. This method involves administering ferrocyanide, which distributes into the extracellular fluid volume and behaves like a glomerular indicator. After injection, the pedicle is ligated, the kidney removed and microdissected. The distance between the glomerulus and the distal front of the precipitated bolus is assumed to be proportional

to the nephron filtration rate. The advantage of this method is that it allows for a more quantitative estimate of the ratio of both superficial and deep SNGFR. Although some studies do not find a change in intrarenal distribution (*Bruns* et al. 1974; *Coelho* 1974), others report an increase in the superficial distribution of SNGFR after either chronic or acute salt loading when the labeled ferrocyanide is given as a pulse injection, i.e., Hanssen's technique (*de Rouffignac* and *Bonvalet* 1970; *Baines* 1973). However, when the glomerular marker is infused, SNGFR increases proportionately in both superficial and juxtamedullary nephrons (*Carriere* et al. 1972; *Coelho* 1973; *Clausen* and *Tyssebotn* 1973; *Poujeol* et al. 1975). This discrepancy was studied by *Charbardes,* and it was concluded that the apparent change in intrarenal distribution during ECVE observed with pulse injection is probably the result of an artifactual streaming caused by the method of administration of the label (*Chabardes* et al. 1974). In addition, a redistribution of SNGFR after acute volume expansion using Hanssen's technique was found in young rats, but not in mature adults (*Baines* 1973). These studies suggest that structural changes with age may modify the response of SNGFR distribution to volume expansion.

Finally, two early micropuncture studies examined directly, by micropuncture of both superficial and juxtamedullary nephrons, the effect of ECVE on the distribution of single nephron filtration rate in these nephron populations (*Horster* and *Thurau* 1968; *Jamison* and *Lacy* 1971). Both studies showed a shift of SNGFR distribution toward the superficial nephrons. However, the physiologic significance of a change in the intrarenal distribution of SNGFR is speculative without knowing whether actual sodium transport is altered in these nephron populations during ECVE. In the acute volume expansion study in which sodium concentration in tubule fluid was measured along with inulin, sodium reabsorption was significantly reduced in superficial nephrons, and did not change in deep nephrons (*Jamison* and *Lacy* 1971). In contrast, a more recent study revealed that delivery of sodium to the bend of the loop of Henle in the deep nephrons was greater than estimates of delivery in superficial nephrons during Ringer loading (*Osgood* et al. 1978).

The hypothesis that the intrarenal distribution of single nephron glomerular filtration rate can affect urinary sodium excretion came from studies by *Barger,* who proposed that because the juxtamedullary or deep nephrons have long loops of Henle, it is possible that more sodium is removed from them than superficial nephrons with their short loop of Henle (*Barger* 1966). Thus, intrarenal distribution of glomerular filtration may modify sodium excretion during ECVE by shifting from deep "salt-saving" nephrons to superficial "salt-losing" nephrons. However, a micropuncture study in the Rhesus monkey, a species with short loops of Henle, shows that the fraction of filtered sodium arriving in the early

distal tubule is similar to values reported for the dog, a species with long loops of Henle (*Bennett* et al. 1968). This would argue against the concept that the length of the loop of Henle is an important factor in the magnitude of sodium transport.

2.3 Physical Factors

2.3.1 Plasma Oncotic Pressure

On the basis of clearance studies in the dog, it was concluded that net fluid reabsorption is determined, in part, by the rate of removal of reabsorbate by the capillary circulation (*Martino* and *Early* 1967). The rate of removal of this reabsorbate is, in turn, dependent upon the net balance of colloid osmotic and hydrostatic pressures across the peritubular capillary wall. Evidence was presented supporting the hypothesis that these "physical forces" play an important role in the decreased proximal tubular reabsorption and increased sodium excretion seen in response to volume expansion.

It was demonstrated that a saline infusion which depressed plasma protein concentration, without increasing arterial pressure or renal blood flow, increased urinary sodium excretion. Subsequent restoration of plasma protein concentration by systemic infusion of hyperoncotic albumin decreased sodium excretion in spite of an increase in arterial pressure and renal blood flow (*Martino* and *Earley* 1967). This observation was taken as evidence that depressed plasma protein is a major determinant of the natriuresis seen with ECVE. Subsequent micropuncture and microperfusion studies, in a variety of experimental conditions designed to assess the importance of plasma oncotic pressure by controlling other physical forces, presented data consistent with the postulate that changes in postglomerular capillary oncotic pressure play a significant role in the regulation of proximal sodium reabsorption (*Lewy* and *Windhager* 1968; *Windhager* et al. 1969; *Spitzer* and *Windhager* 1970). *Brenner,* utilizing both free-flow micropuncture and microperfusion techniques, demonstrated a direct relationship between oncotic pressure in efferent arterioles and absolute reabsorption by the proximal tubule of the rat (*Brenner* et al. 1969b; *Brenner* and *Troy* 1971). The relationship between peritubular capillary oncotic pressure and proximal sodium reabsorption has also been studied in the volume expanded animal. During volume expansion, *Brenner* et al. (1971b) found that capillary microperfusion with hyperoncotic albumin solution increased reabsorption by the proximal tubule and, similarly, *Knox* found that infusion of hyperoncotic albumin solution in the renal artery increased proximal sodium reabsorption in saline

loaded dogs (*Knox* et al. 1973). In micropuncture studies in rats, *Daugharty* compared the effects of iso-oncotic and colloid-free volume expansion on proximal reabsorption (*Daugharty* et al. 1972). In rats in which the filtered load was kept constant by means of aortic constriction, volume expansion with colloid-free (Ringer's) solution resulted in a significant decrease in proximal reabsorption which was associated with a marked reduction in peritubule protein concentration. In contrast, iso-oncotic infusions resulted in no significant fall in proximal reabsorption and little change from control in peritubule protein concentration. *Sonnenberg* and *Solomon,* using free-flow micropuncture, observed that relative to control hydropenic values, extracellular volume expansion with colloid-free Ringer's solution resulted in a significant decrease in proximal reabsorption, whereas following comparable infusions of iso-oncotic fluid, no significant reduction could be detected (*Sonnenberg* and *Solomon* 1969).

Several investigators, however, have failed to find a relationship between peritubule capillary oncotic pressure and reabsorption by the proximal tubule. Specifically, in the absence of saline loading, two studies found no difference in proximal sodium reabsorption between iso-oncotic perfusate versus oncotic-free perfusate (*Rumrich* and *Ullrich* 1968; *Conger* et al. 1973). Further, microperfusion studies showed that reductions in absolute reabsorption induced by saline infusion were quantitatively similar in tubules exposed to the reduced peritubule capillary oncotic pressure and in microperfused tubules with constant peritubular oncotic pressure (*Holzgreve* and *Schrier* 1975). Additionally, *Kuschinsky* et al. compared proximal fractional reabsorption and plasma protein concentration in rats acutely or chronically infused with isotonic saline (*Kuschinsky* et al. 1970). During acute ECVE, proximal fractional reabsorption (FR) was reduced from 61% to 42%, concomitant with a reduced plasma protein from 5.8% to 5.2%. However, during chronic saline infusion, fractional reabsorption (FR) was only slightly decreased to 52%, not statistically different from a control group of animals in which FR was 57%. In these two groups plasma protein concentration was reduced to a greater extent (from 5.9% to 3.6% in the control and chronically infused annimals, respectively). *Ott* et al. investigated the effect of increased peritubule capillary oncotic pressure on sodium reabsorption by the proximal tubule in hydropenic and volume expanded dog (*Ott* et al. 1975). While efferent oncotic pressure during albumin infusion was increased to the same degree in both groups, proximal sodium reabsorption was increased only in the volume expanded animals. The results suggested that ECVE altered the effect of increased peritubule oncotoc pressure on sodium reabsorption by the proximal tubule. It was speculated that increased permeability of the proximal tubule following saline loading

allowed for changes in peritubule capillary oncotic pressure to affect proximal reabsorption. Several studies support a role for altered permeability of the proximal tubule following ECVE. In electrophysiological studies, changes in permeability of the proximal tubule following saline loading in the necturus have been demonstrated (*Bentzel* et al. 1970; *Boulpaep* 1972; *Maunsbach* and *Boulpaep* 1980). Based on these data, it seems likely that increases in membrane permeability are a prerequisite for increased peritubule oncotic pressure to result in increases in isotonic reabsorption by the renal proximal tubule.

Arterial hematrocrit is another physical factor which significantly influences urinary sodium excretion during ECVE. *Knox* et al. found in micropuncture experiments in dogs that acute reductions in arterial hematocrit were associated with a decrease in fractional reabsorption by the proximal tubule, despite maintenance of a normal extracellular fluid volume and no significant change in urinary sodium excretion (*Knox* et al. 1968). Clearance experiments have demonstrated a direct relationship between sodium excretion and blood viscosity during volume expansion (*Schrier* et al. 1970). Further studies in which hematocrit was either increased or decreased in both hydropenic or volume expanded animals, demonstrated that acute changes in hematrocrit significantly affect sodium excretion and renal hemodynamics in both conditions (*Schrier* and *Earley* 1970). Increasing hematocrit during hydropenia or ECVE decreased electrolyte excretion and renal blood flow. Decreasing hematocrit during hydropenia was associated with an increase in electrolyte excretion. The effect of increasing or decreasing arterial hematocrit on proximal sodium reabsorption has been investigated in dogs (*Burke* et al. 1971). It was demonstrated that fractional reabsorption by the proximal tubule can be increased or decreased by acutely increasing or decreasing the hematocrit. It seems likely that the effects of arterial hematocrit are mediated through changes in blood viscosity and subsequent effects on peritubule capillary hydrostatic pressures.

It has also been demonstrated that after anesthesia and surgery animals have a markedly impaired ability to excrete a saline load. *Keck* and coworkers reported that this phenomenon was due to an increased hematocrit, probably due to an increased permeability of the capillaries which results in a large extravasation of protein and fluid into the extravascular space (*Keck* et al. 1973). This observation was confirmed in the rat by *Maddox*, who reported a significant increase in hematocrit accompanied by a large fall in plasma volume following surgery (*Maddox* et al. 1977).

Extracellular volume expansion has also been shown to depress net absorption of sodium and water by rat (*Richet* and *Hornych* 1969; *Humphreys* and *Earley* 1971), dog (*Higgins* and *Blair* 1971), cat (*Gutman* and *Benzakein* 1970), and rabbit (*DiBona* et al. 1974) small intestine.

From studies in the cat, it was postulated that ECVE reduces primarily the lumen to blood sodium flux, analogous to the process of tubular reabsorption in the kidney (*Gutman* and *Benzakein* 1970). On the other hand, two studies in the dog (*Higgins* and *Blair* 1971; *Humphreys* and *Earley* 1971), one in the rat (*Chanard* et al. 1976), and one in the rabbit (*DiBona* et al. 1974) found that ECVE leads to an increase in blood to lumen sodium flux.

The mechanism whereby ECVE depresses intestinal sodium and water transport has been investigated. The results indicate an important role for physical factors in modulating intestinal transport. In vitro studies in dog jejunum showed that when serosal hydrostatic pressure was increased by 2–6 cm H_2O, fluid absorption was stopped, and further increases in serosal pressure resulted in fluid secretion (*Hakim* and *Lifson* 1969). In vitro studies in rats demonstrated that capillary hydrostatic pressure and colloid osmotic pressure exert opposite effects on transjejunal water transport (*Lee* 1973). Further, it has been reported that during ECVE in vivo, the decreased net absorption of sodium is accompanied by an increased permeability of the intestinal mucosa (*Humphreys* and *Earley* 1971). It has also been demonstrated that saline infusion results in a distension of intercellular spaces in the rabbit jejunum (*DiBona* et al. 1974). In addition, in vivo studies suggest that intestinal absorption increases when plasma oncotic pressure is increased by albumin infusion (*Humphreys* and *Earley* 1971). These observations imply that capillary absorption plays a role in intestinal absorption and that permeability changes modulate the net absorption of sodium and water, as may be the case for fluid reabsorption by the renal proximal tubule during ECVE.

2.3.2 Peritubule Capillary Hydrostatic Pressure

Earley et al., on the basis of clearance studies in dogs, concluded that the natriuretic effect of renal vasodilatation, induced either by infusion of vasodilators, plasma or iso-oncotic saline infusion, may in part result from decreased tubular reabsorption as a consequence of the transmission of the increased pressure to the peritubular capillaries (*Earley* and *Friedler* 1966; *Earley* et al. 1966). It also has been proposed that the exaggerated natriuresis of hypertensive patients and rats when given a saline infusion may be due to a direct effect of the increased arterial pressure to decrease fractional reabsorption of sodium (*Papper* et al. 1960; *Buckalew* et al. 1969; *Stumpe* et al. 1970). In addition, a direct relationship between the natriuresis of volume expansion and renal perfusion pressure has been reported from studies in the isolated dog kidney (*McDonald* and *de Wardener* 1965). *Bank* and co-workers, using split-drop techniques in saline loaded rats, reported that when renal perfusion pressure was

lowered to 70–90 mmHg, the reduction in fractional reabsorption which usually occurs in the proximal tubule was greatly minimized (*Bank* et al. 1969). Associated with this finding was a concomitant decrease in urinary sodium excretion. From these results the authors suggested that the changes in proximal reabsorption during saline loading are related to the increase in peritubular hydrostatic pressure. In an attempt to determine whether transmitted increments in capillary hydrostatic pressure are related to decreases in sodium reabsorption during volume expansion, deep intrarenal venous pressure was used as a qualitative index of renal capillary pressure (*Martino* and *Earley* 1968). It was concluded, based on correlations between changes in intrarenal venous pressure and sodium excretion following either saline or plasma infusion, that increases in peritubular capillary hydrostatic pressure inhibit reabsorption. Stop-flow microperfusion with or without combined local microperfusion of peritubular capillaries has shown that, while hydrostatic pressure from the lumen is not an effective driving force for fluid reabsorption, increases in hydrostatic pressure from the contraluminal side markedly inhibit fluid reabsorption (*Sato* 1975). Finally, *Kunau* et al. showed that in rats undergoing a saline diuresis an acute increase in renal perfusion pressure resulted in a marked increase in sodium excretion (*Kunau* and *Lameire* 1976). This natriuresis occurred in the absence of a change in either total GFR or superficial SNGFR. It was also observed that the natriuresis was not the result of an increased sodium delivery from the superficial late distal tubule. This led to the conclusion that it must be related to an inhibition of sodium reabsorption in either the collecting system or in deep nephrons.

2.3.3 Interstitial Pressure

Clearance experiments in dogs demonstrated that administration of dextran in isotonic saline leads to a natriuresis, whereas dextran in glucose does not (*Schrier* et al. 1968). Dextran in saline was associated not only with increased plasma volume, but also with increased interstitial volume, whereas dextran in glucose increased plasma volume alone. From this observation it was postulated that without expansion of the interstitial space, intravascular volume expansion may not be a sufficient stimulus to increase sodium excretion.

Micropuncture techniques have been used to study the respective influence of each of the Starling forces upon proximal tubular reabsorption during hydropenia and volume expansion. The Starling forces, hydrostatic and oncotic pressures across the peritubular capillary wall, presumably mediate capillary uptake and passive backflux into the proximal tubular lumen through changes in renal interstitial pressure. Peritubular capillary uptake is determined not only by the balance of the Starling

forces, i.e., the net reabsorption pressure, but also by the permeability surface area of the peritubular capillary. Thus, changes in either parameter lead to changes in capillary uptake. The relationship between net reabsorption pressure and the permeability surface area of the peritubular capillary (reabsorption coefficient) has been studied in the volume expanded rat with differing results. *Tucker* and *Blantz* measured proximal reabsorption in rats during hydropenia and saline expansion. They concluded that changes in proximal reabsorption correlate best with changes in filtered load (*Tucker* and *Blantz* 1978). *Quinn* and *Marsh* concluded that it was unlikely the reabsorption coefficient was different between hydropenia, Ringer's expansion, and plasma volume expansion (*Quinn* and *Marsh* 1979). They found a strong correlation between absolute proximal reabsorption and net interstitial pressure, which was taken as evidence for a role for interstitial pressure in regulating proximal reabsorption. However, interstitial pressure was directly measured only in saline loaded animals and was calculated for the other conditions. Stronger evidence for a positive correlation between renal interstitial pressure and sodium excretion during volume expansion has been presented by *Marchand,* who observed that reductions in renal perfusion pressure by renal artery constriction prior to volume expansion blocked both the increase in renal interstitial pressure as well as the increase in sodium excretion (*Marchand* 1978). *Kallskog* and *Wolgast* calculated peritubular protein concentration and measured interstitial space pressure (*Kallskog* and *Wolgast* 1973). In saline expansion, the interstitial hydrostatic pressure almost doubled, whereas interstitial oncotic pressure fell to almost zero. They concluded that the peritubular capillary has a large and a small pore system, and further postulated that the effective capillary area increases during saline loading due to expansion of the capillary pores.

Experiments providing evidence that intrarenal factors are the initial determinants of the natriuresis of saline loading were performed by *Fitzgibbons* et al. (1974). As mentioned previously, the natriuretic effect of saline loading has been demonstrated to persist in spite of a reduction of GFR to below preexpansion levels (*de Wardener* et al. 1961). However, *Fitzgibbons* reported that in the rat, reduction of renal artery pressure prior to the initiation of ECVE virtually abolished the natriuretic effect of volume expansion. From these findings, they hypothesized that ECVE can induce a natriuresis only if the kidney has been exposed to at least a transient increase in either interstitial hydrostatic pressure and/or renal plasma flow. Further, the results gave strong evidence against an important role for a reduction in plasma oncotic pressure or a circulating hormone as mediators of the natriuresis. This finding was confirmed in a micropuncture study in the rat by *Osgood* which demonstrated that volume expansion did not decrease proximal reabsorption or cause an

increase in urinary sodium excretion in immediate-clamp rats (*Osgood* et al. 1977). In contrast, comparable aortic clamping 40 min after initiation of volume expansion did not prevent a fall in proximal reabsorption or an increase in urinary sodium excretion. *Marchand* evaluated the effect of reduced peritubule capillary oncotic pressure at reduced renal artery pressure on renal interstitial pressure and sodium excretion in the dog (*Marchand* 1978). He found that reducing renal artery pressure before volume expansion reduces or prevents increases in interstitial pressure and fractional sodium excretion, depending on the magnitude of reduction of renal artery pressure. Studies, also performed in dogs, demonstrated a saline-induced natriuresis, although blunted, even though perfusion pressure was reduced prior to the accompanying volume expansion (*Klemmer* et al. 1978). This study suggested a possible species difference in the renal natriuretic response to volume expansion at reduced renal perfusion pressure between dogs and rats. In order to test the hypothesis that these conflicting results could be due to differences in preexpansion basal sodium excretion, *Lameire* manipulated the dietary salt intake to adjust preexpansion fractional excretion of sodium (FE_{Na} %) to the same level in both species (*Lameire* et al. 1979). Hydropenic or salt depleted dogs showed a small but significant increase in FE_{Na} % following a 7.5% body wt. volume expansion. In the rat, however, a significant natriuresis did not occur unless the rats were salt loaded. These results were interpreted to mean that an appropriate intrarenal environment is necessary in the rat, but not the dog, for volume expansion to result in a significant natriuresis. Further, it was concluded that the natriuretic response to ECVE was not dependent on the moment of lowering the renal perfusion pressure. However, it should be emphasized that in both species, regardless of preexpansion basal sodium excretion, prior reduction of renal perfusion pressure markedly attenuated the magnitude of the natriuresis in response to volume expansion.

2.3.4 Plasma Sodium Concentration

It has been shown that following infusion of hypertonic saline there are increases in plasma sodium concentration, filtered sodium, and urinary sodium excretion (*Kamm* and *Levinsky* 1964). The difficulty in assessing the importance of plasma sodium concentration, per se, as a mediator of the natriuresis following hypertonic saline infusion is that, besides hypernatremia, this experimental maneuver also leads to expansion of the ECFV and a fall in plasma oncotic pressure, all of which could by themselves result in increased sodium excretion. In order to circumvent this problem, *Kamm* and *Levinsky* infused hypertonic saline directly into one renal artery of a dog. Despite a decreased filtered load below that of

preinfusion levels and a comparable volume expansion in the contralateral kidney, the results showed an ipsilateral increase in sodium excretion, which was attributed to an effect of hypernatremia per se to depress net tubular reabsorption of sodium (*Kamm* and *Levinsky* 1965). In order to determine whether a low plasma sodium could depress the natriuretic response to ECVE, *Davis* compared fractional sodium reabsorption in the proximal tubule in normal dogs and in dogs made hyponatremic by chronic administration of vasopressin, water, and ethacrynic acid. Hyponatremic dogs expanded with hypotonic saline had a smaller decrease in fractional reabsorption than normal dogs expanded with an equal amount of isotonic saline (*Davis* et al. 1970). Experiments in dogs, which were infused with equal amounts of sodium chloride per kilogram of body weight as either hypotonic, isotonic, or hypertonic solutions, demonstrated that in spite of the fact that hypotonic saline led to a greater expansion of the blood volume and interstitial space, sodium excretion was significantly less in this group (*Schrier* et al. 1969). Thus, these studies suggest that plasma sodium concentration may influence the natriuretic response to volume expansion.

2.3.5 Preexisting Extracellular Fluid Volume

The effect of the level of the preexisting extracellular fluid volume on the response to acute volume expansion has been studied in the dog and rat. In the dog, animals on a high salt intake and deoxycorticosterone acetate (DOCA) administration have a greater diuretic and natriuretic response to either hyperoncotic albumin solution (*Knox* et al. 1970) or isotonic saline loading (*Higgins* 1971). However, in rats a paradoxical effect of dietary salt intake on the renal response to hypertonic saline loads has been reported (*Ben-Ishay* 1973). Animals on a low salt regimen demonstrated an enhanced diuretic and natriuretic response to hypertonic saline loading compared with rats on a high salt diet. In contrast, studies in dogs maintained on a high sodium intake revealed that they did not have a significantly different natriuresis from those on a low sodium intake, following hypertonic saline infusion (*Diaz-Buxo* et al. 1976). This was also found to be the case whether or not dogs were in positive or negative sodium balance. However, the natriuretic response to isotonic saline loading was smaller in dogs in negative sodium balance compared with those in positive sodium balance. These findings suggest that hypernatremia accompanying hypertonic saline infusion can override factors promoting sodium retention in sodium depleted dogs, but does not further augment sodium excretion in states of positive sodium balance.

2.3.6 Tubule Geometry

A mechanism for glomerular-tubular balance was suggested by *Gertz* and others (*Gertz* et al. 1965; *Brunner* et al. 1966). In this proposal, the rate of proximal tubular reabsorption is thought to be proportional to intratubular volume, as a result of a direct relationship between tubular surface area and reabsorptive rate. Changes in filtration rate result in proportional changes in tubular surface area and subsequently sodium reabsorption. It was proposed that the mechanism by which ECVE suppresses proximal reabsorption was the result of two factors, a decrease in intrinsic reabsorptive capacity and a diminished tubular volume per given level of GFR (*Rector* et al. 1967). However, there is experimental evidence which indicates that tubule geometry does not significantly influence sodium reabsorption. Microperfusion studies, which changed either tubular volume or radius, showed no significant correlation between reabsorption and tubular shape or size (*Morgan* and *Berliner* 1969b; *Burg* and *Orloff* 1968).

2.4 Segmental Sodium Reabsorption

2.4.1 Acute ECVE

There is much evidence from micropuncture studies in the dog and rat to indicate that the natriuresis of acute ECVE is associated with decreased sodium reabsorption by the renal tubule. Numerous studies have demonstrated that ECVE significantly decreases sodium reabsorption by the proximal tubule (*Rector* et al. 1964; *Dirks* et al. 1965; *Cortney* et al. 1965). Because the resulting increase in sodium delivery from the proximal tubule more than accounted for the increased urinary sodium excretion, it was first postulated that the proximal tubule was the sole regulator of the natriuresis of ECVE. This postulate was questioned, however, by studies which demonstrated that proximal sodium reabsorption can be depressed without an ensuing natriuresis, suggesting that a saline load may also inhibit sodium reabsorption in a more distal nephron segment (*Howards* et al. 1968; *Brenner* and *Berliner* 1969; *Knox* et al. 1973; *Knight* and *Weinman* 1977). Evaluation of altered reabsorption during acute ECVE by the "distal" tubule can include the loop of Henle, distal convoluted tubule, and the collecting tubule. The discussion will first focus on evidence for and against the loop of Henle as an important mediator of the natriuresis of volume expansion.

On the basis of studies in humans and dogs utilizing free-water clearance as an index of loop of Henle reabsorption, most (*Eknoyan* et al. 1967; *Stein* et al. 1967; *Leeber* et al. 1968; *Buckalew* et al. 1970b;

Bennett 1973), but not all (*Barton* et al. 1972), report that ECVE suppresses sodium reabsorption in the loop of Henle. The demonstration that the collecting duct has a marked diluting capacity makes interpretation of free-water clearance data difficult. In contrast, micropuncture studies in which sodium reabsorption along the loop of Henle is estimated by micropuncture of both proximal and distal tubules report increased absolute reabsorption after either isotonic or hypertonic saline infusion in the rat (*Giebisch* et al. 1964; *Cortney* et al. 1965; *Landwehr* et al. 1967; *Stein* et al. 1973; *Kunau* et al. 1974) or the dog (*Dirks* and *Seely* 1970). Similarly, microperfusion studies, indicate that sodium reabsorption in the loop increased linearly as a function of the load delivered to it, and that ECVE, per se, does not affect its intrinsic reabsorptive capacity (*Schnermann* 1968; *Morgan* and *Berliner* 1969a).

In many respects, the transport characteristics of the distal convoluted tubule after volume expansion resemble the loop of Henle. *Hayslett,* utilizing the split-drop technique, reported that reabsorption from the distal convoluted tubule is enhanced by saline infusion (*Hayslett* et al. 1967). Many free-flow micropuncture experiments have found increased absolute (*Kunau* et al. 1974; *Knox* and *Gasser* 1974; *Khuri* et al. 1975), and with one exception (*Khuri* et al. 1975), decreased fractional reabsorption along the distal tubule after volume expansion. In addition, micropuncture experiments in which increased sodium delivery to distal tubules was prevented by reduction of renal perfusion pressure revealed that ECVE had no effect on sodium transport along the superficial distal tubule (*Diezi* et al. 1980). These results are in agreement with microperfusion studies which found that the rate of sodium reabsorption paralleled sodium delivery to the distal tubule (*Morgan* and *Berliner* 1969a).

Evidence that ECVE affects sodium transport in the collecting duct has been indirectly evaluated by comparison of sodium delivery in superficial late distal tubules with final urine. Two studies reported diminished fractional sodium reabsorption in the collecting duct after Ringer's infusion when compared with a similar distal delivery of sodium after albumin infusion (*Stein* et al. 1973; *Knox* and *Gasser* 1974). *Diezi* compared urinary sodium excretion in nondiuretic and volume-expanded rats in which late distal sodium delivery was adjusted to similar levels by means of aortic constriction (*Diezi* et al. 1980). Urinary sodium excretion was significantly higher in the volume-expanded animals. The comparison of late distal tubular fluid with final urine to estimate collecting duct reabsorption assumes that homogeneity of nephron function exists with regard to sodium handling. If nephron heterogeneity exists, changes in excretion could be due to either alterations in collecting duct reabsorption per se, or could be due to the admixture of fluid from superficial and juxtamedullary nephrons. In order to differentiate between these

possibilities, *Diezi* performed direct micropuncture of the base and tip of the papillary collecting duct. His results showed that after volume expansion, collecting duct fractional sodium reabsorption decreases and absolute sodium reabsorption increases (*Diezi* et al. 1973). Subsequently, in a similar protocol, *Stein* evaluated papillary collecting duct reabsorption as well as the possibility of nephron heterogeneity, by comparing the delivery of sodium to the end of the distal tubule superficial nephrons with papillary base delivery (*Stein* et al. 1976). They found that the delivery of sodium to and reabsorption along the papillary collecting duct were markedly greater during Ringer loading than in hydropenia. Further, the amount of sodium delivered to the papillary base was greater than the delivery to the end of the distal tubule of superficial nephrons during Ringer loading, suggesting that deeper nephrons deliver more sodium to the collecting duct. Finally, the difference in sodium excretion between Ringer loading and hyperoncotic albumin infusion was due to events occurring between the late distal tubule of superficial nephrons and the base of the papillary collecting duct. Although these findings do not exclude the possibility that ECVE may alter collecting duct transport, they concluded that the natriuresis of Ringer loading was due, in part, to increased sodium delivery from inner cortical nephrons, and that the terminal part of the collecting duct reduces the magnitude of the natriuresis. In a subsequent study, direct micropuncture of the deep nephrons during volume expansion confirmed that delivery of sodium to the bend of the loop of Henle in juxtramedullary nephrons was greater than estimates of delivery in the superficial nephrons (*Osgood* et al. 1978). In addition, micropuncture studies by *Reineck* showed that the net addition of sodium between the late distal tubule and papillary base seen during Ringer loading is abolished if juxtamedullary nephron function is abolished by drug-induced necrosis (*Reineck* et al. 1980). With regard to the finding that in the presence of volume expansion, absolute sodium reabsorption along the papillary collecting duct is enhanced, this is in sharp contrast to the conclusions drawn in several microcatheterization studies that either no net reabsorption or even net addition of sodium occurs along the papillary collecting duct during Ringer loading (*Sonnenberg* 1974, 1975; *Wilson* and *Sonnenberg* 1979). The difference between the findings have been ascribed to technique (micropuncture vs microcatheterization) and experimental protocol. In the studies by *Sonnenberg*, the degree of acute extracellular expansion was markedly greater than in the micropuncture studies and, in addition, urine was reinfused. Urine reinfusion has been shown to be natriuretic (*Harris* and *Yarger* 1976). Accordingly, the differences in results between the micropuncture and microcatheterization studies may be due to the urine reinfusion used in the latter, which in turn may depress sodium transport by the papillary collecting duct.

2.4.2 Chronic ECVE

Chronic ECVE can be produced experimentally by the administration of mineralocorticoids and large amounts of salt in the diet, followed by a return of sodium excretion to control levels. As mentioned previously, this phenomenon is referred to as "DOCA escape". The nephron sites responsible for escape, and the response of the "escaped" animal to volume expansion have been extensively discussed in a previous paper (*Knox* et al. 1980). In brief, superimposed volume expansion in the DOCA-escaped rat reveals that fractional reabsorption of sodium is diminished in the superficial nephron segment containing the pars recta and loop of Henle. Fractional reabsorption of sodium is also decreased in deep nephrons proximal to the bend in Henle's loop. Finally, escape occurs from the sodium-retaining effects of mineralocorticoids when sodium delivery from both superficial and deep nephrons is increased enough to overcome sodium reabsorption by the cortical collecting tubule which is stimulated by mineralocorticoids.

Chronic ECVE is also a feature of models of heart failure and is characterized by the inability to excrete a saline load. *Schneider* evaluated proximal sodium reabsorption in dogs with aorta-vena cava (AV) fistulas to produce high output heart failure (*Schneider* et al. 1971). When these animals are given a saline infusion, the normal inhibition of proximal reabsorption occurs so that delivery from the proximal tubule is markedly increased. However, in these dogs, very little of the increased delivery of sodium appeared in the urine, whereas control dogs had the normal natriuretic response. This observation indicates that sodium transport in some distal nephron segment is altered in response to changes in ECFV. *Stumpe* and associates reported similar findings in rats with AV fistulas (*Stumpe* et al. 1973). Comparing the rats with AV fistulas with normal rats, they found similar delivery of sodium out of the proximal tubule, but enhanced sodium reabsorption along the loop of Henle. In another model of chronic sodium retention, two studies showed that proximal tubular sodium reabsorption was not significantly different in normal animals from animals with thoracic vena cava obstruction after saline loading (*Auld* et al. 1971; *Levy* 1972). *Levy* also found enhanced sodium reabsorption in the loop of Henle in the AV fistula group, again suggesting that sodium reabsorption at this nephron segment accounts for the inability of animals with experimental heart failure to excrete a saline load.

2.5 Hormonal Factors

2.5.1 Renin-Ang otensin-Aldosterone System

It has been propc ;ed that in the antidiuretic animal, glomerular filtration rate is governed y the orthograde flow of tubule fluid past the macula densa and this in turn may be mediated by the renin-angiotensin system (*Schnermann* et al. 1970). This hypothesis comes from the observation that in the antidiuretic state, interruption of flow to the macula densa with proximal tubule micropuncture results in a significantly higher single nephron glomerular filtration rate (SNGFR), compared to the SNGFR measured in the distal tubule beyond the macula densa. These experiments imply that distally measured SNGFR represents the true steady-state filtration rate. However, as stated previously, both proximal SNGFR and whole kidney GFR increase in response to extracellular volume expansion (*Davidman* et al. 1972; *Rector* et al. 1964), and further, it has been demonstrated that the proximal-distal SNGFR difference is abolished during saline diuresis (*Schnermann* et al. 1971). If tubuloglomerular feedback participates in the regulation of filtration rate, one would expect during volume expansion, when distal sodium chloride delivery is elevated, a decrease rather than an increase in filtration rate. *Dev* and co-workers postulated that this apparent discrepancy might be due to variations of sensitivity of the feedback system as a function of salt intake (*Dev* et al. 1974). They found that in rats with a sodium intake of greater than 6 mEq/day, the feedback sensitivity (i.e., proximal-distal SNGFR difference) was abolished. In an extension of these studies, *Schnermann* et al. measured feedback sensitivity by comparing proximal flow rate, filtration rate, and stop-flow pressure in response to loop of Henle perfusion in control rats and DOCA-saline treated rats (*Schnermann* et al. 1975). The DOCA-saline treated rats exhibited a blunted feedback responsiveness compared to controls, accompanied by a significant decrease in juxtaglomerular renin activity. From these observations it was postulated that in animals, either acutely or chronically volume expanded, feedback response is blunted. This impaired feedback accounts for the increase in SNGFR and whole kidney GFR which accompanies ECVE. However, a subsequent study concluded that autoregulation of whole kidney and proximal filtration rate occurred in both sodium depleted and expanded animals in which there was a threefold to fourfold difference in measured renal renin content (*Marchand* 1978).

Studies by *de Wardener* et al. demonstrated that acute ECVE increased sodium excretion depsite the administration of large doses of 9 α-fluorohydrocortisone and reductions in GFR (*De wardener* et al. 1961). These experiments were taken as evidence that increases in sodium excretion

following acute volume expansion were independent of changes in adrenocortical hormone secretion. However, these experiments do not rule out the possibility that acute reductions of aldosterone secretion during volume expansion may be a contributing mechanism for the natriuresis. This possibility was studied by comparing the natriuresis of volume expansion in the intact and adrenalectomized rat. One difficulty of evaluating renal function in the absence of mineralocortocoids is that this maneuver is achieved by adrenalectomy, which usually lowers blood pressure and results in a decreased GFR. Even so, it has been demonstrated that volume natriuresis in response to either isotonic saline or blood volume expansion is similar in intact and adrenalectomized rats (*Cortney* 1969; *Veress* and *Pearce* 1974).

Evaluating the effect of variations in endogenous secretion of mineralocorticoids on the natriuresis of ECVE is difficult. In order to achieve a stimulation of aldosterone secretion, animals are given a low sodium diet and/or administered a diuretic. These maneuvers also contract the ECFV, which in itself affects the renal response to ECVE (*Higgins* 1971). Given the fact that animals administered exogenous mineralocorticoids acutely respond with a diuresis of the same magnitude as untreated ones makes it unlikely that suppression of aldosterone secretion is the primary cause of the saline diuresis. When the ECFV is gradually increased by the chronic administration of mineralocorticoids, an initial retention of sodium is followed by a return of sodium excretion to control levels. This phenomenon is referred to as escape from the sodium retaining effects of mineralocorticoids (*Knox* et al. 1980). The importance of the state of sodium balance in determining the natriuretic response to saline loading has been discussed in Sect. 2.3.5). As mentioned before, an augmented diuretic response to ECVE has been demonstrated in DOCA-escaped dogs. This phenomenon has also been reported in normal humans given 9 α-fluorohydrocortisone (*Strauss* and *Earley* 1959) and in patients with primary aldosteronism (*Biglieri* and *Forsham* 1961). In normal subjects, infusion of isotonic saline suppresses aldosterone secretion, whereas patients with primary aldosteronism fail to do so (*Espiner* et al. 1967). However, both respond with marked natriuresis. This responsiveness of sodium excretion to ECVE reinforces the independence from aldosterone secretion.

2.5.2 Natriuretic Hormone

Several studies have presented evidence suggesting that there is a natriuretic hormone which contributes to the increase in urinary sodium excretion in response to changes in ECFV expansion. Attempts to prove the existence of a natriuretic hormone have employed several different techniques. The first, cross-circulation, was initially used by *de Wardener*

et al. (1961). Cross-circulation involves joining the circulation of two animals via a shunt. One animal serves as a donor and has its ECFV acutely or chronically expanded. In the second animal (recipient) ECFV is kept constant and urinary excretion of sodium is monitored. These cross-circulation studies induce an increase in urinary sodium excretion in the assay kidney, which is taken as evidence of a change in the circulating concentration of a natriuretic hormone. Expansion of the donor animal with saline has been performed by several groups (*de Wardener* et al. 1961; *Johnston* and *Davis* 1966; *Johnston* et al. 1967; *Blythe* et al. 1971; *McDonald* et al. 1967). A number of similar experiments have been performed, except, instead of using saline, the donor animals has been expanded with blood or iso-oncotic albumin and the assay kidney is in situ (*Bahlmann* et al. 1967; *Pearce* et al. 1969) or is isolated and perfused (*Lichardus* and *Pearce* 1966; *Kaloyanides* and *Azer* 1971; *Kaloyanides* et al. 1977). The cross-circulation experiments with saline have been criticized due to the dilution of the blood in the recipient animal (hematocrit, protein concentration), which in itself could result in a natriuresis in the recipient animal. Two groups have addressed this problem in experiments in which they expanded the donor animal with equilibrated blood from a reservoir (*Knox* et al. 1968; *Bengele* et al. 1972). In these animals, as well as those expanded with saline, the sodium excretion in the recipient is usually only a small fraction of that in the donor.

Another approach to detect a natriuretic hormone involves obtaining extracts of plasma, urine or tissue from volume-expanded donors and comparing the natriuresis when injected into bioassay rats with extracts from nonexpanded donors (*Sealey* et al. 1969; *Viskoper* et al. 1971; *Brown* et al. 1972; *Gonick* and *Saldanha* 1975). Again, the ensuing natriuresis is usually modest and sometimes accompanied by an increase in GFR and/or renal blood flow (RBF). These findings raise questions regarding the specificity of the extract, as well as the physiologic significance.

In vitro assays for natriuretic hormone have involved the measurements of ion transport by the isolated frog skin or toad bladder, the transport of *p*-aminohippurate by kidney slices, the activity of kidney ATPase and transport of sodium and potassium by renal tubule fragments (*Bricker* et al. 1968; *Buckalew* et al. 1970a; *Clarkson* et al. 1970; *Nutbourne* et al. 1970; *Katz* and *Genant* 1971; *Gruber* et al. 1980). Many of the findings with in vitro assays have not been confirmed in other laboratories, and the question arises whether the results are relevant to a natriuresis in vivo. The evidence that the natriuresis of ECVE is due, in part, to a natriuretic hormone remains both equivocal and enticing.

2.5.3 Prostaglandins

Saline loading results in an increase in the urinary excretion of PGA and PGE in humans (*Papanicolaou* et al. 1975), as well as significant changes in intrarenal PGA_2 concentration in the rabbit (*Attallah* and *Lee* 1973). Following inhibition of PG synthesis by indomethacin administration, sodium excretion in chronically saline loaded rabbits decreased accompanied by a significant fall of PGA_2 concentration in the outer medulla and papilla. Inhibition of prostaglandin synthesis by either fatty acid deprivation (*Rosenthal* et al. 1974), aspirin (*Susic* and *Sparks* 1975), or indomethacin (*Dusing* et al. 1977b) has been shown to reduce the natriuresis of saline loading. *Dusing* and coworkers studied the effect of prostaglandin synthesis inhibition in ECV-expanded rats on total renal plasma flow and its intrarenal distribution as well as on GFR (*Dusing* et al. 1977a). In ECV-expanded rats, indomethacin had no effect on GFR, but total renal plasma flow was significantly decreased, which was due to a decrease in outer cortical blood flow. To assess the specific sites of enhanced chloride reabsorption in ECV-expanded rats treated with either indomethacin or meclofenamate, *Higashihara* performed free flow micropuncture experiments in the Munich-Wistar rats (*Higashira* et al. 1979). The results showed that inhibitors of prostaglandin synthesis increase chloride transport in the thick ascending loop of Henle, and/or the cortical and outer medullary collecting tubule. Several studies, however, have reported results which showed that inhibition of prostaglandin synthesis results in a significant natriuresis after saline infusion in rabbit, dog, and man (*Oliw* et al. 1978; *Kirschenbium* and *Stein* 1976; *Mountokolakis* et al. 1978). In view of this controversy, the physiologic significance of prostaglandins in mediating the natriuresis of volume expansion is, therefore, not settled.

2.5.4 Antidiuretic Hormone

The possibility that the natriuresis of ECVE is due to a dilution of antidiuretic hormone, thus leading to a diuresis, has been eliminated. Exogenous administration of vasopressin to assure a maximal reabsorption of water has little or no effect on the natriuresis of ECVE (*de Wardener* et al. 1961; *Earley* and *Friedler* 1965a). Further, acute hypophysectomy does not significantly alter the natriuretic response to volume expansion (*Kaloyanides* et al. 1977).

2.5.5 Parathyroid and Thyroid Hormone

Extracellular volume expansion with calcium-free Ringer's solution results in increases in parathyroid hormone (PTH) secretion as a result of a fall

in plasma ionized calcium concentration (*Schneider* et al. 1975). Micropuncture studies in dogs have shown that infusion of parathyroid hormone results in decreased sodium and phosphate reabsorption by the proximal tubule (*Agus* et al. 1971). From these observations one could hypothesize that PTH may play an important role in the natriuresis accompanying ECVE. However, it has been demonstrated that while parathyroid hormone significantly affects the phosphaturia of ECVE, the natriuresis is not dependent on the presence of PTH (*Schneider* et al. 1975).

Holmes and *DiScala* have shown that hypertonic saline infusion in hypothyroid rats resulted in fractional excretion of 45% of the filtered load, whereas no control animal excreted more than 12% (*Holmes* and *DiScala* 1970). This suggests that a thyroid hormone provides a basal support for sodium transport during ECVE.

2.5.6 Neurohumoral

It has been demonstrated that the natriuresis of blood volume expansion is virtually eliminated by high spinal cord section in the dog (*Pearce* and *Sonnenberg* 1965). *Gilmore* and *Daggett* observed a blunted natriuresis to volume expansion with 6% dextran in isotonic saline following chronic cardiac denervation (*Gilmore* and *Daggett* 1966). This was interpreted as being due to interruption of nonvagal afferent pathways from volume receptors near the heart. *Knox* et al. confirmed that cardiac denervation attenuates the natriuresis of saline loading, but found that proximal reabsorption was depressed to a similar degree in response to ECVE as occurs in animals with cardiac innervation (*Knox* et al. 1967). Subsequently, *McDonald* and co-workers investigated the influence of afferent and efferent neural pathways on the natriuresis of ECVE (*McDonald* et al. 1970). High spinal section, which interrupts both afferent and efferent pathways, markedly reduced the natriuretic response to volume expansion. However, cord transection at the T6 level, which preserved thoracic but not abdominal innervation, failed to blunt the natriuretic response. Further, interruption of afferent neural pathways by sectioning nerve roots from C8 to T6, did not impair the natriuresis of ECVE. In this same group of animals, vagotomy also failed to affect the natriuretic response. Similar findings in regard to vagotomy have been shown in response to blood volume expansion (*Pearce* and *Lichardus* 1967). These results strongly suggest that the adrenergic efferent rather than afferent pathways are important in the natriuresis associated with volume expansion in dogs.

Studies have demonstrated that renal denervation in the volume expanded animals leads to an additive natriuresis (*Bengele* et al. 1972; *Bello-Reuss* et al. 1977), which was due to a further decrease in proximal reabsorption (*Bello-Reuss* et al. 1977). Further, low frequency electrical

stimulation of the denervated rat kidney reverses the increase in sodium excretion seen in saline expansion (*Bello-Reuss* et al. 1976). These results are consistent with the notion that a tonic nerve influence on the kidney persists during volume expansion. Studies in the rabbit have, in fact, demonstrated decreased efferent neural traffic during blood volume expansion (*Clement* et al. 1972).

Previous studies have assessed the interrelationship between the catecholaminergic system and ECFV expansion with adrenergic blockade, or measurement of catecholamine blood levels and urinary excretion during acute volume expansion. *Gill* observed an enhanced natriuresis to saline infusion following guanethidine administration (*Gill* et al. 1964). *Alexander* observed that sympathetic nerve activity, as shown by measurement of plasma dopamine β-hydrooxylase and urinary norepinephrine, is suppressed during saline infusion (*Alexander* et al. 1974). Additional studies have confirmed that plasma levels of norepinephrine and epinephrine are reduced during acute saline loading in dogs (*Faucheux* et al. 1977; *Carriere* et al. 1978). These reductions were greater than could be accounted for by hemodilution alone. These data indicate that there may be a direct effect of volume expansion to lower circulating plasma catecholamines, and thereby reduce renal sympathetic tone during volume expansion.

2.6 Response of the Perinatal Kidney to Volume Expansion

When a perinatal mammal is given an ECVE, the result is a smaller absolute and fractional excretion of sodium compared to an adult receiving an equivalent sodium load. This response has been described in several different species (*Aperia* et al. 1972; *Merlet-Benichou* and *de Rouffignac* 1977; *Hurley* et al. 1977; *Bengele* and *Solomon* 1974; *Kleinman* and *Reuter* 1974) and the reasons underlying the phenomenon have been ascribed to several different factors. Among these are rate of glomerular filtration, intrarenal distribution of blood flow, physical and hormonal factors, and inability of the proximal and/or distal tubule to decrease sodium reabsorption in response to a saline load.

The attenuated natriuretic response to volume expansion in the neonate was initially attributed to a relatively small increase in glomerular filtration rate in association with volume expansion. Additionally, a change in the intrarenal distribution of blood flow was postulated to influence sodium handling. The results of studies in newborn and adult dogs, however, show that GFR increases similarly in response to volume expansion in dogs of all ages, and that there is no correlation between the blunted natriuresis and the change in intrarenal blood flow distribution in the newborn dog (*Kleinman* and *Reuter* 1974, *Goldsmith* et al. 1979).

The relationship between changes in physical factors and proximal reabsorption after volume expansion in the neonate is unknown. It has been shown that the oncotic pressure of young rats is lower than that of mature rats (*Allison* et al. 1972). This observation raises the possibility that in the neonate, volume expansion may not decrease peritubular oncotic pressure to the same extent as the mature animal. However, morphological studies demonstrate widening of lateral intercellular spaces during volume expansion in the neonate rat, quantitatively the same as in the mature rat (*Misanko* et al. 1979).

Another possible explanation for the age-related differences in the natriuretic response to volume expansion is elevated blood levels of aldosterone present in the neonate (*Beitens* et al. 1972). It is possible that the neonate kidney is exposed to a greater salt-retaining stimulus due to the amount of aldosterone reaching the kidney, although there is a normal response to volume expansion in the mature animal pretreated with exogenous mineralocorticoids. It has been demonstrated that high sodium intake prior to volume expansion enhances the natriuretic response in puppies (*Steichen* and *Kleinman* 1975).

Results of experiments in newborn dogs demonstrate that the natriuretic response to volume expansion can be restored to adult levels by the administration of oxytocin. Furthermore, the effect was localized to a nephron segment beyond the proximal tubule (*Kleinman* and *Banks* 1980).

Two studies in newborn dogs were carried out to determine whether the attenuated natriuresis to volume expansion is due to enhanced proximal or distal nephron sodium reabsorption. The protocol involved blocking sodium reabsorption beyond the proximal tubule by administration of diuretics, with the rationale being that a change in sodium reabsorption occurring during volume expansion could be attributed to the proximal tubule (*Kleinman* 1975; *Banks* and *Kleinman* 1978). When distal tubular sodium reabsorption was blocked by administration of either amiloride or chlorothiazide and ethacrynic acid, saline expansion increased fractional sodium excretion in the neonate to the same degree as in the untreated volume-expanded adult. These results suggest that the proximal tubule of adult and neonatal dogs respond similarly to volume expansion by decreasing proximal reabsorption, but that sodium excretion in more distal segments of the nephron is augmented in the neonate in response to volume expansion.

2.7 Gastrointestinal and/or Hepatoportal Control of Renal Sodium Excretion

The hypothesis that a sodium ion receptor exists in the gut or portal circulation came from experiments which showed a greater natriuresis when a hypertonic sodium chloride load was given orally rather than intravenously. *Lennane* and *Carey* found that in both rabbit and man, oral sodium loading is followed by a greater natriuresis than intravenous sodium loading (*Lennane* et al. 1975a,b; *Carey* et al. 1976; *Carey* 1978). Because there were no significant changes in either urinary or plasma aldosterone levels between the oral and intravenous groups, it was suggested that the gastrointestinal tract influences renal sodium excretion by a mechanism independent of aldosterone.

However, other investigators have been unable to confirm the hypothesis that a sodium receptor within the GI tract or portal circulation is important in regulating sodium excretion. *Hanson* found no difference in sodium excretion in dogs receiving hypertonic sodium chloride via the GI tract vs an intravenous infusion (*Hanson* et al. 1980). Similarly, results of experiments in rabbits could show no difference in urinary sodium excretion following either a gastrointestinal or intravenous administration of hypertonic sodium chloride (*Obika* et al. 1981). Variations in food intake between the studies may account for the differences seen in dog, rabbit, and man.

It has also been reported that the natriuretic response to a saline load is greater when the infusion is administered into the portal vein rather than into a systemic vein, suggesting that there are osmoreceptors within the portal or hepatic circulation controlling the natriuresis following oral sodium chloride loading. *Passo* reported that hypertonic infusions of sodium chloride into the hepatic portal vein of the cat results in a greater increase in sodium excretion than do comparable femoral vein infusions (*Passo* et al. 1972). Similar results were observed in the dog (*Daly* et al. 1967; *Strandhoy* and *Williamson* 1970). However, using similar protocols, several studies have been unable to demonstrate an enhanced natriuresis following hypertonic sodium chloride infusions into the portal vein of the dog (*Schneider* et al. 1970; *Potkay* and *Gilmore* 1970; *Kapteina* et al. 1978). It is difficult to reconcile the differences reported in the above studies; therefore, experimental evidence for a GI or portal sodium receptor is not conclusive.

Evidence has been presented that the liver may play an important role in renal tubular sodium reabsorption. Enhanced renal sodium reabsorption and impaired renal concentrating ability may be associated with the heptatorenal syndrome (*Shear* et al. 1965). Liver damage produced by ligation of the common bile duct has been used as an experimental model

for the hepatorenal syndrome (*Mullane* and *Gliedman* 1970). It has been reported that dogs with ligation of the CBD have a blunted natriuresis during ECVE, which was attributed to an enhanced proximal and distal tubular sodium reabsorption (*Better* and *Massry* 1972). In an ensuing study, it was noted that ECVE does not elicit a renal vasodilation in animals with CBD ligation, and it was speculated that this may be partly responsible for the blunted natriuresis (*Melman* and *Massry* 1977).

3 Summary

This review summarizes factors influencing renal sodium reabsorption in volume expansion. The influence of renal blood flow and intrarenal blood flow distribution on renal sodium excretion during extracellular volume expansion is unclear. There is no convincing experimental evidence that an increase in renal blood flow per se or a change in the intrarenal distribution of renal blood flow is responsible for the natriuresis of ECVE. An increase in whole kidney glomerular filtration rate has been ruled out as the primary cause of the increase in sodium excretion following volume expansion, and several studies have shown that ECVE is not associated with a change in the intrarenal distribution of GFR. Several investigators propose that the primary variables regulating sodium transport during ECVE are physical factors in the peritubule circulation. There is much evidence to indicate that acute ECVE decreases sodium reabsorption by the proximal tubule. In animals with chronic ECVE, sodium transport along the loop of Henle is decreased. The role of hormonal factors in mediating the natriuresis of volume expansion is controversial. Although current evidence suggests that neurohumoral factors may be important, a role for other hormones, including "natriuretic hormone", is still not settled. In addition, there is no convincing experimental evidence to date to indicate that a sodium ion receptor exists in the gut or portal circulation.

Acknowledgments. Studies from our laboratory were supported by NIH grant HL 14133 and the Mayo Foundation. The authors wish to thank June Hanke for her secretarial assistance.

References

Agus ZS, Puschett JB, Senesky D, Goldberg M (1971) Mode of action of parathyroid hormone and cyclic adenosine 3′, 5′-mono-phosphate on renal tubular phosphate reabsorption in the dog. J Clin Invest 50:617–626

Alexander RW, Gill JR, Yamabe H, Lovenberg W, Keiser HR (1974) Effects of dietary sodium and of acute saline infusion on the interrelationship between Dopamine excretion and adrenergic activity in man. J Clin Invest 54:194–200

Allison M, Lipham E, Gottschalk CW (1972) Hydrostatic pressure in the rat kidney. Am J Physiol 223:975–983

Aperia A, Broberger O, Thodenius K, Zetterstrom R (1972) Renal response to an oral sodium load in newborn fullterm infants. Acta Paediatr Scand 61:670–676

Attallah AA, Lee JB (1973) Radioimmunoassay of prostaglandin A. Intrarenal PGA as a factor mediating saline-induced natriuresis. Circ Res 28:696–703

Auld R, Alexander E, Levinsky N (1971) Proximal tubular function in dogs with thoracic caval constriction. J Clin Invest 50:2150–2158

Bahlmann JS, McDonald J, Ventom MG, de Wardener HE (1967) The effect on urinary sodium excretion of blood volume expansion without changing the composition of the blood. Clin Sci 32:403–413

Baines AD (1973) Redistribution of nephron function in response to chronic and acute saline loads. Am J Physiol 224:237–244

Bank N, Koch KM, Aynedjian HS, Aras M (1969) Effect of changes in renal perfusion pressure on the suppression of proximal tubular sodium reabsorption due to saline loading. J Clin Invest 48:271–283

Banks RO, Kleinman LI (1978) Effects of amiloride on the renal response to saline expansion in newborn dogs. J Physiol 275:521–534

Barger AC (1966) Renal hemodynamic factors in congestive heart failure. Ann NY Acad Sci 139:276–284

Barger AC, Herd JA (1973) Renal vascular anatomy and distribution of blood flow. In: Orloff J, Berliner RE, Geiger SR (eds) Handbook of physiology, vol 8, pp 249–313

Barger AC, Yates FE, Rudolph AM (1961) Renal hemodynamics and sodium excretion in dogs with graded valvular damage and in congestive failure. Am J Physiol 200:601–608

Barratt LJ, Wallin JD, Rector FC Jr, Seldin DW (1973) Influence of volume expansion on single-nephron filtration rate and plasma flow in the rat. Am J Physiol 224:643–650

Bartoli E, Earley LE (1971) The relative contributions of reabsorptive rate and redistributed nephron filtration rate to changes in proximal tubular fractional reabsorption during acute saline infusion and aortic constriction in the rat. J Clin Invest 50:2191–2202

Barton LJ, Lackner LH, Rector FC Jr, Seldin DW (1972) The effect of volume expansion on sodium reabsorption in the diluting segment of the dog kidney. Kidney Int 1:19–26

Beitens IZ, Bayard F, Levitsky L, Ances IG, Kowanski A, Migeon CJ (1972) Plasma aldosterone concentration at delivery and during the newborn period. J Clin Invest 51:386–394

Bello-Reuss E, Trevino DL, Gottschalk CW (1976) Effect of renal sympathetic nerve stimulation on proximal water and sodium reabsorption. J Clin Invest 57:1104–1107

Bello-Reuss E, Pastoriza-Munoz R, Colindres RE (1977) Acute unilateral renal denervation in rats with extracellular volume expansion. Am J Physiol 232:F26–F32

Ben-Ishay D (1973) Paradoxical effect of salt intake on renal response to hypertonic saline loading in rats. Am J Physiol 225:461–466

Bengele HH. Solomon S (1974) Development of the renal response to blood volume expansion in the rat. Am J Physiol 227:364–368
Bengele HH. Houttuin E. Pearce JW (1972) Volume natriuresis without renal nerves and renal vascular pressure rise in the dog. Am J Physiol 223:69–73
Bennett CM (1973) Effect of extracellular volume expansion upon sodium reabsorption in the distal nephron of dogs. J Clin Invest 52:2548–2555
Bennett CM, Brenner BM, Berliner RW (1968) Micropuncture study of nephron function in the Rhesus monkey. J Clin Invest 47:203–216
Bentzel CJ, Anagnostopoulos T, Pandit H (1970) Necturus kidney: its response to effects of isotonic volume expansion. Am J Physiol 218:205–213
Better OS, Massry SG (1972) Effect of chronic bile duct obstruction on renal handling of salt and water. J Clin Invest 51:402–411
Biglieri EG, Forsham PH (1961) Studies on the expanded extracellular fluid and the responses to various stimuli. Am J Med 30:564–576
Blantz RC, Katz MA, Rector FC Jr, Seldin DW (1971) Measurement of intrarenal blood flow. II. Effect of saline diuresis in the dog. Am J Physiol 220:1914–1920
Blythe WB, D'Avila O, Gitelman HJ, Welt LG (1971) Further evidence for a humoral natriuretic factor. Circ Res 28:21–31
Boulpaep EL (1972) Permeability changes of the proximal tubule of necturus during saline loading. Am J Physiol 222:517–531
Bovee KC, Webster GD (1971) Intrarenal distribution of blood flow during saline loading in the dog. Clin Sci 41:519–534
Brenner BM, Berliner RW (1969) Relationship between extracellular volume and fluid reabsorption by the rat nephron. Am J Physiol 217:6–12
Brenner BM, Troy JL (1971) Postglomerular vascular protein concentration: Evidence for a causal role in governing fluid reabsorption and glomerulotubular balance by the renal proximal tubule. J Clin Invest 50:336–349
Brenner BM, Troy JL, Daugharty TM (1971a) On the mechanism of inhibition in fluid reabsorption by the renal proximal tubule of the volume-expanded rat. J Clin Invest 50:1596–1602
Brenner BM, Daugharty JM, Ueki IF, Troy JL (1971b) Quantitative assessment of proximal tubule function in single nephrons of the rat kidney. Am J Physiol 220: 2058–2067
Brenner BM, Falchuk KH, Keimowitz RI, Berliner RW (1969) The relationship between peritubular capillary protein concentration and fluid reabsorption by the proximal tubule. J Clin Invest 48:1519–1531
Bricker NS, Klahr S, Purkerson M, Schultze RG, Avioli LV, Birge SJ (1968) In vitro assay for a humoral substance present during volume expansion and uraemia. Nature (London) 219:1058–1059
Brown PR, Koutsaimanis KG, de Wardener HE (1972) Effect of urinary extracts from salt-loaded man on urinary sodium excretion by the rat. Kidney Int 2:1–5
Brunner FP, Rector FC Jr, Seldin DW (1966) Mechanism of glomerulotubular balance. II. Regulation of proximal tubular reabsorption by tubular volume as studied by stopped-flow microperfusion. J Clin Invest 45:603–611
Bruns FJ, Alexander EA, Riley AL, Levinsky NG (1974) Superficial and juxtamedullary nephron function during saline loading in the dog. J Clin Invest 53:971–979
Buckalew VM, Puschett JB, Kintzel JE (1969) Mechanism of exaggerated natriuresis in hypertensive man: Impaired sodium transport in the loop of Henle. J Clin Invest 48:1007–1016
Buckalew VM Jr, Martinez FJ, Green WE (1970a) The effect of dialysates and ultrafiltrates of plasma of saline-loaded dogs on toad bladder sodium transport. J Clin Invest 49:926–935
Buckalew VM Jr, Walker BR, Puschett JB, Goldberg M (1970b) Effect of increased sodium delivery in distal tubular sodium reabsorption with and without volume expansion in man. J Clin Invest 49:2336–2344

Burg MB, Orloff J (1968) Control of fluid absorption in the renal proximal tubule. J Clin Invest 47:2016–2024
Burke TJ, Robinson RR, Clapp Jr (1971) Effect of arterial hematocrit on sodium reabsorption by the proximal tubule. Am J Physiol 220:1536–1541
Carey RM (1978) Evidence for a splanchnic sodium input monitor regulating renal sodium excretion in man. Circ Res 43:19–23
Carey RM, Smith JR, Ortt EM (1976) Gastrointestinal control of sodium excretion in sodium-depleted conscious rabbits. Am J Physiol 230:1504–1508
Carriere S, Boulet P, Mathieu A, Brunette MG (1972) Isotonic saline loading and intrarenal distribution of glomerular filtration in dogs. Kidney Int 2:191–196
Carriere S, Lalumiere G, Daigneault A, De Champlain J (1978) Sequential changes in catecholamine plasma levels during isotonic volume expansion in dogs. Am J Physiol 235:F119–F125
Chabardes D, Poujeol P, Deiss S, Bonvalet JP, de Rouffignac C (1974) Intrarenal glomerular filtration rate distribution in salt loaded rats. Pflügers Arch 349:191–202
Chanard J, Drueke T, Pujade-Lauraine C, Lacour B, Funck-Brentano JL (1976) Effects of saline loading on jejunal absorption of calcium, sodium and water, and on parathyroid hormone secretion in the rat. Pflügers Arch 367:169–175
Clarkson EM, Talner LB, de Wardener HE (1970) The effect of plasma from blood volume expanded dogs on sodium, potassium, and PAH transport of renal tubule fragments. Clin Sci 38:617–627
Clausen G, Tyssebotn I (1973) Intrarenal distribution of glomerular filtration in conscious rats during isotonic saline infusion. Acta Physiol Scand 89:289–295
Clement DL, Pelletier CL, Shepherd JT (1972) Role of vagal afferents in the control of renal sympathetic nerve activity in the rabbit. Circ Res 31:824–830
Coelho JB (1973) Effect of dietary sodium intake on the intrarenal distribution of nephron glomerular filtration rates in the rat. Circ Res 33:547–554
Coelho JB (1974) Sodium metabolism and intrarenal distribution of nephron glomerular filtration rates in the unanesthetized rat. Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 146:225–231
Conger JD, Bartoli E, Earley LE (1973) No effect of peritubular plasma protein on proximal tubular volume absorption (JV) during capillary perfusion in situ. Proc Am Soc Nephr 6:25 (abstract)
Cortney MA (1969) Renal tubular transfer of water and electrolytes in adrenalectomized rats. Am J Physiol 216:589–598
Cortney MA, Mylle M, Lassiter WF, Gottschalk CW (1965) Renal tubular transport of water, solute and PAH in rats loaded with isotonic saline. Am J Physiol 209: 1199–1205
Daly JJ, Roe J, Horrocks P (1967) A comparison of sodium excretion following the infusion of saline into systemic and portal veins in the dog. Clin Sci 33:481–487
Daugharty TM, Ueki IF, Nicholas DP, Brenner BM (1972) Comparative renal effects of isotonic and colloid-free volume expansion in the rat. Am J Physiol 222:225–235
Davidman M, Alexander E, Lalone R, Levinsky N (1972) Nephron function during volume expansion in the rat. Am J Physiol 223:188–193
Davis BB, Knox FG, Wright FS, Howards SS (1970) Effect of expansion of extracellular fluid volume on proximal sodium reabsorption in hyponatremic dogs. Metabolism 19:291–300
Dev B, Drescher C, Schnermann J (1974) Resetting of tubulo-glomerular feedback sensitivity by dietary salt intake. Pflügers Arch 346:263–277
Diaz-Buxo JA, Haas JA, Ott CE, Cuche J-L, Marchand GR, Knox FG (1976) Sodium balance and the natriuresis of hypertonic saline infusion in dogs. Am J Physiol 230:1183–1186
DiBona DR, Chen LC, Sharp GWG (1974) A study of intercellular spaces in the rabbit jejunum during acute volume expansion and after treatment with cholera toxin. J Clin Invest 53:1300–1307

Diezi J, Michoud P, Aceves J, Giebisch G (1973) Micropuncture study of electrolyte transport across papillary collecting duct of the rat. Am J Physiol 224:623–634
Diezi J, Nenninger M, Giebisch G (1980) Distal tubular function in superficial rat tubules during volume expansion. Am J Physiol 239:F228–F232
Dirks JH, Seely JF (1970) Effect of saline infusions and furosemide on the dog distal nephron. Am J Physiol 219:114–121
Dirks JH, Cirksena WJ, Berliner RW (1965) The effect of saline infusion on sodium reabsorption by the proximal tubule of the dog. J Clin Invest 44:1160–1170
Dusing R, Melder B, Kramer HJ (1977a) Effects of prostaglandin inhibition on intrarenal hemodynamics in acutely saline-loaded rats. Circ Res 41:287–291
Dusing R, Opitz W-D, Kramer HJ (1977b) The role of prostaglandins in the natriuresis of acutely salt-loaded rats. Nephron 18:212–219
Earley LE, Friedler RM (1964) Observations on the mechanism of decreased tubular reabsorption of sodium and water during saline loading. J Clin Invest 43:1928–1937
Earley LE, Friedler RM (1965a) Changes in renal blood flow and possibly the intrarenal distribution of blood during the natriuresis accompanying saline loading. J Clin Invest 44:929–941
Earley LE, Friedler RM (1965b) Studies on the mechanism of natriuresis accompanying increased renal blood flow and its role in the renal response to extracellular volume expansion. J Clin Invest 44:1857–1865
Earley LE, Friedler RM (1966) The effects of combined renal vasodilation and pressor agents on renal hemodynamics and the tubular reabsorption of sodium. J Clin Invest 45:542–551
Earley LE, Martino JA, Friedler RM (1966) Factors affecting sodium reabsorption by the proximal tubule as determined during blockade of distal sodium reabsorption. J Clin Invest 45:1668–1684
Eknoyan G, Suki WN, Rector FC Jr, Seldin DW (1967) Functional characteristics of the diluting segment of the dog nephron and the effect of extracellular volume expansion on its reabsorptive capacity. J Clin Invest 46:1178–1188
Espiner EA, Tucci JR, Jagger PI, Lauler DP (1967) Effect of saline infusions on aldosterone secretion and electrolyte excretion in normal subjects and patients with primary aldosteronism. N Engl J Med 277:1–7
Faucheux B, Buu NT, Kuchel O (1977) Effects of saline and albumin on plasma and urinary catecholamines in dogs. Am J Physiol 232:F123–F127
Fitzgibbons JP, Gennari J, Garfinkel HB, Cortell S (1974) Dependence of saline-induced natriuresis upon exposure of the kidney to the physical effects of extracellular fluid volume expansion. J Clin Invest 54:1428–1436
Friedler RM, Earley LE (1966) Reduced renal concentrating capacity during isotonic saline loading. Proc Soc Exptl Biol Med 121:352–357
Gertz KH, Mangos JA, Braun G, Pagel HD (1965) On the glomerular tubular balance in the rat kidney. Pflügers Arch 285:360–372
Gertz KH, Brandis M, Braun-Schubert G, Boylan JW (1967) The effect of saline infusion and hemorrhage on glomerular filtration pressure and single nephron filtration rate. Pflügers Arch 310:193–205
Giebisch G, Klose RM, Windhager EE (1964) Micropuncture study of hypertonic sodium chloride loading in the rat. Am J Physiol 206:687–693
Gill JR Jr, Mason DT, Bartter FC (1964) Adrenergic nervous system in sodium metabolism: Effects of guanethidine and sodium-retaining steroids in normal man. J Clin Invest 43:177–184
Gilmore JP, Daggett WM (1966) Response of the chronic cardiac denervated dog to acute volume expansion. Am J Physiol 210:509–512
Goldsmith DI, Drukker A, Blaufox MD, Edelmann CM Jr, Spitzer A (1979) Hemodynamic and excretory response of the neonatal canine kidney to acute volume expansion. Am J Physiol 237:F392–F397

Gonick HC, Saldanha LF (1975) A natriuretic principle derived from kidney tissue of volume-expanded rats. J Clin Invest 56:247–255

Gruber KA, Whitaker JM, Buckalew VM Jr (1980) Endogenous digitalis-like substance in plasma of volume-expanded dogs. Nature (London) 287:743–745

Gutman Y, Benzakein F (1970) Effect of saline loading on absorption from the cat ileum in vivo. Israel J Med Sci 6:195–200

Hakim AA, Lifson N (1969) Effects of pressure on water and solute transport by dog intestinal mucosa in vitro. Am J Physiol 216:276–284

Hanson RC, McLane-Vega LA, Childers JW, Gleason SD, Schneider EG (1980) Lack of evidence for gastrointestinal control of sodium excretion in unanesthetized dogs. Am J Physiol 238:F112–F118

Harris RH, Yarger WE (1976) Urine reinfusion natriuresis: Evidence for potent natriuretic factors in rat urine. Kidney Int 11:93–105

Hayslett JP, Kashgarian M, Epstein FH (1967) Changes in proximal and distal tubular reabsorption produced by rapid expansion of extracellular fluid. J Clin Invest 46: 1254–1263

Herrera-Acosta J, Andreucci VE, Rector FC Jr, Seldin DW (1972) Effect of expansion of extracellular volume on single-nephron filtration rates in the rat. Am J Physiol 222:938–944

Higashihara E, Stokes JB, Kokko JP, Campbell WB, DuBose TD Jr (1979) Cortical and papillary micropuncture examination of chloride transport in segments of the rat. J Clin Invest 64:1277–1287

Higgins JT Jr (1971) Role of extracellular volume in diuretic response to saline loading. Am J Physiol 220:1367–1372

Higgins JT Jr, Blair NP (1971) Intestinal transport of water and electrolytes during extracellular volume expansion in dogs. J Clin Invest 50:2569–2579

Holmes EW, DiScala VA (1970) Exaggerated natriuresis in the hypothyroid rat. Clin Res 18:502

Holzgreve H, Schrier RW (1975) Variation of proximal tubular reabsorptive capacity by volume expansion and aortic constriction during constancy of peritubular capillary protein concentration in rat kidney. Pflügers Arch 356:73–86

Horster M, Thurau K (1968) Micropuncture studies on the filtration rate of single superficial and juxtamedullary glomeruli in the rat kidney. Pflügers Arch 301: 162–181

Howards SS, Davis BB, Knox FG (1968) Depression of fractional sodium reabsorption by the proximal tubule of the dog without sodium diuresis. J Clin Invest 47: 1561–1572

Humphreys MH, Earley LE (1971) The mechanism of decreased intestinal sodium and water absorption after acute volume expansion in the rat. J Clin Invest 50: 2355–2367

Hurley JK, Kirkpatrick SE, Pitlick PT, Friedman WF, Mendoza SA (1977) Renal responses of the fetal lamb to fetal or maternal volume expansion. Circ Res 40: 557–560

Jamison RL, Lacy FB (1971) Effect of saline infusion on superficial and juxtamedullary nephrons in the rat. Am J Physiol 221:690–697

Johnston CI, Davis JO (1966) Evidence from cross circulation studies for a humoral mechanism in the natriuresis of saline loading. Proc Soc Exptl Biol Med 121: 1058–1063

Johnston CI, Davis JO, Howards SS, Wright FS (1967) Cross-circulation experiments on the mechanism of the natriuresis during saline loading in the dog Circ Res 20: 1–10

Kaloyanides GJ, Azer M (1971) Evidence for a humoral mechanism in volume expansion natriuresis. J Clin Invest 50:1602–1612

Kaloyanides GJ, Cohen L, DiBona GF (1977) Failure of selected endocrine organ ablation to modify the natriuresis of blood volume expansion in the dog. Clin Sci Mol Med 52:351–356

Kallskog O, Wolgast M (1973) Driving forces over the peritubular capillary membrane in the rat kidney during antidiuresis and saline expansion. Acta Physiol Scand 89: 116–125

Kamm DE, Levinsky NG (1964) Effect of plasma sodium elevation on renal sodium reabsorption. Am J Physiol 206:1131–1136

Kamm DE, Levinsky NG (1965) Inhibition of renal tubular sodium reabsorption by hypernatremia. J Clin Invest 44:1144–1150

Kapteina FW, Motz W, Schwartz-Porsche D, Gauer OH (1978) Comparison of renal responses to 5% saline infusions into vena portal and vena cava in conscious dogs. Pflügers Arch 374:23–29

Katz AI, Genant HK (1971) Effect of extracellular volume expansion on renal cortical and medullary Na^+-K^+ ATPase. Pflügers Arch 330:136–148

Keck W, Joppich R, v Restoff WD, Finsterer U, Prucksunand P, Brechtelsbauer H, Kramer K (1973) Sodium excretion in conscious and anesthetized dogs after large saline infusion. Pflügers Arch 341:51–62

Khuri RN, Wiederholt M, Strieder N, Giebisch G (1975) Effects of graded solute diuresis on renal tubular sodium transport in the rat. Am J Physiol 228:1262–1268

Kinney MJ, DiScala VA (1974) Volume expansion and intrarenal blood flow of normal and salt-deprived rats. Am J Physiol 227:652–656

Kirschenbaum MA, Stein JH (1976) The effect of inhibition of prostaglandin synthesis on urinary sodium excretion in the conscious dog. J Clin Invest 57:517–521

Kleinman LI (1975) Renal sodium reabsorption during saline loading and distal blockade in newborn dogs. Am J Physiol 228:1403–1408

Kleinman LI, Banks RO (1980) Natriuretic effect of oxytocin on saline-expanded neonatal dogs. Am J Physiol 239:F589–F594

Kleinman LI, Reuter JH (1974) Renal response of the newborn dog to a saline load: The role of intrarenal blood flow distribution. J Physiol 239:225–236

Klemmer PJ, De Los Santos C, Blythe WB (1978) Saline-induced natriuresis in the dog without prior exposure of the kidney to the physical effects of expansion of the extracellular fluid compartments. Clin Sci Mol Med 54:525–527

Knight TF, Weinman EJ (1977) Renal sodium reabsorption following induction of and recovery from volume expansion. Am J Physiol 233:F416–F420

Knox FG, Gasser J (1974) Altered distal sodium reabsorption in volume expansion. Mayo Clin Proc 49:775–781

Knox FG, Davis BB, Berliner RW (1967) Effect of chronic cardiac denervation on renal response to saline infusion. Am J Physiol 213:174–178

Knox FG, Howards SS, Wright FS, Davis BB, Berliner RW (1968) Effect of dilution and expansion of blood volume on proximal sodium reabsorption. Am J Physiol 215:1041–1048

Knox FG, Schneider EG, Dresser TP, Lynch RE (1970) Natriuretic effect of increased proximal delivery in dogs with salt retention. Am J Physiol 219:904–910

Knox FG, Schneider EG, Willis LR, Strandhoy JW, Ott CE (1973) Effect of volume expansion on sodium excretion in the presence and absence of increased delivery from superficial proximal tubules. J Clin Invest 52:1642–1646

Knox FG, Burnett JC Jr, Kohan DE, Spielman WS, Strand JC (1980) Escape from the sodium-retaining effects of mineralocorticoids. Kidney Int 17:263–276

Kunau RT Jr, Lameire NH (1976) The effect of an acute increase in renal perfusion pressure on sodium transport. Circ Res 39:689–695

Kunau RT Jr, Webb JL, Borman SC (1974) Characteristics of sodium reabsorption in the loop of Henle and distal tubule. Am J Physiol 227:1181–1191

Kuschinsky W, Wahl M, Wunderlich P, Thurau K (1970) Different correlations between plasma protein concentration and proximal fractional reabsorption in the rat during acute and chronic saline infusion. Pflügers Arch 321:102–120

Lameire N, Matthys E, Mussche M, Ringoir S, Leusen I (1979) Differences between dog and rat in the natriuretic response to extracellular volume expansion with immediate aortic constriction. J Lab Clin Med 94:215–222

Landwehr DM, Klose RM, Giebisch G (1967) Renal tubular sodium and water reabsorption in the isotonic sodium chloride-loaded rat. Am J Physiol 212:1327–1333
Lee JS (1973) Effects of pressures on water absorption and secretion in rat jejunum. Am J Physiol 224:1338–1344
Leeber DA, Murdaugh HV, Davis BB (1968) Inhibition of sodium transport by Henle's loop after intravenous saline infusion. J Lab Clin Med 72:220–227
Lennane RJ, Peart WS, Carey RM, Shaw J (1975a) A comparison of natriuresis after oral and intravenous sodium laoding in sodium-depleted rabbits: Evidence for a gastrointestinal or portal monitor of sodium intake. Clin Sci Mol Med 49:433–436
Lennane RJ, Carey RM, Goodwin TJ, Peart WS (1975b) A comparison of natriuresis after oral and intravenous sodium loading in sodium-depleted man: Evidence for a gastrointestinal or portal monitor of sodium intake. Clin Sci Mol Med 49:437–440
Levinsky NG, Lalone RC (1963) The mechanism of sodium diuresis after saline infusion in the dog. J Clin Invest 42:1261–1275
Levy M (1972) Effects of acute volume expansion and altered hemodynamics on renal tubular function in chronic caval dogs. J Clin Invest 51:922–938
Lewy JE, Windhager EE (1968) Peritubular control of proximal tubular fluid reabsorption in the rat kidney. Am J Physiol 214:943–954
Lichardus B, Pearce JW (1966) Evidence for a humoral natriuretic factor released by blood volume expansion. Nature (London) 209:407–409
Loyning EW (1974) Intracortical distribution of renal blood flow during saline infusion in dogs. Acta Physiol Scand 90:409–416
Maddox DA, Price DC, Rector FC Jr (1977) Effects of surgery on plasma volume and salt and water excretion in rats. Am J Physiol 233:F600–F606
Mandin H, Israelit AH, Rector FC Jr, Seldin DW (1971) Effect of saline infusion on intrarenal distribution of glomerular filtrate and proximal reabsorption in the dog. J Clin Invest 50:514–522
Marchand GR (1978) Interstitial pressure during volume expansion at reduced renal artery pressure. Am J Physiol 235:F209–F212
Marchand GR, Ott CE, Lang FC, Greger RF, Knox FG (1977a) Effect of secretin on renal blood flow, interstitial pressure, and sodium excretion. Am J Physiol 232: F147–F151
Marchand GR, Burke TJ, Haas JA, Romero JC, Knox FG (1977b) Regulation of filtration rate in sodium-depleted and -expanded dogs. Am J Physiol 232:F325–F328
Maunsbach AB, Boulpaep EL (1980) Hydrostatic pressure changes related to paracellular shunt ultrastructure in proximal tubule. Kidney Int 17:732–748
Martino JA, Earley LE (1967) Demonstration of a role of physical factors as determinants of the natriuretic response to volume expansion. J Clin Invest 46:1963–1978
Martino JA, Earley LE (1968) Relationship between intrarenal hydrostatic pressure and hemodynamically induced changes in sodium excretion. Circ Res 23:371–386
McDonald KM, Rosenthal A, Schrier RW, Galicich J, Lauler DP (1970) Effect of interruption of neural pathways on renal response to volume expansion. Am J Physiol 218:510–517
McDonald M, Schrier RW, Lauler DP (1967) Effect of acute extracellular volume expansion on cross-circulated dogs. Nephron 4:1–12
McDonald SJ, de Wardener HE (1965) The relationship between the renal arterial perfusion pressure and the increase in sodium excretion which occurs during an infusion of saline. Nephron 2:1–14
Melman A, Massry SG (1977) Role of renal vasodilation in the blunted natriuresis of saline infusion in dogs with chronic bile duct obstruction. J Lab Clin Med 89: 1053–1065
Merlet-Benichou C, de Rouffignac C (1977) Renal clearance studies in fetal and young guinea pigs: Effect of salt loading. Am J Physiol 232:F178–F185

Migdal S, Alexander EA, Bruns FJ, Riley AL, Levinsky NG (1975) Effect of hemodilution on the distribution of renal blood flow. Circ Res 36:71–75

Misanko BS, Bengele HH, Solomon S (1979) Renal response to Ringer expansion in developing rats. Biol Neonate 35:52–59

Morgan T, Berliner RW (1969a) A study by continuous microperfusion of water and electrolyte movements in the loop of Henle and distal tubule of the rat. Nephron 6:388–405

Morgan T, Berliner RW (1969b) In vivo perfusion of proximal tubule of the rat: Glomerular balance. Am J Physiol 217:992–997

Mountokalakis T, Karambasis T, Mayopoulou-Symvoulidou MG, Merikas G (1978) Effect of inhibition of prostaglandin synthesis on the natriuresis induced by saline infusion in man. Clin Sci Mol Med 54:47–50

Mullane JF, Gliedman ML (1970) Renal response to saline load in experimental liver disease. J Surg Res 10:519–523

Munck O, de Bono E, Mills IH (1970) Distribution of blood flow in the renal cortex during saline loading. Clin Sci 38:699–712

Nissen OI (1968) Changes in the filtration fractions in the superficial and deep venous drainage area of the cat kidney due to fluid loading. Acta Physiol Scand 73:320–328

Nutbourne DM, Howse JD, Schrier RW, Talner LB, Ventom MG, Verroust PJ, de Wardener HE (1970) Effect of expanding the blood volume of a dog on the short circuit current across the isolated frog skin incorporated in the dog's circulation. Clin Sci 38:33–34

Obika LFO, Fitzgerald EM, Gleason SD, Zucker A, Schneider EG (1981) Lack of evidence for gastrointestinal control of sodium excretion in unanesthetized rabbits. Am J Physiol 240:F94–F100

Oliw E, Kover G, Larsson C, Anggard E (1978) Indomethacin and diclofenac increase sodium and water excretion after extracellular volume expansion in the rabbit. Eur J Pharmacol 49:381–388

Osgood RW, Lameire NH, Sorkin MI, Stein JH (1977) Effect of aortic clamping on proximal reabsorption and sodium excretion in the rat. Am J Physiol 232:F92–F96

Osgood RW, Reineck HJ, Stein JH (1978) Further studies on segmental sodium transport in the rat kidney during expansion of the extracellular fluid volume. J Clin Invest 62:311–320

Ott CE, Haas JA, Cuche J-L, Knox FG (1975) Effect of increased peritubule protein concentration on proximal tubule reabsorption in the presence and absence of extracellular volume expansion. J Clin Invest 55:612–620

Papanicolaou N, Safar M, Hornych A, Fontaliran F, Weiss Y, Bariety J, Milliez P (1975) The release of renal prostaglandins during saline infusion in normal and hypertensive subjects. Clin Sci Mol Med 49:459–463

Papper S, Belsky JL, Bleifer KH (1960) The response to the administration of isotonic sodium chloride-lactate solution in patients with essential hypertension. J Clin Invest 39:876–884

Passo SS, Thornborough JR, Rothboller AB (1972) Hepatic receptors in control of sodium excretion in anesthetized cats. Am J Physiol 224:373–375

Pearce JW, Lichardus B (1967) Effects of vagotomy and renal denervation on renal response to blood volume expansion. Can J Physiol Pharmacol 45:689–703

Pearce JW, Sonnenberg H (1965) Effects of spinal section and renal denervation on the renal response to blood volume expansion. Can J Physiol Pharmacol 43:211–224

Pearce JW, Sonnenberg H, Veress AT, Ackerman U (1969) Evidence for a humoral factor modifying the renal response to blood volume expansion in the rat. Can J Physiol Pharmacol 47:377–386

Potkay S, Gilmore JP (1970) Renal response to vena caval and portal venous infusions of sodium chloride in unanesthetized dogs. Clin Sci Mol Med 39:13–20

Poujeol R, Bonvalet JP, de Rouffignac C (1975) Glomerular filtration rate and microsphere distributions in single nephron of rat kidney. Pflügers Arch 357:291–301
Quinn MD, Marsh DJ (1979) Peritubular papillary control of proximal tubule reabsorption in the rat. Am J Physiol 236:F478–F487
Rector FC Jr, Giesen GV, Kiil F, Seldin DW (1964) Influence of expansion of extracellular volume on tubular reabsorption of sodium independent of changes in glomerular filtration rate and aldosterone activity. J Clin Invest 43:341–348
Rector FC Jr, Sellman JC, Martinez-Maldonado M, Seldin DW (1967) The mechanism of suppression of proximal tubular reabsorption by saline infusions. J Clin Invest 46:47–56
Reineck HJ, Parma R, Barnes JL, Osgood RW (1980) Nephron heterogeneity in renal excretion of sodium and potassium in the rat. Am J Physiol 239:F187–F193
Richet G, Hornych A (1969) The effect of an expansion of extracellular fluids on net Na flux in the jejunum of rats. Nephron 6:365–378
Rosenthal J, Simone PG, Silbergleit A (1974) Effects of prostaglandin deficiency on natriuresis, diuresis and blood pressure. Prostaglandins 5:435–440
Rouffignac C de, Bonvalet JP (1970) Variations in GFR of single superficial and deep nephrons under various conditions of sodium intake in the rat. Pflügers Arch 317: 141–156
Rumrich G, Ullrich KJ (1968) The minimum requirements for the maintenance of sodium chloride reabsorption in the proximal convolution of the mammalian kidney. J Physiol (London) 197:69–70
Sato K (1975) Reevaluation of micropuncture techniques: Some of the factors which affect the rate of fluid absorption by the proximal tubule. In: Angielski S, Dubach UC (eds) Current problems in clinical biochemistry; biochemical aspects of renal function, vol 4, pp 175–187
Schneider EG, Dresser TP, Lynch RE, Knox FG (1971) Sodium reabsorption by proximal tubule of dogs with experimental heart failure. Am J Physiol 220:952–957
Schneider EG, Goldsmith RS, Arnaud CD, Knox FG (1975) Role of parathyroid hormone in the phosphaturia of extracellular fluid volume expansion. Kidney Int 7: 317–324
Schneider EG, Lynch RE, Willis LR, Knox FG (1972) Single-nephron filtration rate in the dog. Am J Physiol 222:938–944
Schneider EG, Davis JO, Robb CA, Baumber JS, Johnson JA, Wright FS (1970) Lack of evidence for a hepatic osmoreceptor mechanism in conscious dogs. Am J Physiol 218:42–45
Schnermann J (1968) Microperfusion study of single short loops of Henle in rat kidney. Pflügers Arch 300:255–282
Schnerman J, Hermle M, Schmidmeier E, Dalheim H (1975) Impaired potency for feedback regulation of glomerular filtration rate in DOCA escaped rats. Pflügers Arch 358:325–338
Schnermann J, Davis JM, Wunderlich P, Levine DZ, Horster M (1971) Technical problems in the micropuncture determination of nephron filtration rate and their functional implications. Pflügers Arch 329:307–320
Schnermann J, Wright FS, Davis JM, v Stackelberg W, Grill G (1970) Regulation of superficial nephron filtration rate by tubulo-glomerular feedback. Pflügers Arch 318:147–175
Schrier RW, Earley LE (1970) Effects of hematocrit on renal hemodynamics and sodium excretion in hydropenic and volume-expanded dogs. J Clin Invest 49: 1656–1667
Schrier RW, Fein RL, McNeil JS, Cirksena WJ (1969) Influence of interstitial fluid volume expansion and plasma sodium concentration on the natriuretic response to volume expansion. Clin Sci 36:371–385
Schrier RW, McDonald KM, Marshall RA, Lauler DP (1968) Absence of natriuretic response to acute hypotonic intravascular volume expansion in dogs. Clin Sci 34: 57–72

Schrier RW, McDonald KM, Wells RE, Lauler DP (1970) Influence of hematrocrit and colloid on whole blood viscosity during volume expansion. Am J Physiol 218: 346–352

Sealey JE, Kirshman D, Laragh JH (1969) Natriuretic activity in plasma and urine of salt-loaded man and sheep. J Clin Invest 48:2210–2224

Shear L, Kleinerman J, Gabuzda GJ (1965) Renal failure in patients with cirrhosis of the liver. I. Clinical and pathologic characteristics. Am J Med 39:184–198

Sonnenberg H (1974) Medullary collecting duct function in anti-diuretic and in salt- or water-diuretic rats. Am J Physiol 501–506

Sonnenberg H (1975) Secretion of salt and water into the medullary collecting duct of Ringer-infused rats. Am J Physiol 228:565–568

Sonnenberg H, Solomon S (1969) Mechanism of natriuresis following intravascular and extracellular volume expansion. Can J Physiol Pharmacol 47:153–159

Spitzer A, Windhager EE (1970) Effect of peritubular oncotic pressure changes on proximal tubular fluid reabsorption. Am J Physiol 218:1188–1193

Steichen JJ, Kleinmann LI (1975) Influence of dietary sodium intake on renal maturation in unanesthetized canine puppies. Proc Soc Exptl Biol Med 148:748–751

Stein JH, Osgood RW, Ferris TF (1972) Effect of volume expansion on distribution of glomerular filtrate and renal cortical blood flow in the dog. Am J Physiol 223: 984–990

Stein JH, Osgood RA, Kunau RT Jr (1976) Direct measurement of papillary collecting duct sodium transport in the rat. J Clin Invest 58:767–773

Stein JH, Osgood RW, Boonjaren S, Ferris T (1973) A comparison of the segmental analysis of sodium reabsorption during Ringers and hyperoncotic albumin infusion in the rat. J Clin Invest 52:2312–2323

Stein RM, Abramson RG, Kahn T, Levitt MF (1967) Evidence for a saline-induced limit on distal tubular sodium transport. J Clin Invest 46:1205–1214

Strandhoy JW, Williamson HE (1970) Evidence for an hepatic role in the control of sodium excretion. Proc Soc Exptl Biol Med 133:419–422

Strauss MB, Earley LE (1959) An inquiry into the role of "sodium-retaining" steroids in the homeostasis of body sodium in man. Trans Assoc Am Physicians 72: 200–206

Stumpe KO, Lowitz HD, Ochwadt B (1970) Fluid reabsorption in Henle's loop and urinary excretion of sodium and water in normal rats and rats with hypertension. J Clin Invest 49:1200–1212

Stumpe KO, Solle H, Klein H, Kruck F (1973) Mechanism of sodium and water retention in rats with experimental heart failure. Kidney Int 4:309–317

Susic D, Sparks JC (1975) Effects of aspirin on renal sodium excretion, blood pressure, and plasma and extracellular fluid volume in salt loaded rats. Prostaglandins 10:825–831

Tucker BJ, Blantz RC (1978) Determinants of proximal tubular reabsorption as mechanisms of glomerulotubular balance. Am J Physiol 235:F142–F150

Velasquez MT, Notargiacomo MV, Cohn JN (1973) Comparative effects of saline and mannitol on renal cortical blood flow and volume in the dog. Am J Physiol 224: 322–327

Velasquez MT, Notargiacomo MV, Cohn JN (1975) Segmental changes in intrarenal hemodynamics during saline infution in the dog. Am J Physiol 228:1663–1668

Veress AT, Pearce JW (1974) The effect of acute adrenalectomy on volume natriuresis in the rat. Proc Soc Explt Biol 145:533–536

Viskoper JR, Czaczkes JW, Schwartz N, Ullmann TD (1971) Natriuretic activity of a substance isolated from human urine during the excretion of a salt load. Nephron 8:540–548

Wallin JD, Blantz RC, Katz MA, Andreucci VE, Rector FC Jr, Seldin DW (1971) Effect of saline diuresis on intrarenal blood flow in the rat. Am J Physiol 221: 1297–1304

Wardener HE de, Mills IH, Clapham WF, Hayter CJ (1961) Studies on the efferent mechanism of the sodium diuresis which follows the administration of intravenous saline in the dog. Clin Sci 21:249–258

Wilson DR, Sonnenberg H (1979) Medullary collecting duct function in the remnant kidney before and after volume expansion. Kidney Int 15:487–501

Windhager EE, Lewy JE, Spitzer A (1969) Intrarenal control of proximal tubular reabsorption of sodium and water. Nephron 6:247–259

Rev. Physiol. Biochem. Pharmacol., Vol. 92

Hormonal Coordination of the Immune Response

JEAN COMSA, HUBERT LEONHARDT, and HARTMUT WEKERLE *

Contents

* Universität des Saarlandes, Medizinische Fakultät, D-665 Homburg (Saar)

For the last 20 years, hormonal influences on the immune system have been subject to an immense amount of research. The documentation accumulated thus far obviously differs from one endocrine organ to another and in some cases it has been one-sided. About 10 000 publications have been dedicated to the role of the thymus in immunology, whereas references to the role of the thyroid or the gonads are scarce. Immunological work on the adrenal cortex has been considerable, but (with few exceptions) has dealt only with the immunosuppressive influence of corticoids administered in "unphysiological" amounts to intact animals. The concept of a proper hormonal regulation of the immune response, i.e., the role of interactions of several endocrines, under a possible ultimate neurohormonal control, emerged only recently, and its elucidation is largely a matter for future research. The subject of the present review is, among other things, an attempt to indicate possible directions for this research. Thus, the present review has to record immunological and endocrinological documentation. Since a result of these considerations is that the proper endocrinological point of view has for some reason been neglected so far by immunologists (except, of course, for the thymic hormones), this point will be emphasized below. Immunological documentation will be summarized and limited to information necessary to understand present knowledge in endocrinology.

1 The Thymus

As stated above, more than 10 000 references may be found concerning the role of the thymus in immunity [see reviews 216, 218, 255, 329, and 504]. From this tremendous bibliography some valid conclusions can be drawn. A chronological review presents a good idea of the course of this knowledge.

1.1 Immunological Consequences of Thymectomy

The thymus of immunized rabbits contains no antibodies [62] and the thymus of immunized guinea pigs yields no antibodies in the incubation medium [19]. However, thymectomy is followed by a severe decrease in antibody production in weanling guinea pigs injected with *Salmonella* antigens [115, 268], rats [e.g. 24, 525], rabbits [12, 35], and mice [e.g. 15, 252, 256, 261, 362, 469, 493, 557] suffer from a severe immunodeficiency when thymectomized at birth. This is not constant [e.g. 271, 252, 35, 484], but thymectomy in prepuberal mice results in immunodeficciency within a certain delay. The accelerated development of experimental tumors, whether induced by polyoma virus [133, 315], by synthetic carcinogens [368] or by grafting malignant cells [e.g. 421], was explained as an immune deficiency. The rejection of allografts is delayed in mice and rats thymectomized at birth [e.g. 14, 41, 348, 362, 371], while in weanling rats, the rejection of skin allografts is only slightly delayed [123].

The immune deficiency was considered to be the reason for the characteristic wasting of thymectomized mice [e.g. 24] since axenic thymectomized mice do not waste [e.g. 543], and this was generally confirmed [410]. This immunodeficiency of thymectomized animals may be paralleled with the abnormal composition of their immunoglobulins. In these animals, IgM is normal, IgG is deficient, and IgA is absent. Furthermore, sensitized, thymectomized animals fail to perform the switch from IgM production to IgG production during the immune response [see 67 for review].

The immunodeficiency of thymectomized animals (mostly mice) was confirmed by a large and still increasing number of techniques:

1. The plaque-forming cell assay [273]. Plaque-forming cells are severely reduced in number in the spleen of thymectomized mice injected with sheep erythrocytes [e.g. 196, 371].
2. The rosette-forming cell test [e.g. 57]. Rosette-forming cells (with sheep erythrocytes) decreased in number in the spleen of neonatally thymectomized mice [e.g. 29].
3. The graft-vs-host reaction in its in vivo [57, 468] and in vitro form [22]. Spleen cells from thymectomized donors were found to be unable to induce the in vivo [e.g. 134, 347, 505] and the in vitro graft-vs-host reaction [509] (see review of previous documentations on the role in all these reactions [236]).

The (relative) resistance of the immune system in thymectomized puberal mice implies three exceptions:

1. The nude mouse, congenitally deprived of the thymus [549]. This mouse does not reject allografts; its spleen cells are unable to induce

the graft-vs-host reaction and its hemolysin production after sheep erythrocyte injection is conspicuously low. Normal reactions are reestablished in all these tests by a thymus graft [398]. This topic will be discussed below (see Sect. 1.9.1).

2. The dwarf mouse [157, 415].
3. The thymectomized, lethally irradiated mouse, restored with bone-marrow cell transfusion [e.g. 367]. These animals survive both thymectomy and irradiation, but they do not produce antibodies against a large number of antigens, e.g., sheep erythrocytes [127, 367] and skin allograft rejection is delayed [e.g. 361, 515]. This observation developed into a valid and generally accepted experimental design. It may still raise a problem when used to demonstrate the influence of thymic extracts. Indeed, the efficiency of a thymic extract was shown to tend towards zero in irradiated guinea pigs[114].This was not demonstrated by immunological testing; nevertheless, it could explain the inefficiency of thymic hormones in irradiated mice [306].

1.2 Cell-to-Cell Interaction in the Immune Response

Irradiated thymectomized mice, injected with lymphocytes from bone marrow or thymus, produced no antibodies when injected with erythrocytes (as demonstrated with the plaque-forming cell test [367]. Antibody production was normal in similar mice injected with both thymic and bone-marrow cells [e.g. 102]. This could not be observed when the thymic cells were killed by ultrasound [102] or by a specific antiserum. Newborn mice (CBA or C 57b1) were thymectomized, X-irradiated, and injected with sheep erythrocytes. Their antibody production was poor, as demonstrated by the plaque-forming cell test. It could be reestablished by injection of thymic and bone-marrow lymphocytes, but not with thymic cells alone [363, 365, 364].

Newborn thymectomized CBA mice were injected with syngeneic bone marrow and C 57b1 thymocytes together with sheep erythrocytes. Then their spleen was searched for plaque-forming cells. If the test plaques were treated with anti-CBA serum, the number of plaque-forming cells decreased to near zero. Anti-C 57b1 serum did not have a similar effect [363]. Thus, the antibody-producing cells differentiate from the receiver, but the (allogenic) thymus was necessary. In intact X-irradiated mice restoration of the immune response was possible with bone-marrow cell transfusions (plaque-forming cell test); in thymectomized irradiated mice it was not (reviewed in [365]).

CBA mice were thymectomized, X-irradiated, and injected with thymic and bone-marrow cells either from CBA or T_6 T_6 donors (T_6 T_6 thymus

+ CBA bone marrow or the opposite). Their spleen cells were injected into second recipients thymectomized, X-irradiated CBA, and previously immunized against T_6 T_6 mice. In addition, the second recipient was injected with sheep erythrocytes. Three combinations were possible:

1. The second recipient mouse received spleen cells from a donor injected with T_6 T_6 thymus and CBA bone marrow. There was no net increase in plaque-forming cells in its spleen.
2. The second recipient received spleen cells from a donor bearing CBA thymus and T_6 T_6 bone-marrow cells. In its spleen there was an explosive increase in the mitotic rate, but no increase in plaque-forming cells.
3. The second recipient received CBA thymus and CBA bone-marrow cells. Mitosis and plaque-forming cells increased significantly in number [131]. This interaction between at least two cells for immune response was confirmed by numerous in vitro assays [e.g. 43] (see below).

The two (B and T) cells were incubated in two compartments of a double diffusion chamber with sheep erythrocytes added to one compartment only. Antibody production was limited to the B cell compartment, but when B cells were incubated with sheep erythrocytes only, no antibodies were produced [3]. Similar observations were made with *Shigella* antigens [187].

In fact, the cooperation between T and B cells was found to be insufficient [e.g. 13, 363]. Macrophages are also necessary [e.g. 185, 201, 208, 317, 379, 436, see review 282]. Two different T cells seem necessary for this interaction: those killed by antilymphocyte serum (long-lived) and those disappearing shortly after thymectomy [185].

1.3 Role of the Thymus in Immunotolerance

Immunotolerance was first observed in rabbits injected with antigen at birth [246]. This can be induced with repeated small doses or with a single massive dose of antigen. The effect of small doses was enhanced by cortisol injections [100].

Thymectomy was followed by a prolongation of immunotolerance beyond the normal time limit [104, 406, 493]. Thus, tolerance seemed to show just the absence of immunocompetent T cells. Still, these cells may be suppressed by thymectomy or by X-irradiation. In tolerant animals, thymectomy prolonged the tolerance period, whereas irradiation shortened it [101]. Apparently, cells (killed by irradiation) are necessary to maintain the tolerance. Thymectomized, X-irradiated mice bearing

thymus grafts from tolerant donors [264] or infused with thoracic duct cells [99] or spleen cells [243] from tolerant donors became tolerant. This was confirmed in rats [237]. When the (tolerant) spleen or thoracic duct cells were treated with anti-Thy 1 serum prior to the transfusion, this passive tolerance was not induced. Tolerance still does not seem to be specific to T cells. Thymectomized, X-irradiated mice injected with bone-marrow and thymic cells became tolerant when either one of the two cells came from tolerant donors [98]. Enhancement of antibody production or tolerance depends on the ratio of T cells to B cells. Up to a certain limit T cells induce antibody production by B cells; over this limit they suppress it and may induce tolerance [184]. Be that as it may, the importance of the thymus in induction of immunotolerance can be demonstrated.

1.4 Role of the Thymus in Cytotoxic and Graft Immune Reactions

The allograft rejection is a reaction of the cellular immunity. Passive transfer of immunity against allografts was possible by cell transfer but not by injections of serum from an immunized donor [e.g. 372, reviewed 350]. An allograft is rejected at any rate by a normal animal, but receptors of immune cells rejected it as if they had been immunized already by a first graft (i.e., in about half the time required for the rejection of the first graft). Passive transfer of graft immunity by serum was also possible in rabbits [552]. Humoral immunity is supposed to play a part in allograft rejection [see review 478]. Allografts included in diffusion chambers were not destroyed [e.g. 8]. Divergent observations are scarce: lymphocytes of an immunized mouse were included in millipore membranes and implanted into an unimmunized animal. Skin grafts of the strain against which the lymphocyte donor was immunized were rejected by the receptor as second grafts [302, 385]. Drainage of the thoracic duct in rats (i.e., deprivation principally of small lymphocytes) resulted in an significant delay in graft rejection [332]. Thymectomy at birth was followed by a long delay in skin graft rejection in mice [176, 192, 361]. The role of the thymus is essential: X-irradiated, thymectomized CBA mice injected with syngeneic bone marrow and C3H thymic cells normally rejected C 57 B skin grafts but not C3H grafts. Mice injected with anti-Thy 1 serum did not reject skin allografts [428] (see review of previous documentation [542]). Allograft rejection demonstrated the function of cytotoxic cells. Lymph-node cells from rats bearing a skin allograft kill kidney cells from the skin donor strain in vitro [541].

In cytotoxic cells [326], cytostatic activity (demonstrated by the inhibition of thymidine uptake) was distinguished from cytolytic activity

(demonstrated by the release of 51 Cr from the labeled target cells into the medium).

Cytotoxic activity is supported by T cells [514]. It persists in lymphocytes where B cells have been discarded [e.g. 234]. It can be acquired in vitro by cultivation of T cells (from thymus, lymph nodes or spleen) with target cells [see 327]. This differentiation implies DNA synthesis [388]. Cytotoxic T cells are of a peculiar type, characterized by specific antigenic markers (see Sect. 1.7). They conserve their cytotoxic potential for months in vitro in the absence of the specific antigen. They have no "helper" function [see review 136]. This differentiation implies DNA synthesis [e.g. 388].

T cells are sufficient to manifest cytotoxic activity [94]. This observation was not confirmed. Thymocytes (i.e., immature cells) added to the medium, enhanced the cytotoxic activity of (mature) previously sensitized spleen cells from CBA mice against BALB lymphocytes [520]. In fact, cytotoxic activity was observed in a multitude of cells: T cells, B cells, null lymphocytes, and macrophages [93]. Macrophages are required for cytotoxic activity [e.g. 521], but macrophages alone manifest only cytostatic and no cytolytic potency [e.g. 241, 274, 275]. The cytotoxic activity of macrophages may be induced by immunized T cells (immunized T cells conferred a cytotoxic potency to unimmunized bone-marrow cells) [e.g. 240]. Peritoneal macrophages from immunized mice were cytotoxic by themselves (supposed to be influenced by T cells in vivo [324]). It could be shown [84, 323] that the development of cytotoxic activity results from the synergy of two types of T cells, differing only in their antigenic markers (see Sect. 1.8). Cytotoxic activity needs the presence of helper T cells in much the same way as does the differentiation of B cells into antibody producers.

1.5 Suppressor T Cells

Spleen cells stimulated with a mitogen (concanavalin A) added to the medium will reduce the number of plaque-forming cells from spleen cells incubated with sheep erythrocytes [160]. T cells added to the medium induce a decrease in thymus-independent antibodies by B cells [e.g. 205, 206]. Injection of antilymphocyte serum in mice together with a thymus-independent antigen results in an enhanced production of antibodies [e.g. 35]. Mice were rendered tolerant against pneumococcal lipopolysaccharide by a massive injection at birth. Spleen cells of these mice, when added to the medium, will reduce the antibody production of normal spleen cells incubated with the same antigen to zero [152]. In nude mice (which produce thymus-independent antibodies in large amounts), the

injections of thymocytes from their haired littermates together with thymus-independent antigen were followed by a comparatively reduced antibody production [259].

In these experiments the suppression of antibody production appears to demonstrate the activity of a peculiar type of "suppressor" cells. Mouse thymocytes incubated with X-irradiated spleen lymphocytes will develop into suppressor cells and inhibit the ^{3}H-thymidine uptake in a mixed lymphocyte culture. This characteristic is suppressed by pretreatment with anti-Thy 1 serum, suppressor activity is supported by T cells [167] but not by these alone. Immunosuppressor function could be demonstrated in macrophages [565].

The development of thymic cells in either suppressor or helper cells depends on the amount of antigen injected. In the spleen cells of mice, injection of 10^6 sheep erythrocytes induced the development of helper function, whereas injection of 10^9 erythrocytes induced suppressor function. Does this difference show that the same cells possess both potentialities, or does it demonstrate the selective development of one of those cell types?

T cells were incubated with macrophages sensitized to sheep erythrocytes. These cells developed a suppressive influence when added to normal spleen cells, and a helper influence when added to spleen cells deprived of T cells [572].

The normal immune response may thus be the algebraic sum of the helper and the suppressor functions [see e.g. 204, 268]. These functions are supported by different cells. They differ in their antigenic markers. Helper cells bear the Ly 1 marker, whereas suppressor cells are labeled Ly 2, Ly 3 [78, 160, 163]. Two cells are necessary for the development of cytotoxic activity.

It is still open to discussion whether suppressor and cytotoxic activity are of different types or two aspects of the same potential. Cytotoxic and suppressor cells bear the same antigenic marker, but suppressor cells are killed by cyclophosphamide [437] and a suppressor activity against cytotoxic cells could be demonstrated in an allograft test [105]. A distinction could be claimed between suppressor and cytotoxic cells [559].

1.6 Mechanism of the T Cell-B-Cell Interaction

Ever since the notion of T and B cells has been defined, speculation has started on the mechanism of their interaction. As a result hypotheses began appearing in great numbers. Just by the wording, these hypotheses seemed to have provided advanced knowledge, or even better, an illusion of knowledge, but in reality were based on absolutely no facts whatsoever. These hypotheses are obsolete.

Recent investigation has demonstrated that T cells influence the B cells by soluble substances delivered into the medium. Spleen lymphocytes cultivated with sheep erythrocytes develop few plaque-forming cells when previously treated with anti-Thy 1 serum. If T cells previously sensibilized to sheep erythrocytes are added, the development of plaque-forming cells was significantly increased. The same effect was obtained by adding the supernatant of T-cell cultures [455]. In the incubation medium IgG and IgM antibodies were found [455]. Spleen cells from neonatally thymectomized mice (which normally do not differentiate into plaque-forming cells when incubated with sheep erythrocytes) develop plaque-forming cells when incubated with thymic lymphocytes or with the supernatant of their culture [e.g. 146, 235, 526]. Spleen cells from irradiated mice do not develop plaque-forming cells in a culture with sheep erythrocytes. This development is restored by addition of thymic lymphocytes from sensitized donors or by the supernatant of their culture medium [517]. Supernatants of activated T cell cultures induced plaque-forming cell differentiation in spleen cells of nude mice [211]. Mice were grafted with nonisologous skin. The regional lymph nodes were included in millipore chambers and implanted into intact mice of the first graft-bearer strain. The recipients rejected similar skin grafts in the time necessary for a secondary rejection [386].

Thymocytes from mice immunized against sheep erythrocytes were incubated with B cells (spleen cells treated with anti-Thy 1 antiserum) in the two compartments of a diffusion chamber separated by a millipore membrane. The B cells developed numerous plaque-forming cells, even when they came from unimmunized mice or from nude mice [186] or when a dialyzing membrane separated the two compartments instead of a millipore membrane [186]. Supernatants of T-cell culture immunized against *Toxoplasma* induced the production of anti-*Toxoplasma* factor in nonimmunized macrophages [465].

The list of work on this topic is by no means exhaustive. Ten demonstrations were repeated over and over again with reasonably predictable results. Thus, T cells influence B cells by a compound they deliver into the medium. The bulk of T cells can be defined to some degree as a disseminated endocrine gland. Apparently this compound is not specific, however, its production is induced by an antigen. Supernatants from mixed lymphocyte cultures could induce the development of the immune response of B cells against sheep erythrocytes [11, 160, 197, 440, 532]. Divergent observations were reported, however. Mice were immunized against synthetic peptidic antigens. T cells from their spleen were incubated and the supernatant together with the bone marrow was injected into X-irradiated mice. In the spleen of the recipients plaque-forming cells were found to differentiate from the erythrocytes coated with the

same antigens, but not from the normal sheep erythrocytes [384]. This mediator secreted by T cells is probably not unique. Some of these factors are peptides with a mol. wt. ranging around 40 000 [186]; glycolipidic compounds with a similar action were also isolated [566, 569, 584]. The intimate mechanism of their action is unknown, but there is a suggestive parallel. Bacterial lipopolysaccharides mitogenic for B cells enhanced the immune response of B cells against sheep erythrocytes, a thymus-dependent reaction [276].

In fact, several mediators of different chemical nature were described. Ribonucleic acids from lymph nodes of rabbits bearing skin allografts injected into a normal rabbit induced in this animal the ability to reject similar skin allografts as if it had been immunized itself by a first graft [342]. Ribonucleic acids from spleen cells of immunized donors injected into thymectomized mice induced a normal immune response (plaque-forming cell test) in these animals [283]. Allograft rejection accelerated in rabbits injected with ribonucleic acid from lymph nodes of rabbits bearing an allograft [269, 342, 70]. (Still, ribonucleic acids are not supposed to be secreted into the medium.) The "suppressor" incubation medium of mouse spleen cells from donors rendered tolerant by a massive sheep erythrocyte injection contained a ganglioside which showed a suppressor influence in purified form [172].

Soluble mediators probably play a role in the interactions between macrophages and lymphocytes. Macrophages were incubated with an antigen. The supernatant of this culture induced a specific helper cell differentiation when added to the incubation medium of T cells [171].

Cytotoxic action was found to be mediated by soluble products of lymphocytes ("lymphotoxines" [527]). Development of cytotoxic activity in killer cells was found either to be dependent on a soluble product from helper cells [474] or enhanced by the supernatant of a mixed lymphocyte culture ("killing assisting factor" [393]). Supernatant of a lymphocyte culture from mice tolerant to human globulin was found to render mice injected with it tolerant [95]. This (unidentified) compound is secreted by T cells, since pretreatment of the lymphocytes with anti-Thy 1 serum sppressed the reaction. In conclusion, the intricate cell-to-cell interactions, ultimately resulting from the immune response, appear to be mediated by compounds delivered by the different cells into the medium. The intimate mechanisms of these reactions are unknown. Further information on the role of cAMP will be commented on in Sect. 6.1.3. The relation of the cell-to-cell activations mentioned above with the different hormones influencing the immune response awaits further research.

1.7 Distinction of T and B Cells

For many years it was believed that lymphocytes leave the thymus, which led to the conclusion that some of the lymphocytes circulating in the blood or fixed in lymphatic tissues may be of thymic origin. This was demonstrated first by two methods:

1. The consequences of thymectomy on the lymphocyte pool. Thymectomy was followed by lymphopenia and by atrophy of lymph nodes and spleen follicles [reviewed in 116]. In lymph nodes and spleen, the zones affected by this atrophy could be delimited (thymus-dependent zones [see e.g. 399, 400]). These zones include about 70% of the lymph nodes and 20% of the spleen. Lymphocytes in the thoracic duct are, for the most part, of thymic origin. After labeling the thymus in situ with ^{3}H-thymidine, about 0.02%–0.12% of the lymphocytes in the lymph nodes showed the label [533]. Thus, from one test to another the results were very different.
2. The description of thymic lymphocytes of intracellular enzymes differed from those of the lymph nodes' lymphocytes such as alkaline phosphatase [50]. By this test, 10% of the circulating lymphocytes were identified to be of thymic origin, but no such lymphocytes were found in the lymph nodes. This research was placed on solid ground when the antigenic markers specific for the thymic lymphocytes [e.g. 424, 426, 429, 456] were identified, detectable by specific purified antibodies [e.g. 422, 427]. They were different from those directed against the antigenic marker of B cells [424].

These observations made it possible to describe with validity other differences between T and B cells:

The surface of T cells is smooth, that of B cells villous [456]. Drugs such as phytohemagglutinin [e.g. 169] or concanavalin A induce an increased proliferative activity in lymphocytes of thymic origin only. It is possible to conclude from the phytohemagglutinin test that all circulating lymphocytes are of thymic origin [e.g. 145].

T cells and B cells have shown a different mobility in free-flow electrophoresis [e.g. 442, 545, 556]. In fact, this could be expected. In free-flow electrophoresis of normal mouse lymphocytes two populations could be separated, whereas those of thymectomized, irradiated mice, restored with bone-marrow cells, migrated in a unique bulk [441].

In irradiated mice, injected bone-marrow cells migrate in the thymus, the bone marrow, and the lymph nodes. Thymocytes will not migrate into the thymus [193]. More elaborate techniques permitted the identification of several subpopulations in T cells:

1. By the antigenic markers. Within the thymus the Thy 1 antigen is highly concentrated on the surface of cortical lymphocytes, whereas in the medulla and on the circulating lymphocytes the markers Ly 1, Ly 2, and Ly 3 are highly concentrated, and Thy 1 is low [e.g. 84, 481]. The former are killed by an injection of cortisol in milligram dose, whereas the latter survive [65, 297].
2. The cortisol-resistant cells correspond to the mature, immunocompetent T cells, Cortisol was injected in milligram amounts into a first mouse. Its thymus cells were transfused into an X-irradiated mouse together with sheep erythrocytes. Plaque-forming cells in the spleen of the irradiated receptor were about 20 times more numerous than after the transfer of the same number of thymocytes from a normal mouse [106]. Cortisol is known to kill about 95% of the thymocytes [see 147]. The cortisol-resistant cells in the medulla are derivatives of the cortisol-sensitive cortical thymocytes. When applied on the surface of the thymus, ^{3}H-thymidine labeled first the cortical cells, characterized by high density of Th 1 marker on the surface, then later the lymphocytes in the mid-cortex, and lastly those in the medulla, which are known to be cortisol resistant [533].

1.8 Subpopulations of T Cells

Antigenic differences seem to determine the function of the thymic cells. When leaving the thymus, different cells will sttle in the spleen and in the lymph nodes [456].

Research into antigenic markers may identify various subpopulations but of different significance:

1. Different stages in the maturation of T cells
2. Different types of mature T cells
3. Four successive stages can be distinguished.

1. Different stages in the maturation of T cells:

a) The primitive (prethymic) lymphocyte located in the bone marrow. Its surface is smooth (not villous [499]. (Both smooth and villous lymphocytes were found in the spleen of nude mice as well.) It bears a weak Thy 1 [499] antigenic marker which is not dependent on the thymus (it was found in the spleen of nude mice [328, 435]) and in the bone marrow of thymectomized rats [262]. It is assumed that these cells are predetermined to migrate into the thymus when leaving the bone marrow. This seems to result from the observation of *Nakao* and co-workers [387]. Bone-marrow lymphocytes were separated by sedimentation. Those bearing a weak Thy 1 antigenic marker were

thus separated from the so-called stem cells. Injected into irradiated mice these cells, and these only, repopulated the thymus. The stem cells did not. Yet fetal liver cells, i.e., B cells (refractory to anti-Thy 1 antiserum), injected into splenectomized irradiated mice, repopulated in the thymus, lost their antigenic B-cell markers and became sensitive to anti-Thy 1 serum [214].

b) The proper thymocyte, located within the thymus, bearing a high concentration of Thy 1 antigen [e.g. 85, 482].

c) The postthymic immature lymphocyte, still bearing a high density of Thy 1 antigen [482] and a low density of Ly 1, Ly 2, and Ly 3 antigens. They lose the TL antigenic marker when leaving the thymus [297]. All these cells are immunoincompetent. They acquire full immunocompetence at the periphery [482] or in contact with thymic epithelial cells [524].

d) The immunocompetent mature T cells. According to *Stutman* [482], mostly immature immunoincompetent lymphocytes leave the thymus. The few mature T cells within the thymus were said to remain (in grafted thymuses they were still of the donor type one year after the operation [482]). (For a review see [580, 581]).

2. Differences between mature T cells, related to their function:

a) Helper T cells bear the Ly 1 antigenic marker, cytotoxic and suppressor cells the Ly 2 and Ly 3 marker [84, 86].

b) Helper and cytotoxic cells can be separated by sedimentation on a velocity gradient [513]. Suppressor and cytotoxic cells sedimented together and, since they are both Ly^{1-} Ly^{2+}, it is open to discussion whether they are different from each other. The fractionation by free-flow electrophoresis seemed to separate rather the immature port thymic precursors (small, sensitive to cortisol) from the mature T cells (larger, resistant to cortisol [154]). (For review see [205]).

In short, the differentiation of the different lymphocytes involved in the immune response appear to be in some way predetermined and not haphazard (those that do happen to reach the thymus on their migration from the bone marrow and those that do not). Still, all these cells circulate in the same blood, and the hormonal influences they are subjected to may have different consequences from one cell to another.

1.9 Role of the Thymus in Organization and Generation of Immune Response *(H. Wekerle)*

The thymic cortex is a reticular sponge of epithelium-derived cells, which form sparse intercellular contacts via desmosomes. The wide gaps between

the reticular meshwork are densely filled with small to medium-sized lymphocytes, those, particularly close to the reticulum cells, which display frequent mitotic activity. A possibly specialized epithelial cell of the thymic cortex, which might have a central part in T-cell maturation by engulfing certain lymphoid components, will be described below. Principally, the thymic cortex appears to be the location where most of the lymphoid proliferation occurs. Nevertheless, it is not fully clear why this proliferation occurs and what becomes of the cellular progeny which will not leave the thymus.

The thymic medulla is composed of more solid epithelium, which ultrastructurally is distinct from the cortical reticuloepithelial cells. It is still unclear which maturation processes occur in this region. These processes appear, however, to be relatively late in the T-cell developmental pathway, since here most of the T lymphocytes, already immunocompetent, appear to be concentrated. Treatment of mice with high doses of corticoids results in a fast involution of the thymuses, principally of the cortex. Whereas in the cortex practically all lymphoid cells are lost within hours, the fewer medullary thymocytes are mostly preserved. Immunological function tests reveal that the cortisone-resistant thymocytes are immunocompetent, being responsive in lectin-induced mitogenesis, in transplantation, and graft-vs-host reactions.

Generally, a pathway of lymphocyte migration can be observed in postnatal thymuses. Bone-marrow-derived, still incompetent pre-T cells invade the organs across the capsules. Having undergone the developmental steps leading to clonal diversity and propagation, the immunocompetent T cells appear to selectively leave the thymus via the high endothelial postcapillary venules to peripheralize into the lymph nodes and the spleen.

1.9.1 Immunological Functions of T Lymphocytes

Removal of the thymus during embryonic or perinatal stages has grave effects on the morphology and the function of the immune system. Independently *Miller* and *Good* found that thymoprivic animals do not reject foreign tissue transplants. Moreover, removal of the thymus impairs the capacity of the immune system to mount humoral antibody responses of the IgG type and to establish immunological memory. Delayed-type hypersensitivity reactivity and cellular immune responses against viral or related diseases are equally impaired. The depriving effects of thymectomy may be strong enough to prevent orderly growth of developing infant animals. Generalized wasting disease may be the cause of chronic infections by various agents.

The impaired immune function corresponds to similarly grave changes in the lymphoid organ architecture. *DeSousa* et al. investigated the

histology of lymphoid organs from thymectomized mice. They found that the reduction of the organ sizes results mainly from the loss of lymphoid population of distinct fixed areas. The paracortical regions of the lymph nodes and the pericapillary cuffs of the spleeen were depleted. They are truly thymus-dependent areas, since restoration of the thymoprivic animals with transferred thymocytes also restores these areas. In contrast, other areas of the lymphoid organs, such as the primary follicles and the rims of germinal centers, are not affected by thymectomy, and are thus thymus-independent.

1.9.2 T Lymphocyte Differentiation Markers

Thymus-dependent T lymphocytes are morphologically identical with the thymus-independent, bone-marrow-derived B lymphocytes. Both subgroups can, however, be distinguished by several typical markers on their surface membranes. B lymphocytes bear classic immunoglobulin on their membranes. In contrast, T cells lack surface immunoglobulins. In addition, Ig B cells, in most cases bear on their membranes not only Ig, but also receptors for Fc parts of extraneous immunoglobulins, and for C components. Most, but not all, of the T lymphocytes lack these receptors.

Positive T cell markers have been identified following allogeneic immunization. The most prominent among them is the Thy-1 antigen, the original θ specificity. This antigen occurs in two allelic variants, Thy-1.1 characteristic for the AKR/J murine strain, and Thy-1.2 for most of the other strains. Thy-1 antigens are present during T-cell differentiation within the thymus as well as later on peripheral immunocompetent T cells. Moreover, it appears that low concentrations of Thy-1 are present on the membranes of pre-T cells, which have not been processed by the thymus. Except on T lineages, Thy-1 is found in brain tissue, and on certain myogenic cell stages. In contrast to Thy-1 antigen, which is present on most sublines and differentiation stages of T cells, other T-cell markers are typical for limited stages or isolated functional sublines. Thus, they are true differentiation markers. Prime examples for intrathymic developing cells is the TL antigen system, which is not found on normal peripheral T cells, but on some thymus-dependent leukemias. Differentiation markers of peripheral as well as thymic, functionally definable subsets include antigens of the Ly series. Characteristic combinations of Ly-1 and Ly-2.3 antigens, which are genetically unrelated, are found on various T-cell subsets, such as T helpers, T suppressors, T killer cells, and T cells involved in delayed-type hypersensitivity *(vide infra).* Finally, certain T-cell sublines carry on their surfaces components of the major histocompatibility gene complex (MHC) or of associated genes. These include the I-J subregion products of the H-2 (the murine MHC system), which are found

only on suppressor T cells; antigens of the Qa series, which have been recognized only recently, seem to appear only at various mature stages, indluding certain helper populations.

These alloantigenic markers concern only the murine immune system. Analogous antigens are being recognized, however, also in other mammalian species, including man. This holds particularly true for the MHC-associated antigens and Thy-1 analogs. It should be mentioned, however, that human T cells exhibit an unique marker, namely receptors for untreated sheep red blood cells (SRBC receptors), a property which has been highly instrumental in isolating peripheral human blood T and B lymphocytes.

1.9.3 Role of T Lymphocyte Sublines in the Organization of the Immune System

As already mentioned, B lymphocytes are the precursors of the effector cells in the humoral immune response, the plasma cells. The role of the T cells is by far more complex. They include not only precursors for thymus-dependent immune functions, such as killer cells in the graft-rejection response, or in the delayed-type hypersensitivity, but possibly more intriguing is that the T-cell sublines effect the regulation and dosage of immune responses, both on the cellular and on the humoral level. There are T-cell populations which help, or increase, the effector function of either B cells or effector T cell precursors. On the other hand, other T-cell subsets, the suppressor T cells, counteract immune activation either by suppressing the activity of the effector cells directly, or more indirectly, by decreasing the activity of the helper cells required. Obviously, helper and antagonistic suppressor cells are vital components of regulatory systems necessary for fine dosage and self-limitation of a given immune response, as will be discussed later.

Thus, the original concept of clonal selection theories, which imply that a given antigen selects a passively waiting, preexisting lymphocyte clone with complementary receptors, is not totally tenable. Rather, the immune system appears to be a most complicated cybernetic network with many cellular components necessary to elicit one given response and to cause its termination. Obviously, these cells have to communicate with each other. Cellular communications within the immune system can principally occur either via soluble mediators, or via direct cell contacts, supposedly involving complementary receptor/ligand interactions. Both types of interactions have been described in the case of T cells and their reaction partners. Perhaps the best characterized mediator factor is the one emitted by suppressor T cells. It has been shown by *Tada* and his colleagues that suppressor T cells can be activated by antigen in a particular

context to release factor(s) which can suppressively act upon effector lymphocytes. These factors are remarkable insofar as they possess regions complementary to the eliciting antigen. Thus they include genuine antigen receptors. Moreover, the structure of these antigen-binding regions in many respects resembles that of comparable antibodies. The suppressive factors do not express, however, constant protein regions of immunoglobulins. They rather express determinants of the MHC and, specifically, of the I-J subregion, which has already been mentioned as being typical of suppressor T cells. There are claims that helper cells release analogous factors also characterized by antigen-binding regions and determinants of (non I-J subregion) loci of the MHC. These helper factors, quite obviously, would not suppress immune activation but would rather help its initiation and continuation.

In addition to the antigen-specific, T-cell products involved in the regulation of the immune response, numerous antigen-unspecific factors have been identified, which can modulate effector activity. Among them, there are the T-cell replacing factor described by *Schimpl* and *Wecker,* which is thought to act in relatively late differentiation phases of B cell activation. Other factors modulate in vitro mixed lymphocyte reactions and the in vitro generation of T killer cells, and others appear to promote growth of single T lymphocytes to clones.

Direct intercellular interactions are not as accessible as humoral interactions in terms of experimental investigations. There are, however, some stages of the ongoing immune response which undoubtedly depend on intercellular contact and recognition. The first stage of any immune reaction is recognition of the immunogen by the responding, complementary lymphocyte. A plethora of experimental data indicate that in the case of T cells mere binding of antigen to the complementary receptor regions is necessary (and this is true for many, if not all, T-cell sublines), however, it is by no means sufficient for recognition leading to T-cell activation and differentiation. The studies of *Zinkernagel* [587, 588] and *Doherty,* of *Shearer,* and of *Rosenthal* and associates showed that T cells have to recognize "their" antigen in the context of determinants of the self MHC. Thus, a virus-specific effector T cell would only recognize "its" virus when it is presented on a somatic cell of the same organism, thus posessing the same MHC antigens as the T cell. The same is basically true for the recognition of soluble or particulate antigen. Any antigen must be presented by an autologous cell, and this is done exclusively by the macrophage or by its functional sublines. It is still unclear how the associative recognition of antigen plus self recognition is effected by the T cells. The following principles seem to be valid. T-cell recognition aimed at eliminating a membrane-expressed (foreign) antigen, such as virus-infected cells, is associated with corecognition of the classical transplantation antigens

(H-2K/D determinants in the mouse, HLA-A/B/C in humans). T-cell recognition, which leads to regulation and dosage of immune responses, in contrast, involves recognition of Ia determinants, which are equally coded for in the MHC, but which are predominantly expressed on lymphoid cells and macrophages in the body.

The requirement of Ia antigen identity is also marked in reaction stages subsequent to antigen recognition. They may be the most important examples of contact interactions in the immune system. Ia antigen compatibility is apparently required for various stages of interactions between helper T cells and B cells as well as between suppressor cells and their respective targets, i.e., helper T cells and B cells.

1.9.4 Generation of Antigen Diversity in the Thymus

One of the most intriguing problems in cellular and molecular immunology is how the structural diversity of the antigen-complementary lymphocyte surface receptors is generated. For decennia, the core question was whether receptor diversity is precoded firmly in the genetic information ("germ-line hypothesis") or whether it is rather the result of somatic mutation. Recent experimental evidence, stemming from the work of *Tonegawa* et al., appears to favor a compromise. It appears now that most of the structural information of receptor amino acid sequences is, indeed, contained within the transmittable genetic information. It is, however, probably arranged in relatively small sequence fragments, which are somatically recombined to give rise to the structural diversity underlying the clonal complementarity.

It is not known how and where exactly the cellular events, basic to molecular diversification, are happening. In the case of T cells, it is very probable that generation of diversity occurs within the thymus. This may be particularly evident in generating MHC determinant corecognition by developing T cells. *Jerne* has postulated that incompetent lymphoid precursors, which express receptors for self antigens, enter the thymus and start to interact there with their complementary "self" MHC determinants present in thymic stromal components. As a consequence, the primitive cells start to divide. In the course of proliferation, selective mutations were thought to alter the self-recognition, T-cell receptors to receptor structures complementary to some foreign structure. Indeed, *Zinkernagel* et al. reported of experiments which support part of this hypothesis. Their experiments suggest that the capacity of T cells to corecognize self MHC determinants along with the foreign antigen structures is acquired while in the thymus, probably following a selective interaction with the thymic stroma. *Wekerle* and his colleagues very recently have found a new thymic reticular cell type, which could be involved in

that particular stage. These cells, thymic nurse cells (TNCs), are of epithelial origin as indicated by their ultrastructure and have the capacity to be invaded by viable T lymphocytes [585, 586]. Invasion appears to be the consequence of (self) recognition. Subsequently, the incorporated cells start to divide within their nurse cell. When the engulfed lymphocytes are completely surrounded by internal epithelial membranes, which have several specializations indicative of secretory activity, it is possible that the particular microenvironment may lead to guided differentiation. This could result either in receptor diversification or in ramifications of the specialized, functional T-cell subsets. Thymical hormonal factors could act particularly stringently in this environment. (In addition to receptor diversification, specialization into various functionally specialized T-lymphocyte subsets is assumed to occur within the thymus. It should be noted that incompetent precursor cells enter the organ and that their immunocompetent progeny leave it finally as specialized subsets, as indicated by functional tests as well as by suface marker analyses.)

1.10 Substitutive Therapy for the Thymoprivic Condition

Restoration of normal reactions in thymectomized animals (and in nude mice) was attempted by several methods and demonstrated by several tests. These tests are not equally significant. The most convincing is the survival test in animals known to waste and die following thymectomy, such as mice, hamsters, and guinea pigs. Certainly, this is only a basic test, and its results must be rechecked with specific immunological tests. However, thymic preparations previously tested on the survival of thymectomized animals acquire thus an outstanding validity when compared to those not tested in this way. This distinction is always made below.

1.10.1 Thymic Grafts

Wasting was prevented in thymectomized mice by thymic grafts [134] and their immune functions were restored [134, 486]. These mice rejected skin allografts normally [314, 318, 361], and their reactivity towards sheep erythrocytes (plaque-forming cell test) was restored [7, 130, 314]. This experiment was repeated over and over again with similar results. Conversely, immunocompetence of spleen cells in thymectomized rats (0 previously) was restored following their perfusion through a thymus [80]. The accelerated development of benzopyrene-induced skin tumor in thymectomized mice was abolished by thymic grafts [358]. Thymic grafts were able to restore the immunocompetence of thymectomized animals when enclosed in diffusion chambers [7, 212, 448, 487, 549].

Incubation of mouse thymocytes with thymic epithelium resulted in an enhancement of their activity in a mixed lymphocyte culture [379]. This was tested by numerous methods [7, 320, 346].

Grafts of thymuses deprived of thymocytes (by previous X-irradiation or by previous incubation in vitro [e.g. 252, 521, 524] were similarly active. In nude mice, thymic grafts, enclosed in diffusion chambers, induced a decrease in the lymphocytes bearing a (weak) Thy-1 marker [435].

These experiments support the supposition of a hormonal influence of the thymus.

1.10.2 Transfusion of Thymic or T Cells

Wasting of thymectomized mice was prevented by transfer of thymocytes [e.g. 165, 553]. These animals recovered normal immune potency. Similar results were obtained with transfer of spleen cells [e.g. 363, 486]. In prepuberal thymectomized and X-irradiated mice this technique was extensively used to restore immune functions [e.g. 363, 127]. The increased sensitivity to polyoma virus in thymectomized mice was suppressed by transfer of spleen cells [313]. Every study has reported that the results of this therapy are transitory, although the influence of thymic epithelial grafts lasts as long as the graft itself. If the effect of thymocytic transfer results from the influence of thymic hormones, this could indicate that thymocytes carry the hormone but do not produce it themselves.

1.10.3 Cell-Free Thymic Preparations

The ideal way to attempt substitutive therapy in thymectomized animals was to use the supernatant of thymic epithelial cell cultures. However, to obtain this compound in amounts sufficient to prevent wasting in dozens of thymectomized mice is wishful thinking. This technique was limited to miniaturized tests under cell-culture conditions.

A single injection of thymic culture supernatant accelerated the development of lymphatic organs in newborn mice [351].

The (weakly) Thy-1 spleen cells of nude mice acquired an increased reactivity in a mixed lymphocyte culture, when previously incubated on a monolayer culture of thymic epithelium [445]. The supernatant of thymic epithelial cultures, added to the incubation medium of spleen cells from nude mice gave them the capacity to differentiate into plaque-forming cells [307]. Mice were immunized against rat fibroblasts, thymectomized, and X-irradiated. Spleen cells from these mice, when injected into the hind paw of rats, induced only a very weak swelling of the popliteal lymph nodes of the recipient. The swelling of the lymph nodes was significantly enhanced when the spleen cells were previously incubated

with the supernatant of a monolayer culture of thymic epithelium. After incubation with the supernatant of thymus culture, spleen cells from nude or thymectomized mice induced a graft-vs-host reaction and a sensitivity to concanavaline A. This was not the case with spleen cells from intact normal mice [324, 356]. Thus, the supernatant of a thymus epithelial culture proved to exert a specific influence on lymphocytes. It acted inasmuch as it substituted for the thymus.

1.10.4 Thymic Extracts

The simplest cell-free preparation is the supernatant of homogenized thymic tissue washed by an appropriate solvent (water, saline etc.) and separated by centrifugation. The first preparations were tested for their stimulatory influence on lymphatic cell proliferation in newborn animals [242, 351] and in rats made leucopenic by irradiation [83]. Injected into intact mice, the supernatant of a thymus homogenate induced an increase in labeled thymidine and glycocoll uptake of the lymphocytes in the thymus, the lymph nodes, and the spleen. Immunological tests with similar compounds are few. Supernatants of homogenized Sprague-Dawley rat thymus, injected into neonatally thymectomized Sprague-Dawleys bearing Wistar rat skin grafts, accelerated the rejection from 60 days (in untrated rats) to 12 days [81]. A crude aqueous extract from acetone-defatted calf thymus enhanced the antibody productions of irradiated rabbits [357]. A crude extract of rabbit thymus prolonged the survival and delayed the tumor development in thymectomized mice grafted with Lewis sarcoma [463].

Experimental testing of crude organ preparations is rarely satisfactory. The action of these preparations is always the expression of a sum of the actions of several compounds. This sum may be algebraic: protein fractions isolated from the thymus were shown to inhibit lymphocytic proliferation [289] and various aspects of the immune response [87, 381, 405]. A dialyzable, nonpeptidic (pronase-resistant) immunosuppressive fraction could be isolated from calf thymus by precipitations with mercury nitrate [560]. The description of several extraction and fractionation methods made the use of crude thymic extracts very soon obsolete.

1.10.4.1 Purified Extracts

Commonsense tells us that several truths must be emphasized from a biological point of view before discussing this topic.

1. An organ extract expected to contain a hormone is worth as much as the bioassay tests proposed for its activity. This truism is valid as long as the hormone is not obtained in a pure state and its composition is not known exactly.

2. One test is no test. Several tests may be valid and yet in contradiction to each other. They may have different meanings.
3. There is only one way to distinguish a hormone from a specific cellular constituent. By definition a hormone is secreted. This can be demonstrated by two experiments:

a) The hormone (or its characteristic activity) is present in normal animals in the corresponding gland and elsewhere.
b) Following extirpation of the gland, the hormone (or its activity) disappears entirely.

There are two sorts of biological tests:

a) Global tests. The typical example is the survival test, if available (as for the thymus in mice, hamsters, and guinea pigs). This, however, is only a first step, just demonstrating indubitably the existence of the hormone.
b) More elaborate tests which elucidate the mechanism of the hormone action considered. These tests attempt to define which functions are lost following, e.g., thymectomy, and which thymic extracts are able to restore these functions. These tests make much use of isolated organs or cells. It is obvious that these tests performed in vitro are more convincing if the cells used come from thymectomized animals.

1.10.4.2 Peptidic Extracts

Extracts Known to Ensure Survival of Thymectomized Animals: Thymosin (A.L. Goldstein and co-workers)

Thymosin was obtained from a saline thymic extract by heating it to 80°C (precipitate discarded) and by successive precipitation with acetone and ammonium sulfate. Further purification was attained by successive chromatography on Sephadex, carboxymethyl cellulose, and diethylaminoethyl cellulose [222, 224, 258, 217, 218]. A homogeneous peptide was thus obtained and its amino acid sequence determined [571]. Several consecutive reviews of this work were published [217, 218]. Of the thymextomized mice injected neonatally with thymosin, 70% survived with no obvious disorders, whereas only 34% of the untreated mice survived. The dose injected was thus just below the optimal dose (which perhaps would restore the mice 100%). In these mice the blood lymphocyte count (decreased following thymectomy) was restored to (about) normal. Thymosin seems to exert a stimulatory growth influence on lymphocytes. It hastens the regeneration of lymphatic tissue following X-irradiation [220] or cortisol injections (in enormous amounts [450]).

Thymosin was injected into neonatally thymectomized C57 B1 mice at 1 mg daily (a partially purified compound). Spleen cells from these mice were injected into newborn BALB mice in which they induced graft-vs-host

reaction, whereas spleen cells from untreated thymectomized mice did not. Similar doses of spleen extracts injected were found to be inactive [315]. Since the spleen contains ten times less hormone than the thymus [121, 329], this dose was probably insufficient. Injected into thymectomized mice thymosin enhanced the proliferation of their spleen cells in mixed lymphocyte culture [423].

Thymectomized mice injected neonatally with thymosin normally rejected skin allografts [219, 243]. They rejected normally, after a transitory growth, sarcomas induced by Moloney virus [558], whereas there was no rejection of those tumors in neonatally thymectomized untreated mice. Conversely, injections of an antithymosin antiserum induced a significant delay in allograft rejection [248]. In thymectomized mice injected with antithymocyte serum thymosin had no effect on tumor allograft rejection [423].

The influence of thymosin on humoral immune response in thymectomized mice was less significant [219, 248, 483]. (Nevertheless, thymosin injections could not restore the ability of neonatally thymectomized mice to reject allografts or their spleen cells to induce a graft-vs-host reaction in newborn mice [483].) In thymectomized, X-irradiated rats (900 rad) reconstituted with isologous bone-marrow thymosin injections had no influence on lymphatic tissue regeneration and antibody production [306]. We should recall that in irradiated guinea pigs the influence of thymic hormone tended toward zero [111].

In nude mice, thymosin injections induced an increase in the number of plaque-forming cells after an injection of sheep erythrocytes [63]. When incubated with thymosin, spleen cells of nude mice developed plaque-forming cells [11]. Incubation of bone-marrow lymphocytes with thymosin resulted in the appearance of antigenic markers specific for T cells on the spontaneous rosette-forming cells [30]. The enzyme terminal deoxynucleotidyl-transferase, characteristic for thymocytes, was induced in bown-marrow cells of thymectomized or nude mice [401].

In humans suffering from immune deficiency thymosin was largely used. The first case report (as far as we know) was that of a girl suffering from almost constant recurrence of infections constained for years with antibiotics. She was unable to develop positive cutaneous reactions after an infection *(Candida sepsis)* or vaccination (mumps) or to produce antibodies when challenged with various antigens. Spontaneous rosette-forming cells in her blood were significantly rare. All these abnormalities were suppressed by repeated thymosin injections [529]. Thymosin therapy for immunodeficient patients resulted in an improved general condition, an increased blood lymphocyte count, and in an increased number of rosette-forming cells [225, 529]. In cancer patients similar results were obtained on lymphocyte count and the number of rosette-forming cells.

"The clinical response must be considered anecdotical" [217, 447]. Incubation with thymosin induced the development of antigenic markers in human lymphocytes (from healthy subjects and one cancer patient [503]). Incubation with thymosin of circulating human lymphocytes resulted in an increase in the number of rosette-forming cells [528]. The same influence was found with fetal calf serum [82]. The authors consider this observation as (primary) evidence for the delivery of thymosin into the circulation. Still, serum of nude mice has shown the same influence (*T.D. Luckey,* unpublished communication).

Thymosin Activity Tested In Vitro. Thymosin was added to the incubation medium of lymphocytes. The cells, thus treated, were tested for their degree of differentiation and maturation. Incubation with thymosin induced the appearance of antigenic markers of thymocytes in mouse bone-marrow lymphocytes, in lymphocytes from nude mice or from 14-day-old fetuses [295]. The maturation of spleen cells from mouse fetuses and newborn mice was hastened (as demonstrated by their ability to induce graft-vs-host reaction and their behavior in mixed lymphocyte culture) by previous incubation with thymosin [108, 221]. Bone-marrow cells from newborn mice were incubated with thymosin and injected into thymectomized, X-irradiated mice together with normal bone-marrow cells. In the spleen of the recipients, normal numbers of plaque-forming cells were found, just as if they had received bone marrow and thymocytes [359]. In bone marrow incubated with thymosin, the number of cells killed by an (brain!) anti-Thy 1 antiserum increased [358, 503]. Lymphocytes from nude mice, from fetal mouse liver or from bone marrow differentiated into T cells as evidenced by specific antigenic markers, by their ability to ensure helper function and to form T-cell rosettes with sheep erythrocytes [451]. Thus, thymosine was proved to be active in thymectomized and in congenitally thymoprivic mice. This is demonstrated by the survival test and by a large range of immunological tests.

Extracts from a culture of thymic epithelial cell, prepared with the thymosin method, showed immunostimulant properties similar to those of thymosin [563]. But it must be said that the survival test was performed only once with a very crude preparation. The last steps of purification were only tested by the rosette test, and the reliability of these results may be questionable (*Luckey* and co-workers).

Thymic Humoral Factor (Trainin and co-worker)

Preparation [301, 508, 506]. A centrifuged, thymic homogenate in 0.1 M phosphate buffer at pH 7.4 was fractionated by successive dialyses (discarding by the first molecules of 120 000 and by the second molecules of 6000). The second dialysate contained the hormone in purified form. Precipitation by ammonium sulfate was not carried out.

Injections of the thymic humoral factor reduced the incidence of wasting in neonatally thymectomized mice to 20% (from 60% in untreated mice [510]). This treatment prevented thymoprivic atrophy of lymphatic tissue and the decrease in the number of circulating lymphocytes. Thymectomized mice thus treated rejected skin allografts normally [507, 505].

The authors made much use of the in vitro graft-vs-host reaction test [22]. Spleen cells from neonatally thymectomized mice were found unable to induce the growth of an allogenic spleen fragment when added to the medium. This capacity was restored by repeated injections of thymic humoral factor [505]. Spleen cells from thymectomized mice acquired the graft-vs-host ability when incubated with thymic humoral factor [509]; such treatment also increased the survival rate of thymocytes when cortisol was added to the medium. Thymocytes incubated with thymic humoral factor induced the in vitro graft-vs-host reaction. In other words, they behaved like the few mature T cells present in the thymus, which are also resistant against cortisol [511]. This indicates that thymic humoral factor is involved in some way in the maturation process of thymocytes.

This supposition was substantiated by further experiments. Prepuberal mice were thymectomized, X-irradiated, restored with bone marrow, and injected with sheep erythrocytes. Spleen cells from these mice did not differentiate into plaque-forming cells, even when the mice received thymic humoral factor injections. The normal reaction was restored when the mice received injections of thymocytes together with the hormone, or thymocytes preincubated with the hormone [439]. Mice were injected with anti-lymphocyte serum. Spleen cells from these mice did not induce the in vitro graft-vs-host reaction, even when thymocytes were added. The reaction was restored when thymocytes and thymic humoral factor were added together [327]. Lymphocytes from thymectomized mice reacted poorly in mixed lymphocyte cultures. Normal reaction was restored when thymic humoral factor was added. The addition of thymic humoral factor had no effect on lymphocytes from thymectomized, X-irradiated mice, unless thymocytes (inactive by themselves) were added together with the hormone. Thymic cells from a mouse, previously injected with 5 mg of cortisol, enhanced the mixed lymphocyte reaction by themselves, but in this system thymic humoral factor had no additional influence [516]. This indicated:

1. That the target of thymic humoral factor as the immature thymocytes, in which it induces the maturation to T cells.
2. That the cells able to respond to thymic humoral factor are in some way predisposed to do so. (Could this explain the inactivity of the thymic hormone in irradiated animals mentioned above?)

Mouse fetal liver lymphocytes, i.e., B cell precursors (only?), incubated with thymic humoral factor, induced the in vitro graft-vs-host reaction [213]. Yet, spleen cells from thymectomized mice preincubated with thymic humoral factor did not induce the in vitro graft-vs-host reaction [486], and thymic humoral factor did not induce transplantation immunity in nude mice [408; see also 579].

The mechanism for the action of thymic humoral factor is not known.

Homeostatic Thymic Hormone (Comsa and co-workers)

Preparation [see 113], from a crude acidic extract (H_2SO_4 M) fractionated successively by ammonium sulfate precipitation and isoelectric precipitation in 60% alcohol solution (pH 7 for impurities, pH 6.2 for the active fraction) a homogeneous compound was obtained by successive chromatography on Sephadex and hydroxyapatite (elution with potassium phosphate buffer at pH 6.75 in a molarity gradient).

Wasting in thymectomized guinea pigs was prevented by using partially purified thymic extract and a purified fraction of this same extract [see 113]. It was a complete success, since all thymectomized guinea pigs thus treated survived in good condition, whereas only 60%–70% of neonatally thymectomized mice were preserved from wasting by administering thymosin or thymic humoral factor injections. Wasting after thymectomy is less frequent in guinea pigs (50%–60%) than in mice (70%, according to *A. Goldstein* and co-workers). In rats thymectomized at 30 days, injections of homeostatic thymic hormone prevented the consequences of thymectomy on the endocrine glands and on lymphatic tissue [see 113].

Circumstantial evidence was obtained to support the supposition that this hormone is secreted. It was found in the thymus, in the lymph nodes, and in the spleen or normal prepuberal rats, in the ratio 10:3:1 [124].

Three days after thymectomy, it disappeared from the lymph nodes and the spleen [121]. Its secretion is influenced by the adenohypophysis, the adrenal cortex, the thyroid, and the gonads (see Sect. 6.2).

Immunological tests performed with this compound are scarce. In infantile thymectomized guinea pigs, it restored the antibody production against HO *Salmonella* antigen [115]. In thymectomized and hypophysectomized rats it restored the influence of hypophyseal growth hormone on antibody production [125] and on allograft rejection [123]. The acceleration of allograft rejection, induced by corticotropin, was suppressed by a simultaneous injection of thymic hormone ("The thymic hormone is immunostimulant and immunosuppressive. It all depends on the hypophyseal hormone it has to face") [123].

Thymosin or homeostatic thymic hormone delayed the death of mice injected with a supernatant of *Yersinia pestis* culture [141]. This may indicate an immunostimulant influence, among others.

With the allograft rejection test it could be seen that the thymic hormone is only needed for the primary reaction: Skin allografts were rejected by normal rats within 7.1 ± 1.0 days and by thymectomized rats in 9.8 ± 1.3 days. Second grafts implanted in those rats were rejected in 4.6 ± 0.5 and 4.4 ± 0.4 days, respectively.

The hormone of *Bernardi* and *Comsa* exerted a chemotactic influence on lymphocytes. However, it cannot be said on which one it was [125]. This has been presumed [349, 245, see review] with no direct evidence.

Considering the intricate interactions between the homeostatic thymic hormone and other hormones, this topic will be resumed below (see Sects. 2–6).

Thymic Polypeptidic Hormones Not Tested with the Survival Tests

Thymopoietin (G. Goldstein and co-workers)

Preparation. An extract with 0.1 M ammonium carbonate was fractionated by heating to 70°C, dialyzed, and successive chromatographies on Sephadex and hydroxyapatite and polyacrylamide electrophoresis were carried out [228]. By this method two different homogeneous fractions were obtained, both active in *Goldstein*'s test. Both peptides were obtained in a pure state and their amino acid sequence was determined [461].

The starting point of this work was the observation of an accelerated neuromuscular transmission in thymectomized animals, which can be prevented by thymic grafts [230]. Conversely, the neuromuscular chronaxy was found to be decreased in thymectomized rats [420]. From calf thymus, an extract could be prepared which, by repeated injections, induced a neuromuscular block in guinea pigs [226]. The neuromuscular disorder induced by this compound (named thymin, now called thymopoietin) is described in detail in [231]. The guinea pigs served as a basis for bioassay using thymopoietin.

Culture of bone-marrow lymphocytes or of the B-cell fraction from mouse spleen lymphocytes with thymopoietin added resulted in the appearance of TL and Thy 1 antigenic markers [42, 296]. Spleen lymphocytes from nude mice treated with thymopoietin acquired the antigenic markers TL and Thy 1 and developed a helper influence toward B cells, as shown by the plaque-forming test [450]. In the B-cell fraction of mouse spleen lymphocytes, the addition of thymopoietin to the medium induced the appearance of TL antigenic marker [43]. The cells containing terminal deoxynucleotidyl-transferase from mouse bone marrow are lysed by anti-Thy 1 antiserum after pretreatment with thymopoietin (in other words, they differentiated into prothymocytes [232]). In a one-way mixed mouse lymphocyte culture, thymopoietin induced an increase in the cyclic AMP content [488]. In thymocyte precursors thymopoietin,

added to the medium, induced the appearance of antigenic markers specific for T cells (TL, Ly 1, Ly 2, Ly 3, Ly 5).

But thymopoietin was unable to restore the normal reaction to PHA 0.2 concanavalin A of lymphocytes from thymectomized mice [574].

Serum Thymic Factor (Bach and co-workers)

The compound was isolated from blood serum by two dialyses (active fraction is dialyzed in the first step and retained in the second) the successive chromatographies on Sephadex and carboxymethyl cellulose, thin-layer chromatography, and high-voltage electrophoresis were carried out [32]. The composition of the serum thymic factor was determined [129, 417]. (For an extensive review see [27]).

Bioassay of this compound is performed by the azathioprine test. Azathioprine, added to the medium, killed few of the spontaneous rosette-forming cells from mouse bone marrow but killed significantly more rosette-forming cells from bone-marrow cells preincubated with thymosin [30]. This test was further developed [33].

According to the following descriptions, azathioprine was added to the medium:

At 1 μg/ml it totally suppresses rosette-forming cells from the thymus and up to 20% from the spleen.
At 50 μg/ml it suppresses 70% from the lymph nodes.
At 100 μg/ml it suppresses up to 20% only from the spleen of thymectomized mice.

Mice were thymectomized or injected with anti-Thy 1 antiserum. The rosette-forming cells did not decrease in number. However, the azathioprine-sensitive cells decreased and the azathioprine-resistant cells increased. Incubation of these cells with thymosin or normal mouse serum resulted in an increase in the number of azathioprine-sensitive cells. Serum from thymectomized or from nude mice did not have this effect [26].

Thus, the highly azathioprine-sensitive, rosette-forming cells were presumed to be of thymic origin. Spontaneous rosette-forming cells from bone marrow are insensitive to anti-Thy 1 antiserum. Preincubation with normal mouse serum resulted in the appearance of spontaneous rosette-forming cells sensitive to anti-Thy 1 antiserum in bone-marrow cells from normal, thymeectomized, or nude mice. Nude mouse serum did not have this influence. This potency of normal mouse serum decreased by half within 150 min following thymectomy, remained constant at this decreased level for 1 week, and began slowly decreasing again later on [28]. The serum thymic factor was found in human serum. Its level is high in children and decreases with age. It decreased to zero in a patient thymectomized for myasthenia gravis [33].

The serum thymic factor is prepared from pig serum (the serum thymic factor content decreased in the serum following thymectomy in pigs [309]. Serum thymic factor, added to the medium, increased the resistance of thymocytes against cortisol (circumstantial evidence of their maturation). It induced the appearance of specific T-cell antigenic markers and an increase in cyclic AMP content in these cells [21]. In normal mice, one single injection of serum thymic factor increased about 5–8 times the number of rosette-forming spleen cells [561].

The validity of induction of antigenic markers, characteristic of T cells, as a test for thymic hormone action cells was questioned. Thus differentiated, they did not necessarily show T-cell properties in other tests, such as helper function or graft-vs-host reaction. Only thymopoietin, thymosine, and thymic humoral factor were found to be able to induce in vitro a total T-cell maturation [479]. Furthermore, serum thymic factor injections in thymectomized mice did not restore the normal reaction of their lymphocytes to phytohemagglutinin and to concanavalin A [574].

A demonstration of thymic origin of the serum thymic factor was attempted [33]. Grafts of thymic epithelium (thymomas or thymic grafts borne 8 days previously by a first recipient, in which thymocytes are known to be dead), enclosed in millipore chambers, were implanted into neonatally thymectomized mice. In the spleen of these mice the azathioprine-sensitive, rosette-forming cells increased in number. This proves that thymic epithelium exerts its influence through a millipore membrane. Nevertheless, some doubts arose as to whether serum thymic factors are secreted by the thymus. A thymic extract was prepared from calf thymus using *Bach*'s method. This extract did not induce the development of T-cell rosettes when injected into nude mice. On the other hand, serum thymic factor activity was found in similar calf thymus extracts when this factor was added to the thymus homogenate before the extraction. Thus, the extraction did not destroy the serum thymic factor presumably contained in the thymus [284]. This observation rejects by no means the idea that the thymus is involved in the production of serum thymic factor. Its site of production remains, however, to be found.

Lymphocyte Stimulating Hormone (Luckey and co-workers)

A saline thymic extract was precipitated with 20% ammonium sulfate. The precipitate was dissolved in water and precipitated with methanol. The redissolved precipitate was fractionated by successive chromatography on diethylaminoethyl cellulose and Sephadex. It was proved homogeneous by polyacrylamide electrophoresis [329, 434].

The original bioassay test for monitoring the extraction and purification is based essentially on the acceleration of the development of the lympho nodes in newborn mice [351]. The influence of this compound

on the immune response was demonstrated. Injected into new-born mice, the fraction known to induce the accelerated lymph node maturation induced also the increase in the number of plaque-forming cells against sheep erythrocytes in the spleen of unimmunized newborn mice (background plaque-forming cells) and of newborn mice injected with sheep erythrocytes [91, 247, 434]. From the impurities discarded by electrophoresis, a fraction was identified which antagonized the lymphocyte-stimulating factor.

Lymphocyte-stimulating activity was found in calf spleen extracts prepared and fractionated by *Luckey*'s method (about six times less than that from calf thymus). This may be correlated with the observations of *Comsa* and co-workers [124, 121] who found a roughly similar relation in the rat thymus and spleen content of homoeostatic thymic hormone.

Thymus Polypeptide Fraction (Milcu and Potop)

The preparation is described in [334]. It is a crude extract, and although not tested with the survival test, it was proved active in thymectomized rats with an impressive number of metabolic tests [356]. Its influence on the immune response was demonstrated by the observation of an increased antibody production in hamsters injected with influenza virus and in X-irradiated rabbits injected with HO *Salmonella* antigen. As far as we know, the influence on immune response has not been tested in thymectomized animals.

This extract was shown to delay the development of malignant tumors induced by carcinogens (such as methylcholanthrene or dimethylaminoazobenzene) or grafts (Guerin's tumor) in rats. This was also observed in cultures from a cancer derived from buccal epitheliums (KB tumor) [356]. It was also alluded to above that there is a delayed influence of the thymus on cancer development and an acceleration of cancer development in thymectomized animals. This has generally been interpreted as a thymic influence on cancer immunity. The observations made on cancer cultures hardly fit into this hypothesis.

1.10.4.3 Lipidic Extracts

The first attempt to prevent the consequences of thymectomy in guinea pigs with a lipidic thymic extract was mede by *Bomskov* and co-workers [see 113]. It was a total failure.

Isakovic and co-workers [270] extracted calf thymus with chloroform and methanol. The extract, suspended in saline, was injected into neonatally thymectomized rats. This treatment prevented the delay in growth and the decrease in lymphocyte count following thymectomy. Rats, thus treated, were immunized against bovine serum albumin at 60 days, and the delayed hypersensitivity test was performed 18 days later. The reaction

decreased in untreated thymectomized rats and was normal in those injected with the extract.

The Thymosterines (Potop and Milcu)
Calf thymus was extracted with acetone and the residue was extracted with ether. Phospholipids were discarded by cold acetone from the dried etheric extract. The residue was fractionated by successive chromatographies [see 421 for details].

First fractionation separated two fractions: III B stimulating and II B inhibiting tumor development. By several chromatographies of II B a steroidic fraction was obtained (fraction S) strongly inhibiting tumor development. This fraction was named Thymosterin. Fraction S inhibited in vitro the development of KB tumor and human thyroid cancer cultures. In vivo, it delayed the growth of carcinogen-induced and grafted tumors, such as Jensen's, Walker's, and Ehrlich's sarcoma and Guérin's adenocarcinoma. Tumor grafts in thymosterin-injected rats showed signs of regression, such as necrosis and fibrosis. Walker sarcoma grafts decreased in size in thymosterin-injected rats, and these rats survived without exception when all untreated tumor-graft rats were dead.

The influence of this extract on immune response was tested on mice injected with sheep erythrocytes. Hemolysin titers and plaque-forming cell development were significantly increased in mice injected with the partially purified fraction II B. Thus, the influence of thymosterin on tumor development in vivo can be understood as expressing the stimulation of immune functions. The influence of thymosterin on tumor development in vitro cannot. The immunostimulant action and the retardant action on tumor cultures are certainly two different phenomena. Since the immunostimulant effect was demonstrated with the partially purified fraction B (and, as far as we know, not with the presumably pure thymosterin), it is open to discussion whehter these two actions express the activity of the same chemical entity.

2 The Adrenal Cortex

Adrenalectomized and normal rabbits were injected with typhoid vaccine. The adrenalectomized animals produced three times more antibodies [267]. Normal and adrenalectomized rats were injected with sheep erythrocytes. Lymphocytes from their lymph nodes and spleen were incubated and the hemolysin released into the medium was determined. It was lower in adrenalectomized rats [433]. Thus from the very start the observation appeared controversial.

Adrenalectomy was said either to result in an accelerated rejection of skin allografts in mice [e.g. 90, 319, 353] or to show no influence [48, 351]. Still, these observations raise some doubt. The adrenalectomized mice were "protected" from the consequences of adrenalectomy on electrolyte metabolism by repeated injections of desoxycorticosterone in large amounts (1–2.5 mg once a week, as microcrystalline suspensions). This is a very important source of error. Strictly speaking, the authors never saw a truly adrenoprivic mouse. Allograft rejection was slightly accelerated in adrenalectomized mice protected just by NaCl added to the drinking water [89, 90, 238].

In Sprague-Dawley rats grafted with DA rat skin (a H 1 incompatibility) adrenalectomy resulted in a slight delay in skin allograft rejection from 7.1 ± 1.3 days in normal rats to 12.2 ± 1.5 days in adrenalectomized animals. Additional thymectomy was followed by an additional delay (to 15.9 ± 1.6 days). In Sprague-Dawley rats grafted with DB rat skin, adrenalectomy had no influence on the graft rejection [48].

Most of the experiments on the influence of the adrenal cortex on the immune response were performed on normal animals injected with large doses of corticosteroids (see [576] for a recent review).

The earliest experiments, performed with adrenocortical extracts of an unknown composition, showed that repeated injections of these extracts, together with, before or immediately after the injection of an antigen into normal rabbits [96, 195, 18] enhanced antibody production. This was explained as a result of the well-known deleterious influence of adrenocortical hormones on lymphocytes [147]. The increased amounts of antibodies in the serum were supposed to be a result of their release from the lysed lymphocytes. This explanation is not exhaustive. The lysis of lymphocytes takes place within hours after corticoid injection, whereas the increase in the antibody level in the serum is gradual, occurring over several weeks [96]. In addition, the mature, differentiated lymphocytes, participating in the immune response, are not lysed by corticoids [e.g. 106, 107]. Cortisone or cortisol injections in milligram amounts, before or together with the antigen but not afterward [166], were shown to result in a decreased production of antibodies [e.g. 52, 53, 61, 143, 153, 179, 190, 200, 203, 250, 253, 335, 341, 352, 373].

In mice, injection of 2.5 mg cortisol resulted in a decrease of in vitro spontaneous killer activity of their spleen cells [257]. In mice, IgM and IgG hemolysin production is totally suppressed when cortisone is given 4 days previous to the antigen (sheep erythrocytes). Administered after the antigen, cortisone injection results in suppression of IgG antibodies only [168]. In previously immunized rabbits, a single cortisone injection suppressed the secondary response [191]. Sheep erythrocytes are lysed with a significant delay by macrophages of rabbits injected with cortisone

[280]. In frogs, cortisone injections were followed by an increased antibody production [60].

In all these experiments cortisone or cortisol was administred in large, arbitratily chosen, doses. A quantitative relation between the injected corticoid and the injected antigen dose could be roughly demonstrated: in rats, cortisone injections (4 mg) suppressed the anti-sheep-erythrocyte antibody production. This could be restored if the antigen dose was increased a 1000-fold [54]. In mice, the production of hemolytic antibodies against sheep erythrocytes was totally suppressed by an injection of 5 mg corticosterone, whereas 1.0 mg or 2.5 mg were followed by a partial suppresion only. Desoxycorticosterone was found to be inactive [389]. In rats, single injections of 5 mg desoxycorticosterone were followed by an enhanced antibody production [97].

Allograft rejection was delayed by cortisone injections in rabbits [58], guinea pigs [476], and rhesus monkeys [305]. Desoxycorticosterone was inactive [305]. Aldosterone injections also delayed the allograft rejection in rats but so did spironolactone [48]. Metopyrone inhibited the in vivo graft-vs-host reaction [1]. Thus, corticoids and corticoid antagonists showed similar effects. The development of grafted [5, 374] or virus-induced [345] tumors was accelerated by cortisone injections.

In all these experiments, steroids were administered in milligram amounts to intact animals. These observations were not entirely confirmed in doses closer to normal conditions. Adrenalectomized or adrenalectomized and thymectomized Sprague-Dawley rats were grafted with DA rat skin. They were implanted with pellets of aldosterone, corticosterone, desoxycorticosterone or cortisol, alone or in combination. They resorbed daily 1 μg of aldosterone or 130 μg of the other steroids. Those are mounts just sufficient to ensure survival. In these animals:

Adrenalectomy was followed by a slight delay in the allograft rejection (from 7.1 ± 1.3 to 12.2 ± 1.6 days).

Additional thymectomy was followed by an additional delay (15.8 ± 1.3 days).

Implants of aldosterone, corticosterone or desoxycorticosterone partially suppressed this delay (8.5–10.0 days) in both adrenalectomized and adreno-thymectomized animals.

Implants of two steroids reestablished at least the normal rejection period (6.7–7.0 days). A third implant had no additional influence.

Cortisol implants were by themselves inactive, but additional cortisol implants delayed the rejections in animals implanted with one or several of the other steroids [120].

There was no difference between the corticoid effect in adrenalectomized and adreno-thymectomized rats. Furthermore, in adreno-thym-

ectomized rats injected daily with the *Bernardi-Comsa* thymic hormone preparations, this additional treatment had no influence on the allograft rejection [117]. As soon as corticoids were administered, the influence of the thymus disappeared.

From this experiment we can identify under physiological conditions: (a) three immunostimulant corticosteroids (aldosterone, corticosterone, and desoxycorticosterone) and (b) a minor immunosuppressive steroid, cortisol (this is not exactly under physiological conditions, since rats do not produce cortisol).

This conclusion is oversimplified. Under adequate conditions all corticosteroids known thus far have shown an immunostimulant effect.

Rabbits were immunized against bovine serum albumin or diphtheria toxoid, and 40–100 days later their lymphocytes were incubated with sheep erythrocytes coated with the same antigens. These erythrocytes were lyzed if the medium contained at least 1 ng/ml and less than 0.1 μg/ml cortisol [10]. Without added cortisol, the hemolysis occurred only if the incubation medium contained 25% fetal calf serum.In higher concentrations cortisol added to the medium suppressed antibody production in vitro [109], [e.g. 380], cortisone (70 μg/ml was ineffective on the in vitro antibody production of immunized lymphocytes [179]. It should be noted that metopyrone injections inhibited the graft-vs-host reaction in rats [1]. In conclusion, the dose-response curves of corticoids on the immune response appear to be bell shaped.

Cortisol acts as an immunostimulant at 1 ng/ml of medium and as an immunosuppressive at 0.1 μg/ml [10].

Aldosterone acts as an immunostimulant at 1 μg/day [117], as a partially immunosuppressive at 1 mg/day, and as a totally immunosuppressive at 5 mg/day [389].

Desoxycorticosterone still acts as an immunostimulant at 5 mg/day [97].

The immunosuppressive dose range is unknown. Perhaps it exists since desoxycorticosterone was prophlogistic at milligram doses and antiphlogistic at 25 mg/day [432]. This is, of course, a rough estimate. The results may differ within enormous limits according to the test used. For instance, cortisol was found to be immunostimulant on incubated human B cells when added in such enormous concentrations as 10^5 [567].

Stress was generally followed by a depression of the immune response. This was obtained by overcrowding [473, 518], by training to avoid electroshock announced by a light-signal [473, 547], by adaptation to high altitues [77], by ether anesthesia [207] or by short exposure to a temperature of 37°C [416]. In fact, the observations are not easy to interpret. During the general adaptation syndrome, distinguishable stages should be considered: (a) the alarm stage, lasting several hours, and characterized

by a relative adrenocortical insufficiency; (b) the resistance stage, lasting for weeks, characterized by an enhanced corticoid production and by symptoms of hyperadrenocorticism and (c) the terminal exhaustion stage, characterized by adrenal deficiency. Thus, the effects of stress are certainly different in terms of duration. Examination of the adrenals is a necessary complement to those experiments. It was performed by *Gisler* [207] who found an approximately twofold increase in the plasma corticosterone level in mice following ether anesthesia. A detailed dose-response curve of corticosterone on immune response would be useful. The experiments quoted above simply indicate the possibility of plotting this curve. It is generally believed that corticosteroids inhibit the immune response inasmuch as they kill cells [e.g. 147, 150]. Which cells are killed? Adrenalectomy is followed by thymic hypertrophy, but the hormone content of this big thymus decreases [124, 137].

Administered in large amounts, cortisol induces a wave of pyknoses in the thymus and to a lesser extent in the lymph nodes [see 147]. Small lymphocytes were primarily killed by this method [182, 151]. Added to the medium, cortisol (0.01 μg/ml) or corticosterone (0.1 μg/ml) shortened the survival time of lymphocytes [291, 462, 519]. At 2.0 μg/ml cortisol killed the small lymphocytes from embryonic mouse thymus. At 50 μg/ml it killed all cells [430]. The surviving cells show an increased helper potency [106] and an increased potency to induce the graft-vs-host reaction [65, 107]. Following a single injection of 2 mg of cortisol the spontaneous Thy 1 positive, rosette-forming cells did not decrease in number, while total lymphocyte count decreased by 90% [33]. In conclusion, cortisol killed the immature cells only. This observation was confirmed over and over again.

Cortisol appeared to kill other cells, besides the small (immature) thymic lymphocytes. In mice injected with 15 mg of cortisol, the mononuclear cells disappeared from the blood [497]. Three hundred micrograms of cortisone/g body wt. were injected into mice. Spleen cells from these mice did not differentiate into cytotoxic cells when incubated with allogenic spleen cells, however, they developed helper cell function. It was concluded that another member of the cell-to-cell interaction was killed [316]. Speculatively this cell was identified as the macrophage. Spleen cells from mice, stressed by ether anesthesia, produced few plaque-forming cells with sheep erythrocytes. Addition of syngeneic T cells did not result in any increase in their number, whereas a significant increase in plaque-forming cells was observed following the addition of syngeneic B cells and macrophages. In conclusion, stress results in damaging B cells and macrophages, but not T cells [207]. It remains open to discussion as to how stress resulted in this effect. It should be noted that at weak concentrations (10^{-8}) cortisol induced an increased proliferative activity

in incubated lymphocytes [430, 539]. Dose response curves of these corticoid influences are much needed. From these observations, it is not possible to understand the immunostimulant influences of corticoids administered in small amounts. Concerning this peculiar aspect of this phenomenon, we only know that the rejection of a second skin allograft is not influenced by adrenalectomy in rats which had already rejected a similar first graft:

	Rejection time (days)	
	First Graft	Second Graft
Normal rats	7.1 ± 1.3	4.3 ± 0.5
Adrenalectomized	12.2 ± 1.5	4.4 ± 0.5
Adrenalectomized and thymectomized	15.9 ± 1.6	4.6 ± 0.5

Thus, the immunostimulant effect of the adrenal cortex appears to express an influence of corticosteroids on the differentiation of immunocompetent cells. As soon as this occurs, corticoids are no longer necessary. The influence of corticoids and of thymic hormones seems to be exerted on the same stage of the immune response.

3 The Thyroid

To our knowledge, the first observation concerning the role of the thyroid in immune response was made by *Houssay* and *Sordelli* [260]. Thyroidectomized rabbits and horses were injected with sheep erythrocytes, typhoid vaccine or tetanus or diphteria toxoid. They produced less antitoxins than intact ones, whereas the agglutinin and hemolysin titers of their serum were equal to those of intact animals.

Rats were thyroidectomized at birth. They were injected with sheep erythrocytes at the age of 2 months. Plaque-forming cells in their spleen decreased in comparison with intact rats. Daily thyroxine injection (10 micrograms/animal, the reason for this dose is not explained) restored the normal reaction [173].

Humans were injected with sheep erythrocytes or antigens of *Shigella flexneri, Salmonella typhi* or *Escherichia coli.* The antibody production was higher in Graves' disease patients and lower in hypothyroid patients than in healthy subject [501].

Guinea pigs were inoculated with tuberculosis bacilli and injected with a lethal dose of tuberculin. In intact animals this induced a rise in body temperature, but in thyroidectomized animals it did not. Serum from tuberculosis-injected guinea pigs was injected into normal animals together with tuberculin. The temperature of recipients rose if the serum donor were intact, but not if the donor were thyroidectomized [288].

One-month-old male Sprague-Dawley rats received DA skin grafts. The recipients were thyroidectomized, thyroidectomized and thymectomized, thyroidectomized and adrenalectomized or subjected to all three operations. Thyroidectomy by itself delayed graft rejection (7.1 ± 1.1 days – 9.7 ± 1.3 days). In thymectomized, adrenalectomized and thymo-adrenalectomized rats the rejection (delayed already by these operations) was not further delayed by thyroidectomy. Daily thyroxine injections (5 μg/100 g, the dosage known to be sufficient to prevent thiouracil goiter) restored the normal rejection in thyroidectomized rats, but had no influence on thymectomized, adrenalectomized or thymo-adrenalectomized [118]. Thus, at least in the peculiar case of graft immunity:

1. The immune response is depressed by thyroidectomy and restored to normal by thyroxine in thyroidectomized animals.

2. Neither thyroidectomy nor thyroxine influences the immune response in the absence of the thymus or the adrenals.

The influence of the thyroid on the immune response appears to be mediated by the thymus and the adrenal. (Both thymus and adrenal are atrophic following thyroidectomy, see Sect. 6.2.2–6.2.4.)

4 The Gonads

Female mice are better humoral immune responders than males [e.g. 46, 215, 477]. F (C 57b1 × BALB) mice were injected with erythrocytes from BPS mice. Their serum was fractionated in order to separate 7S and 19S antibodies. In males hemagglutinins were present in the 19S fraction only, whereas in females both fractions contained hemagglutinin [45].

Skin allograft rejection was faster in females than in males [90, 238, 472]. Castration was followed by an accelerated allograft rejection in males, less so in females [90, 238, 472]. Syngeneic grafts of ovaries in males and of testes in females had no significant influence on allograft rejection [90, 238, 472]. Testosterone injections (650 μg three times weekly) delayed the rejection in castrates [89]. In rats similar results were observed [119], the production of hemagglutinins against allogeneic mouse erythrocytes increased in castrates but hemagglutinin production against sheep erythrocytes decreased. Estradiol injections in male mice were followed by an increased antibody production (e.g. 2.5 μg daily [287], 10 μg [477]). Allograft rejection was delayed following estradiol injection (50 μg three times weekly) in X-irradiated mice reconstituted with syngeneic bone marrow [496]. The development of adjuvant arthritis (by injection of Freund's adjuvant) or autoimmune thyroiditis (by injection of thyreoglobulin) was delayed in female rats by daily injections

of 0.5 mg estradiol and in males by daily injections of 0.5 mg testosterone [279]. In F (C 57b1 × BALB) mice injected with BP8 erythrocytes, hemagglutinin production was increased in castrates and was depressed in castrates bearing estradiol implants (the daily resorption rate was not determined [45]). Skin allograft rejection was delayed by estradiol injection (500 μg daily) in rabbits bearing a corneal graft from the skin donor strain [583]. Thus, the enhancement of immune response by estradiol was not generally confirmend.

Thymectomized male rats were injected with estradiol (200 μg daily for 16 days). Their serum was added to the incubation medium of human lymphocytes. These cells produced less rosettes with sheep erythrocytes than those incubated with normal rat serum [578].

Castrated Sprague-Dawley rats (males and females) rejected DA skin allografts in 5–6 days (intact animals in 7.1 ± 1.0 days). Implants of estradiol in females (daily resorption rate 0.4 μg) and of testosterone in males (daily resorption rate 40 μg) restored the normal rejection. In thymectomized castrates of both sexes, the grafts were rejected as in thymectomized rats (9.8 ± 1.6 days) and sex hormone implants were of no influence. In thymectomized castrates daily injections of the *Bernardi-Comsa* thymic hormone preparation (100 μg) was followed by rejection within normal time limits, whereas the same injections were of no influence on those castrated alone. Thus, in this experiment the influence of the gonads on allograft rejection appeared to express the influence of the gonads on the thymus [119]. Receptors for estradiol were demonstrated on the surface [577] and in the cytosol [568] of thymocytes.

Female thymectomized CBA mice were mated with T_6T_6 males. They rejected T_6T_6 skin grafts in normal time limits. This is not due to sex hormones. Pseudopregnancy had no similar effect. The extirpation of the fetuses on the 10th day of pregnancy (placenta left in place) resulted in a significant delay in the graft rejection which can only be explained by the passage of hormones from the fetus to the mother [and not by passage of cells from the F (CBA × T_6T_6) fetus] [394]. In female nude mice mated with CBA males the pregnancy did not enhance the immune response against sheep erythrocytes [570].

Progesterone injections had no effect on skin allograft rejection in normal mice and rabbits [e.g. 351]. In spayed female rats bearing implants of progesterone (they resorbed 400 μg daily of the steroid), skin allografts were rejected in 9.3 ± 0.9 days, whereas spayed controls did so in 5.8 ± 1.0 days. In spayed females bearing similar progesterone implants associated with estradiol implants (they resorbed daily 0.4 μg of the latter), skin allografts were rejected within 7.6 ± 1.1 days. In other words, these rats reacted like normal females (rejection within 7.1 ± 0.8 days) and not like castrates. Estradiol + progesterone = 1:1000 is the well-known

ratio of these hormones which induces a pseudopregnancy in spayed females. Administration of estradiol and progesterone under these conditions was thus observed to suppress the consequences of ovariectomy on the immune response as well [119]. Spleen cells of pregnant mice showed a decreased activity in mixed lymphocyte culture but an increased plaque-forming cell activity. These modifications could be reproduced with injections of human chorionic gonadotropin but not of progesterone.

Osoba observed that [394] (see above):

1. Pregnant thymectomized mice reject skin grafts like normal animals.
2. Extirpation of the fetuses but not of the placentas results in a significant delay in rejection.
3. Pseudopregnancy has no similar consequences.

These observations seem to exclude the influence of the corpus luteum and to emphasize the influence of the placenta on the immune response. An immunostimulant influence seems to emanate from the fetus (perhaps from its thymus). These observations allude to the controversial problem of the mother-fetus tolerance. Mating between animals histoincompatible to each other results in a normal pregnancy and the offspring are reared normally. Immunosuppressive influences seem, therefore, to be active during pregnancy. Experimental analysis of this phenomenon is scarce. The attempts to reproduce the influence of pregnancy with hormone injections were not always performed under valid conditions, that is:

In castrated animals

Parallel experiments with injections of progesterone alone and with progesterone associated with estradiol in the well-known ratio of 1000:1, which induces the pseudopregnancy reaction in the gonaducts of ovarectomized animals.

According to *Osoba* an immunostimulant influence seems to emanate from the fetus itself and the placenta seems to exert an inhibitory influence. In fact, the role of the placenta is a matter for future research. The placenta is a plurivalent endocrine gland. The list of the hormones produced by the placenta is not yet complete, but an immunosuppressive influence may emanate from estriol, which the placenta produces in large amounts.

5 The Adenohypophysis

The description of the consequences of hypophysectomy on the immune response are divergent from one author to another. Hypophysectomized mice were injected with sheep erythrocytes but few plaque-forming cells

developed in their spleen. The normal reaction was restored by injections of growth hormone or corticotropin [209, 210]. Plaque-forming cells and serum agglutinin titers were significantly low in hypophysectomized rats injected with sheep erythrocytes [397]. Hypophysectomized Sprague-Dawley rats grafted with DA rat skin rejected those grafts with a significant delay [123]. Hypophysectomized Wistar-Furth rats produced fewer antibodies against sheep erythrocytes and rejected skin allografts later than normal rats [575]. Divergent observations were registered too. Hypophysectomized rats reacted normally to sheep erythrocyte injections [159, 277]. We cannot explain these divergencies.

The consequences of hypophysectomy on immune response were revealed only after a subsequent X-irradiation [502]. In these animals, both skin allograft rejection and hemagglutinin production after sheep erythrocyte injection were significantly depressed [277].

The observations on immune response in Snell-Bagg dwarf mice were explained. These mice are dwarves inasmuch as they suffer from a severe adenohypophyseal deficiency (see Sect. 6.2.2). Dwarf mice are severely immunodeficient. Following sheep erythrocyte injection they develop significantly few plaque-forming cells in the spleen [36, 37, 277]. Serum agglutinin titers were low after sheep erythrocyte or *Brucella* injections [157]. Dwarf mice did not reject allografts [175]. The secondary immune response of dwarf mice to sheep erythrocytes was normal [38]. Nevertheless, thymocytes or spleen cells from dwarf mice induced the in vivo graft-vs-host reaction if injected into F (SB × AKR) mice [158].

6 Influence of Hypophyseal Hormones on the Immune Response

6.1 Growth Hormone

Growth hormone injections in hypophysectomized mice were followed by restoration of the immune response [209, 210]. Growth hormone injection in dwarf mice was followed by activation of the immune response [e.g. 175, 397]. Thyreotropin and thyroxine had a similar effect [37]. The enhancement of the immune response (number of plaque-forming cells in the spleen after injection of sheep erythrocytes) was particularly significant when growth hormone and thyroxine were injected together [413]. The thymus is involved in this effect of growth hormone. In thymectomized dwarf mice, growth hormone injections had no effect on the immune response, but they induced normal growth [174]. This involvement of the thymus in the influence of the growth hormone on the immune response was observed in hypophysectomized rats. In hypophys-

ectomized and thymectomized rats the dose-response ratio of growth hormone to growth was low although some effect was observed [see 329 for review]. However, the growth hormone injections had no effect on the immune response of these rats. Hypophysectomized and thymectomized rats produced no antibodies against human serum albumin. The normal response was restored by injections of growth hormone and the *Bernardi-Comsa* thymic preparation, not by growth hormone or thymic hormone alone [125]. Skin allograft rejection was delayed to the same extent in hypophysectomized and in hypophysectomized thymectomized rats. In those only hypophysectomized, the normal reaction was restored by growth hormone injections; in those thymectomized and hypophysectomized, growth hormone and thymic hormone injections had the same effect (but not growth hormone or thymic hormone alone [123]). These observations may explain the influence of thyreotropin or thyroxine on the immune response of dwarf mice. Thyroxine is a permissive factor for the secretion of thymic hormone [124] and indeed thyroxine injections enhanced the immune response in dwarf mice, but not in neonatally thymectomized mice [16] of normal strains.

6.2 Corticotropin

The humoral immune response was depressed by corticotropin injections. Antibody production against ovalbumin [190], pneumococcal antigen [203, 62], horse serum [250], typhoid vaccine [373], and bovine serum albumin [341, 389] was severely inhibited following corticotropin injection in large doses. There were remarkably few plaque-forming cells in the spleen of intact mice when these were injected with corticotropin and sheep erythrocytes.

On the allograft immune response corticotropin influence was less obvious. A slight delay was observed in mice [351] and no influence was observed on rhesus monkeys [305], rabbits [9], guinea pigs, pigs or humans [170]. These experiments were carried out on intact animals. The corticotropin dosage is difficult to understand, since corticotropin doses were expressed in units of weight from the start, regardless of the successive purifications.

In hypophysectomized and thymectomized rats, daily injections of 300 milliunits of corticotropin were followed by a remarkably accelerated skin allograft rejection (17.8 ± 1.2 days – 6.7 ± 0.8 days). Additional injections of the *Bernardi-Comsa* thymic hormone preparation resulted in a nearly complete suppression of the corticotropin effect (rejection in 15.2 ± 1.2 days) [123]. From previous experiments it was known that thymic hormone is a synergist to growth hormone and that it antagonizes

corticotropin. The immunological tests mentioned above gave results consistent with this notion.

There is little to be said about the influence of other adenohypophyseal hormones on the immune response. The restoration of a normal response to sheep erythrocytes with thyreotropin injections [175] has been mentioned already. In hypophysectomized and thymectomized rats thyreotropin injections had no influence on skin allograft rejection (*J. Comsa* and *H. Leonhardt,* unpublished observations). Thus, the influence of thyreotropin may be mediated by the thymus via the thyroid, see Sect. 3.

Pancreatectomy was followed in rats by a delayed rejection of skin allografts and no change in the immune response to sheep erythrocytes, *Brucella* antigen or bovine serum albumin. As far as we know, this is the first attempt to investigate the influence of the pancreas on immune functions.

7 Mechanisms of Hormonal Influence on the Immune Response

This problem can be considered from two aspects:

1. Events on the cellular of subcellular level which may enable us to understand the hormonal influences.
2. All the hormones mentioned above are present in normal animals. Intricate interactions between them were demonstrated by several tests. To what extent could these interactions influence the immune response? Can we imagine a hormonal coordinating mechanism for immune functions?

7.1 Cellular and Subcellular Aspects of Hormonal Action

The following summary is by far inexhaustive. This would unreasonably exceed the limits of this review.

7.1.1 The Corticosteroids

Corticoids enter the cells, are fixed to a transcortin analog in the cytosol [e.g. 322, 383, 497; see 187], traverse the cell thus bound, and are finally fixed to specific receptors in the nucleus [e.g. 449, 466, 546]. This is completed within minutes [466]. The nuclear receptor was thought to be a histone [467] or an acidic protein [e.g. 2]. The binding protein is perhaps essential for corticoid action within the nucleus. Purified "chromatin" is able to induce RNA synthesis in vitro. This synthesis is depressed by protein-bound cortisol, but not by free steroids [446]. The presence

of specific corticoid receptors on lymphocytes is essential for the cytotoxic corticoid effect. Incubated with cortisol, the corticoid receptors of lymphocytes decrease with time in the surviving cells [49]. (The cells bearing a dense receptor net are killed.)

Corticoids increase the stability of cellular and subcellular membranes. Hemolysis by antibodies or by physiochemical agents is inhibited by corticosteroids [e.g. 4, 272]. Hamster kidney cells infected with rubella virus are not lysed by antirubella serum if cortisol is added to the medium [498]. Intracellular membranes were also found to be stabilized by adding cortisol [162]. Cortisol inhibited the release of lysosomal enzymes into the cytosol [532, 534]. Corticoids interfere with glucose metabolism. Glucose transport and phosphorylation [69, 383], glucose uptake [281, 375], and ATP synthesis [391] are inhibited by adding cortisol (at 10^{-7} – 10^{-6} M concentration). Metabolism by the pentose cycle was found to be enhanced [69], this action is blocked, however, by puromycin [376, 339]. It was concluded that cortisol induces the synthesis of a proteidic inhibitor of glucose metabolism.

Corticoids inhibit DNA and RNA synthesis [see 495 for review]. Thymidine uptake [339, 340, 376], DNA polymerase [290], and thymidine-kinase activity [241] are depressed, also uridine uptake [199, 551], adenine uptake [77], RNA polymerase activity [2, 68, 194, 340], and DNAse activitiy is enhanced [443].

Corticoids inhibit protein synthesis in most tissues (except in the liver). Amino acid uptake [e.g. 64, 181, 227, 375, 537] is depressed in presence of cortisol and so is the activity of various transaminases [e.g. 64]. The inhibition of lymphokine synthesis [523] is particularly relevant to our topic. Amino acid release by incubated lymphocytes is enhanced in presence of cortisol [489]. Thus, cortisol appears to inhibit the anabolism and to promote the catabolism of nucleic acids and proteins. These effects were obtained with cortisol at high concentrations (10^{-7} – 10^{-6} M). They are supposed to be direct with no second messenger needed [495]. Yet cortisol injections depressed the adenylate-cyclase activity in X-irradiated rats [285].

It is interesting to note that the stimulating effect of cortisol at low concentrations on lymphocyte proliferation in vitro (10^{-8} M [539]) was supposed to be mediated by cyclic AMP. It should also be noted that the stabilizing effect on lysosome membranes in vitro was observed at low, but still immunostimulant concentrations [144]. These two observations are the only ones possibly related to the immunostimulant influence of corticoids within the physiological range.

7.1.2 Peptidic Hormones

It is generally accepted that peptidic hormones do not enter the cell. Thus a "second messenger", transporting the hormonal message from the cell membrane (to the nucleus?), becomes relevant.

7.1.3 Cyclic Adenosine Monophosphate (cAMP)

Added to the medium, cyclic AMP stimulates lymphocyte proliferation [333]. Injection of sheep erythrocytes into immunized mice resulted in an increase in the cyclic AMP level in their spleen lymphocytes within 2–10 min [418]. When (butyryl)- cyclic AMP was added to the medium [e.g. 70, 266, 530], plaque-forming cells increased in number in spleen cells from mice immunized against sheep erythrocytes. Adenylcyclase stimulating catecholamines (e.g., epinephrine) enhanced the immune response [70] and so did those drugs which inhibit phosphodiesterase [72]. This is, however, only valid up to a certain point. When added in excessive amounts, cyclic AMP inhibited plaque-forming cell differentiation [73]. The cytolytic activity of immunized C57 b1 mouse spleen cells against DBA mastocytoma was inhibited by cyclid AMP [254]. Plaque-forming cell formation was inhibited in mouse spleen cells by cyclic AMP added to the medium. (Was it added in excess in these two experiments?) Rosette-forming cells increased in number in human lymphocytes by administration of drugs which increase the cyclic MP content of lymphocytes and then decreased when dibutyryl-cyclic AMP was added to the medium [99] (perhaps in excess, see above).

7.1.4 Synthetic Polyribonucleotides

The enhancing effect of poly (A:U) on the immune response [56, 72, 74, 73, 266, 343] at low concentrations (high concentrations show an opposite effect [72]) was interpreted as an enhancing influence on cyclic AMP synthesis [70]. Poly (A:U) injected into neonatally thymectomized mice induces a normal rosette-forming cell differentiation and a normal allograft rejection [126]. Still poly (A:U) added to the medium enhanced cytotoxic activity of spleen cells cultivated with allogenic cells in normal mice but not in the nude ones (the thymus was necessary [56]). Prostaglandins were also said to enhance the immune response [265] and the prostaglandin synthesis inhibitors did as well [531]. In this new field the observations are still confusing.

Poly (A:U), prostaglandin E_2 or cyclic AMP, added to the medium, induced the potency of graft-vs-host reaction in spleen cells from thymectomized mice; incubation of mouse lymphocytes with thymic humoral factor resulted in an increased cyclic AMP content [299]. Incubation of

spleen cells from nude mice with thymopoietin, cyclic AMP or poly (A:U) induced the appearance of antigenic markers and helper function [451]. Neither thymosin [20] nor serum thymic factor [20] induced an increased cyclic AMP content in thymocytes when added to the medium. Also, incubation of thymocytes with serum from normal or thymectomized pigs induced an increased cyclic AMP content in these cells, whereas the serum thymic factor produced by synthesis did not [34].

Perhaps, this partly confusing picture could be somewhat clarified if we knew the consequences of thymectomy on the cyclic AMP level of lymphocytes. Remarkable as it may sound, we do not.

7.2 Hormonal Interactions

The hormones mentioned thus far are simultaneously present in the organism. The hormonal influence on immune response (i.e., its action directly on the immune system or mediated by another endocrine) is expressed by an algebraic sum. This assertion is self-evident. Thus far, the documentation concerning this topic is poor. Elements of the hormonal interactions in general must be noted. (Observations mentioned without references are described in extenso [114]). Hormonal interactions must be seen from two different aspects:

1. The reciprocal influence between gland A and gland B
2. The interaction between the hormones of gland A and gland B in their circulating form

These two aspects probably are linked to each other in some way. However, we can only assume this up to now.

7.2.1 Consequences of Thymectomy on the Endocrines

Following thymectomy, a transitory stimulation of the thyroid, and the gonads, and the adrenal cortex was observed in guinea pigs and rats [114]. These endocrines returned to normal in rats and in those guinea pigs which recovered from thymectomy. In those which waste (examined sub finem) degenerative changes were observed. This was the case in thymectomized mice. As far as we know, the endocrines were examined in wasted mice only [155]. This is insufficient. Degenerative changes in the endocrines occur in wasted animals, whatever the reason for wasting may be (e.g., in the terminal stage of deficiency diseases). The consequences of thymectomy on the adrenal cortex seem ambiguous at first sight. Evidence of stimulation was noted [see 114, 140]. However, the corticosteroid content of the systemic blood was found to be decreased [137, 177] whereas aldosterone content was increased [177]. Still, the corticosterone

level increased in the efferent blood of the adrenal [79, 470]. This discrepancy is believed to result from an accelerated denaturation of corticosterone in thymectomized animals, perhaps mediated by the stimulated thyroid. Indeed, thyroxine injections were followed by an accelerated reduction of ring A in steroid molecules [550]. A methodical investigation of the steroid turnover rate in thymectomized animals would be of interest.

In the adenohypophysis, thymectomy was followed by signs of stimulation of, more or less, all cells. The sequence of the events is different from one species to another. In rats [114, 137] and in mice [55], the stimulation of α cells occurs early. In guinea pigs [114], δ cells precede the α cells, which show signs of stimulation only in recovering animals. In wasted guinea pigs the adenohypophysis is completely dedifferentiated (consisting only of small chromophobes). In mice, the stimulation of α cells appears before the onset of wasting [415]. In thymectomized axenic mice, which do not waste following thymectomy, similar changes in the adenohypophyseal cells occurred [415, 475].

Further research concentrated on the α cells. Electron microscopy indicated an enhanced endoplasmic reticulum and an almost total disappearance of secretion grains [562, 475] in thymectomized mice. This evidence of an increased activity is consistent with the increase in the growth hormone level in the serum [137]. We noted that following thymectomy the efficiency of the growth hormone is decreased (by the loss of its synergist). This results in an increased growth hormone secretion by a negative feedback effect.

All these changes were prevented by thymic grafts in mice [54] or by daily injections of the *Bernardi-Comsa* thymic hormone preparation [see 113]. The increase in the serum growth hormone level following thymectomy was prevented by injections of the same compound [562].

The nude mouse is supposed to suffer from a severe thymic deficiency. But thymosin could be prepared from the rudimentary thymus of nude mice [573]. The histological picture of the endocrines shows to a certain extent that of thymectomized mice at the terminal wasting stage. The thyroid shows degenerative changes. In the adrenal at the age of 50 days, the reticular zone of the adrenal cortex is peculiarly large. At 90 days the cortex is shrunken. The growth hormone cells of the adenohypophysis show the same picture as in thymectomized mice. Blood thyroxine levels are low. Corticosterone levels temporarily increased (at 14 days) and later decreased. Sex steroids decreased. In vitro, adrenals of nude mice produce less corticosterone, more desoxycorticosterone, and as much aldosterone as those of normal mice. Addition of corticotropin to the medium results in normalization of the steroids produced [408, 409]. Thymic grafts in nude mice suppressed all degenerative changes in the

endocrines. The consequences of thymic extract injection on the endocrines of nude mice have not been investigated as far as we know.

7.2.2 Thymus-Thyroid

Following thyroidectomy, the thymus undergoes atrophy of the senile type in infant guinea pigs [see 114]. The hormone content of the thymus, the lymph nodes, and the spleen decreased in thyroidectomized rats. This could be prevented by daily injections of 5 μg of thyroxine, the minimal dose for preventing thiouracil goiter [124]. In guinea pigs, the minimum dose necessary was 2 μg daily. Increased thyroxine amounts induced thymic hypertrophy (up to 16 μg). Larger amounts, however, resulted in a relative atrophy with histological signs of intense stimulation, which points to the picture of human thymus in Graves' disease. The lymphocytosis induced by thyroxine injections is mediated by the thymus. In doses inducing lymphocytosis in normal guinea pigs, thyroxine injections are followed by lymphopenia in thymectomized animals [114].

The thyroid seems to regulate in some way the thymus functions. Thymic hypertrophy induced by castration is inhibited by simultaneous thyroidectomy [344] as well as an increase in the hormone content of the thymus in castrates [124].

The influence of the thyroid on the thymus is probably direct. Thymic hormones and thyroxine are mutual antagonists (demonstrated with the *Bernardi-Comsa* compound [see 114] and with thymosin [see 127]. The influence of the thymus on the thyroid (the thyroid stimulation following thymectomy) is more intricate. The thymus antagonizes thyreotropin and it decreases the thyreotropin secretion [see 114].

7.2.3 Thymus-Adrenal

The influence of the adrenal on the thymocytes was described above. In addition, an adrenal influence on the thymic glandular epithelium seems probable. Adrenalectomy is followed by thymic hypertrophy [see 114 for review], but the hormone content of this enlarged thymus is low [124, 137] and increased above the normal level in adrenalectomized rats with corticosterone or desoxycorticosterone [124].

The influence of the thymus on the adrenal cortex is intricate. The stimulated condition of the adrenal cortex following thymectomy (prevented by thymic hormone injections) was mentioned above. The adrenal of thymectomized rats was incubated in vitro. Addition of thymosin to the medium was followed by an increased oxygen consumption. The oxygen consumption of adrenals from thymectomized mice previously injected with thymosin or with homeostatic thymic hormone was low

(equal to that of normal mice if homeostatic thymic hormone was injected, but still 30% higher after thymosin injections [140]). Obviously, two mechanisms interplay: (a) the antagonistic action of the thymus toward corticotropin (see above) and (b) a possible direct action of the thymus on the adrenal cortex.

The thyroid seems to play a permitting role on the adrenal's influence on the thymus. The "big empty thymus" of adrenalectomized rats is not seen in tyhroidectomized and adrenalectomized rats. In these rats, the thymus shrinks just as in those thyroidectomized alone.

7.2.4 Thymus-Adenohypophysis

Following hypophysectomy the thymus shrinks, and the picture is that of senile involution. The lobules shrink, the cortex is narrow but particularly well delimited from the medulla, there are no lymphocytes in the medulla, and the lymph nodes shrink [452]. Thymidine uptake is decreased in the thymus and in the spleen [293]. The validity of this test could be questioned because hypophysectomy had no effect on thymidine uptake in the testes [293].

Antigrowth hormone antiserum induced a similar thymic atrophy [411]. The hormone content of the thymus decreased as well as the stores of thymic hormone [124, 128, 137] in the lymph nodes and the spleen. Daily injections of growth hormone, corticotropin or thyreotropin prevented these changes [124]. The shrunken lymph nodes of hypophysectomized rats are restored to normal by growth hormone injections.

These observations may demonstrate:

1. An *influence* of *growth hormone* on thymic lymphocytes, this is an acquired characteristic. There are specific receptors for growth hormone on the surface of lymphocytes [e.g. 397]. Im lymphocyte cultures growth hormone addition is followed by an increased mitosis rate [333], an increased thymidine and uridine uptake [397, 490]. This action is supposed to be mediated by cyclic AMP since addition of coffeine to the medium decreased the minimal efficient growth hormone concentration by two-thirds [333]. Growth hormone seemed to favor the maturation of thymocytes. Thymectomized mice, injected with sheep erythrocytes, develop few plaque-forming cells. Injection of growth hormone and thymocytes was followed by an increase in the plaque-forming cell number, whereas neither growth hormone alone, nor thymocytes alone had any effect [16]. Injection of newborn Long-Evans rat spleen cells in newborn Ch River rats (of Sprague-Dawley origin) induced runting syndrome only when injected together with growth hormone. The influence of growth hormone thus appears to be exerted on Stutman's postthymic immature cells.

2. An *influence* of *growth hormone* on the secretory thymic reticuloepithelium. This ir purely hypothetical.

It has also been documented that growth hormone is a synergistic to thymic hormone (see above).

A clear-cut difference appears between the stimulatory influence of growth hormone on the thymus and the synergism between growth hormone on the thymus and the synergism between growth hormone and thymic hormone.

It has been mentioned already that corticotropin injections restored the hormone content of the thymus, the lymph noces, and the spleen in hypophysectomized rats. The mechanism of this phenomenon is open to discussion. It can be understood as being mediated by the adrenal cortex (see above) but a direct influence of corticotropin on the isolated rat thymus has also been observed [137]. The restoration of the hormone content in the thymus of hypophysectomized rats by thyreotropin can certainly be understood as being mediated by the thyroid.

Injections of an antigrowth hormone antiserum in 27-day-old mice resulted in a wasting syndrome similar to that induced by neonatal thymectomy. The thymus of these animals shrunk and their immune response became deficient. In their hypophyses the growth-hormone cells were modified as in thymectomized mice. Their thymuses shrunk [475]. Injections of an antithymus antiserum had no similar effect, perhaps because it was principally an antithymocyte serum. For this test, antithymic antisera should be prepared with cells from the secretory thymic reticuloepithelial cells.

The dwarf mouse suffers from a severe adenohypophyseal deficiency [e.g. 40, 321, 471]. This deficiency is conditioned by the adenohypophysis itself and not by the hypothalamus. The graft of a syngeneic normal hypophysis in the sella turcica of dwarf mice was followed by normal growth [88]. Substitutive therapy with adenohypophyseal and other hormones to some extent produced confusing results. Dwarf mice resumed growth when injected with growth hormone, thyreotropin [47] or thyroxine [236, 390, 472]. Bioassay and polyacrylamide electrophoresis of a crude hypophyseal extract of dwarf mice demonstrated a severe growth hromone deficiency [321]. Thus, dwarf mice are dwarves inasmuch as they are deficient in growth hormone (in fact, the other hypophyseal hormones have not been researched as far as we know).

The thymus, the lymph nodes, and the splenic white pulp are atrophic in dwarf mice. At 20 days the thymus shows senile atrophy, and at 60 days the terminal stage of deficiency diseases [36]. Yet this thymus was proven functional (see Sect. 5). Thyroid and adrenals are atrophic.

The restoration of dwarf mice by thyreotropin or thyroxine injections raises some problems. The restoration of the immune response by thyroxine

may result from the influence of thyroxine on the thymus. We know, indeed, that thyreotropin restored the thymus function in hypophysectomized rats. Unfortunately, we do not know which changes in the thymus of dwarf mice are induced by thyroxine. In any case, this explanation is unsatisfactory since thymic hormone was shown to be of no influence on the immune response in hypophysectomized animals, unless growth hormone had also been injected (see above). Thus, we could suspect that thyroxine injections in dwarf mice induced an increased growth hormone secretion also. It is, indeed, open to discussion whether the adenohypophysis of dwarf mice is asleep or dead. In the first case, thyroxine may induce a chain of events in the adenohypophysis of thyroidectomized rats, the growth hormone content tending toward zero. It is restored with thyroxine injections [321]. There is circumstantial evidence that the well-known hypertrophy of the adrenal cortex following thyroxine injections is mediated by the adenohypophysis [e.g. 164]. Corticotropin injections resulted in an increased growth hormone secretion [e.g. 480, 555]. In dwarf mice growth hormone injections showed a gonadotropic effect. Puberty was induced and fertilization, pregnancy, and breeding were possible [39]. An intricate interaction within the cells of the adenohypophysis could be possible in the particular case of the dwarf mouse which is injected with one or another hypophyseal hormone. This presumption indicates that the adenohypophysis of the dwarf mouse is only in a deep resting state (asleep) and is still able to respond to stimulation.

In comparing this hypophysis-to-hypophysis interaction, could a thymus-to-thymus interaction be acquired? The thymus also secretes several hormones. The answer is short and simple: We just do not know.

Thus, an intricate network of hormonal interaction appears to influence the immune functions. The notion of a coherent coordinative mechanism for these functions can be imagined. This suspicion could be supported further from the observations made on the nervous system's involvement in these interactions. Destruction of hypothalamic areas was followed by a depression of the immune response; their stimulation by faradization enhanced it [294]. Serum corticosterone level, action potential of the hypothalamic ventromedian area, and the number of plaque-forming cells in the spleen increased in demonstratively parallel curves following sheep erythrocyte injections in rats [54]. The stimulatory influence of antigens on these mechanisms seems to be exerted at different levels and not on the hypothalamus alone. Corticosterone production by incubated adrenals was increased, following addition of an antigen (enterotoxin) to the medium [224], and the corticotropin release of incubated hypophyses was also increased by the addition of *E. coli* endotoxin [491, 358].

The thymus may exert an influence on this mechanism. RNA synthesis increased in the hypothalamus of thymectomized rats incubated in vitro. This was prevented by thymosin or homeostatic thymic hormone injections. Added to the medium, both hormones caused a decrease in RNA synthesis in the incubated hypothalamus of intact rats [142]. This seems to indicate a negative feedback effect of thymectomy on the hypothalamus. This entirely new field awaits further research.

8 Possible Alimentary Influences

The picture of coordinatory mechanisms of immune functions is not complete if alimentary factors are not taken into account. The experimental documentation on this is poor. However, a superabundant number of clinical documentations are available concerning immune disturbances in underfed human subjects. Avitaminosis A, pantothenic acid, and pyridoxal deficiency in rats and avitaminosis C in guinea pigs resulted in a decreased antibody production. Thiamine, riboflavine, and folic acid deficiency were of no influence [see review 23]. Pair-fed controls showed a normal immune response, however, their thymus was also atrophic. Thus, this influence of specific deficiencies on the immune response did not result from the underfeeding which is by definition a consequence of avitaminoses. Rat fed a pyridoxine-deficient diet had no immunocompetent mature T cells in the thymus. Thymocytes from these rats acquired immunocompetence when incubated on a monolayer of thymic reticuloepithelium from normal rats, but not if the reticuloepithelial cells were taken from pyridoxine-deficient rats [540]. This suggests that pyridoxine deficiency may interfere with the immune response inasmuch as it inhibits thymic hormone production. This is perhaps not the only way. Lymphocytes from BALB mice incubated with irradiated C_3H lymphocytes developed cytotoxic functions, which decreased in time after the antigenic lmyphocytes were added after more than 20 days of culture. After 35 days of culture, the ability to develop cytotoxic functions was lost. It was restored by addition of pyridoxal to the medium [464].

Here again a new field of interest opens. As long as our documentation on this subject remains as poor as it is, the coordinatory mechanisms of immune functions will not be completely understood.

9 General Conclusions

This review contains evidence for the influence of nearly all hitherto known hormones on the immune response. As stated above, the documentation for this evidence differs quantitatively from one hormone to another: abundant for the thymus, in general it is scarce for the other endocrines, because the attention of immunologists has thus far focused more or less exclusively on the thymus. This is unjustifiable. There is valid evidence for pluriglandular influences on the immune response. *Komeva's* observations indicate an influence of the hypothalamus [294].

It was postulated for the thymus, that its influence is needed for the differentiation of the immune system (thymectomy is of no consequences in animals whose immune system is already mature). This is not entirely valid. Endocrine mutilation resulted in immune disturbances in prepuberal animals, as was shown above.

A difference must be made between mature lymphocytes and sentitized lymphocytes. In the lymphocytes, the first contact with an antigen results in changes which are under hormonal influences. Once these changes have occurred, hormones are apparently no longer needed (the secondary immune response is not influenced by endocrine mutilation.

The mechanism for these hormonal influences differs from one endocrine to another. Some act directly on the immune system. The synergic growth hormone, the thymus, and the corticosteroids are examples of this condition. Some endocrines influence the immune system inasmuch as they stimulate or inhibit other glands. This may occur in two different ways:

1. An interaction between two hormones in their circulating form (such as the interaction thymus-corticotropin)
2. An influence of a hormone on a gland itself; the influence of the thyroid and the gonads is mediated by the thymus.

A scheme (Fig. 1) summarizes those interactions.

Do these observations themselves justify the postulate of a hormonal coordination of the immune response? At first glance, no. It requires the demonstration of an induction of the hormonal reaction by a specific stimulant. The stimulant may act directly (the isolated perfused pancreas secretes increased amounts of insulin if the glucose content of the perfusion liquid is increased). The reaction may result from an intricate mechanism involving several organs (energetic metabolism increases in the cold, under the influence of the thyroid and the adrenal cortex, but not in hypophysectomized animals). In order to accept the postulate of a hormonal coordination of the immune response, we must observe, that the presence of an antigen within the organism results in an increased activity

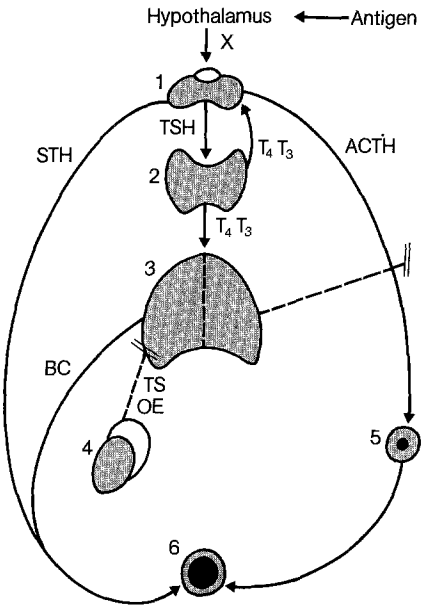


Fig. 1. Summary of the hormonal coordination of the immune response. → Stimulating influences, - - - - -// inhibiting influences. *1*, adenohypophysis; *2*, thyroid; *3*, thymus; *4*, gonads; *5*, adrenal; *6*, lymphocytes. *Abbreviations: BC*, thymic hormone *(Bernardi-Comsa); TS*, testosterone; *OE*, estradiol; *X*, unknown; *STH*, growth hormone; *TSH*, thyreotropin; *ACTH*, corticotropin; T_4T_3, thyroid hormone

of the endocrines mentioned above. This evidence is given partially by the observations of *Besedowsky* and *Sorkin* [54]: in presence of sheep erythrocytes there is a parallel increase of the action potentials in the hypothalamus, the corticosterone content of the blood, and the number of plaque-forming cells in the spleen. It would be of supreme interest to extend this fundamental observation to the other endocrines known to influence the immune system.

Be that as it may, our knowledge of these mechanisms will remain incomplete as long as alimentary factors are not taken into account. The observations of *Willis-Carr* and *St. Pierre* are of great interest in this context [540]. Earlier documents are not entirely satisfactory, concluding (in our opinion somwhat quickly) that most alimentary factors are of little or no influence on the immune system [see 23]. This conclusion is in striking contradiction to the everyday clinical routine. It is universally known that patients suffering from malnutrition are highly sensitive to infection that can develop with a peculiarly poor reaction and a catastrophal prognosis. This suggests the hypothesis of a state of immunodeficiency in these patients. To our knowledge, no attempt has yet been made to verify this hypothesis.

On the other hand, it is known that malnutrition results in an intricate hormonal deficiency. A characteristic pattern of thymic atrophy is an early consequence of every deficiency disease. Later, the adenohypophysis is severely affected (malnutrition was called the nonsurgical hypo-

physectomy). This, in turn, affects the thyroid, the adrenal, and the gonads. The documentation reviewed allows us to postulate a link between hormonal deficiency and immune deficiency (to some extent underfed subjects suffer from immune deficiency inasmuch as they suffer from hormonal deficiencies).

One may conceive that the thymus is of primary importance in this syndrome. Its atrophy is peculiarly early and pecularly severe. In dyspeptic infants underfed for therapeutic reasons the thymus may lose 90% of its normal weight and its hormone content tends toward zero [see 329]. In the late 1940s an attempt at substitutive therapy with thymic extract was made in these patients with encouraging results [see 329].

In our opinion, interesting new aspects of the physiopathology of the immune response may appear if:

1. The pluriglandular coordination of the immune response were to be considered (instead of the exclusive concentration on the thymus).
2. The accidental, acquired forms of immunodeficiency were also investigated (research has so far focused on congenital forms).

References

1. Abe T, Nomura M (1970) Amelioration of runt disease in rats by metopirone. J Nat Cancer Inst 45:597
2. Abraham AD, Sekeris CE (1971) Inhibitory action of steroid hormones on RNA synthesis of isolated thymus nuclei. Biochim Biophys Acta 247:562
3. Adams PB (1975) Mechanism of interaction between and cells in the in vitro response to SRBC. Immunology 28:253
4. Agarwal K, Garby L (1964) Inhibition by corticosteroids or red cell lysis in vitro. Acta Endocrinol [Suppl] (Copenh) 93
5. Agosier M, Christen R, Badiner O, Gasic G (1952) Cortisone-induced metastases of adenocarcinom in mice. Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 80:128
6. Aisenberg AC, Davis C (1968) Thymus and recovery of the sheep erythrocyte response in irradiated mice. J Exp Med 128:1327
7. Aisenberg AC, Wilkes B (1965) Partial immunological restoration of neonatally thymectomized rats with thymus-containing diffusion chambers. Nature 25:716
8. Algire GH, Weaver JM, Prahn RT (1957) Studies on tissue homotransplantation using diffusion chambers. Ann NY Acad Sci 64:1009
9. Allen HL, Williams RD, Lovingood CG, Ellison EH (1952) Effect of donorskin desensitization and ACTH on survival of skin homograft. Ann Surg 135:239
10. Ambrose CT (1964) Requirement of hydrocortisone in antibody forming tissue cultivated in serum-free medium. J Exp Med 119:1027
11. Amerding D, Katz DM (1975) Activation of T and B cells in vitro. J Immunol 116:1248
12. Archer OK, Pierce JC (1961) Role of the thymus in developing of the immune response. Fed Proc 20:26
13. Argyris B (1969) Thymus-bone marrow interaction in transplantation immunity. Transplantation 8:538
14. Arnason BG, Jankovic BD, Waksman BH, Wennersten C (1962) Role of the thymus in inmmune reaction in rats. J Exp Med 116:177

15. Arnason BG, Vaux de St Cyr C, Shafner JB (1964) Comparison of immunoglobulin and antibody production in normal and thymectomized mice. J Immunol 93: 915
16. Arrenbrecht S, Sorkin E (1973) Growth-hormone-induced cell differentiation. Eur J Immunol 3:601
17. Asanuma Y, Goldstein AL, White A (1970) Reduction of the incidence of wasting disease in neonatally tymectomized mice by thymosin. Endocrinology 86: 600
18. Aschkenasy A, Bussand A, Corvazier P, Grabar P (1950) Role de la corticosurrenale dans la leucopoiese et l'immunité. Rev Hematol 5:107
19. Askonas BA, White RG (1956) Site of the antibody production in the guinea pig. J Exp Pathol 37:61
20. Astaldi A, Wijemans P (1977) Thymosin-induced human serum thymic factor increasing cyclic AMP. J Immunol 119:1106
21. Astaldi G, Astaldi A, Groenewoud M, Wijemans PS, Schellekens PG, Eijsvogel VO (1977) Effect of a human serum thymic factor on cortisol treated thymocytes. Eur J Immunol 7:836
22. Auerbach R, Globerson A (1966) In vitro induction of the graft-versus-host reaction. Exp Cell Res 42:31
23. Axelrod AE, Prezansky J (1955) Role of the vitamins in antibody production. Vitam Horm 13:1
24. Azar NA, Williams K, Takatsuki K (1964) Development of plasma cells and immunoglobulin in neonatally thymectomized rats. In: Defendi V, Metcalf D (eds) The thymus. Wistar Institute Press, Philadelphia
25. Bach JF (1973) Demonstration of a circulating thymic hormone. Immunology 25:353
26. Bach JF (1973) Thymic dependency of rosette-forming cells. Contemp Top Immunol 2:86
27. Bach JF, Carnaud C (1976) Thymic factors. Prog Allergy 21:342
28. Bach JF, Dardenne M (1973) Antigen recognition by T lymphocytes. Cell Immunol 6:394
29. Bach JF, Dardenne M, Davies AJS (1971) Early effects of adult thymectomy. Nature (London) 231:231
30. Bach JF, Dardenne M, Goldstein AL, Guha A, White A (1971) Appearance of T cell markers in bone-marrow rosette-forming cells after incubation with thymosin. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 68:2774
31. Bach JF, Papiernik M, Levasseur P (1972) Evidence for a serum factor secreted by the human thymus. Lancet II:1056
32. Bach JF, Dardenne M, Pleau JM, Bach MA (1975) Isolation, biochemical characteristics and biological activity of a circulating thymic hormone. Ann NY Acad Sci 249:186
33. Bach JF, Duval D, Dardenne M, Salomon JC, Tursz T (1975) Effect of steroids on T cells. Transplant Proc 7:23
34. Bach MA (1977) Sera from normal and thymectomized animals produce elevation of cyclic AMP in thymocytes. Cell Immunol 33:226
35 Baker PM (1975) Homeostatic control of antibody response. Transplant Rev 26:3
36. Baroni C (1967) Thymus, peripheral lymphnodes and immunological responsiveness of pituitary dwarf mice. Experientia 23:282
37. Baroni C, Fabris N, Bertoli G (1969) Synergistic action of thyroid and growth hormone in pituitary dwarf mice. Immunology 17:303
38. Baroni C, Pesardo PC, Bertoli G (1971) Delayed development of immunological capacity in pituitary dwarf mice. Immunology 21:455
39. Bartke A (1964) Histology of antehypophyse, thyroid and gonads of two types of dwarf mice. Anat Rec 149:225

40. Bartke A (1965) Response of two types of dwarf mice to growth hormone. Thyrotropine and thyroxine. Gen Comp Endocrinol 5:418
41. Basch RS (1966) Immunological competence after thymectomy. Int Arch Allergy Appl Immunol 30:165
42. Basch RS, Goldstein G (1974) Induction of T cell differentiation in vitro by thymin. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 71:1474
43. Basch RS, Goldstein G (1975) Antigenic and functional evidence for the in vitro inductive activity of thymoporetine on thymocyte precursory. Ann NY Acad Sci 249:290
44. Basten A, Müller JFAP, Sprent J, Cheers C (1974) Cell to cell interaction in the immune response. J Exp Med 140:199
45. Batchelor JR (1971) Hormonal control of antibody formation. In: Cinader B (ed) Regulation of antibody response. Thomas, Springfield
46. Batchelor JR, Chapman BA (1961) Influence of sex on antibody response to an incompatible tumour. Immunology 9:553
47. Bates RW, Laanes T, Riddle O (1935) Evidence from dwarf mice against the individuality of growth hormone. Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 33:446
48. Bathmann A, Land W, Koczorek K, Stass P (1971) Immuno suppressive properties of corticosteroids. Eur Surg Res 3:40
49. Baxter JD, Harris AW (1975) Mechanisms of glucocorticoid action. Transplant Proc 7:55
50. Beauvieux Y (1963) Donnés experimentales sur l'un des aspects de la physiologie du thymus. CR Acad Sci [D] (Paris) 256:2914
51. Bekkum DW van (ed) (1975) Biological activities of thymic hormones. Koojker, Rotterdam
52. Berglund K (1956) Studies on factors which condition the effect of cortisone on antibody production. Acta Pathol Microbiol Scand 38:311
53. Berglund K, Fagreus A (1961) Effect of homologous spleen cells on antibody formation in cortisone treated rats. Acta Pathol Microbiol Scand 52:321
54. Besedowsky H, Sorkin E (1977) Network of immunoneuroendocrine interaction. Clin Exp Immunol 27:176
55. Bianchi E, Pierpaoli W, Sorkin E (1971) Cytological changes in the mouse anterior pituitary after neonatal thymectomy. J Endocrinol 51:1
56. Brick HC (1977) Cytotoxic T cell activation by polyribonucleotids. J Exp Med 146:844
57. Billingham RE, Brent L (1958) Quantitative studies on transplantation immunity. Philos Trans R Soc (London) [Biol] 242:439
58. Billingham RE, Krohn PL, Medawar PB (1951) Effect of cortisone on survival of skin homografts in rabbits. Br Med J I:1157
59. Biozzi G, Stiffel C, Mouton D, Liacopoulos-Briot M (1966) Etude de l'immunoadherence au cours d l'immunisation. Ann Inst Pasteur (Paris) [Suppl 3] 110
60. Bisset KA (1949) Influence of adrenal cortical hormone on immunity on cold-blooded vertebrates. J Endocrinol 6:94
61. Bjornboe M, Fischel EL, Stoerk HC (1951) Effect of ACTH and cortisone on concentration of circulating antibody. J Exp Med 93:37
62. Bjornboe M, Gormsen H, Lundquist LF (1967) Further studies on the role of plasma cells as antibody producers. J Immunol 55:121
63. Blankwater MJ, Levert LA, Swart AC, Bekkum DW van (1978) Effect of various thymic and non-thymic factors on in vitro antibody formation by spleen cells of nude mice. Cell Immunol 35:242
64. Blecher M, White A (1958) In vitro effect of adrenocortical steroids on transamination by cell suspensions of rat thymus. Endocrinology 63:65
65. Blomgren H, Anderson B (1969) Evidence for a small pool of immunocompetent cells in the thymus. Exp Cell Res 57:185
66. Blomgren H, Anderson B (1971) Characteristics of the inmmunocompetent cells in the mouse thymus. Cell Immunol 1:545

67. Bloom BR (1974) Cellular bases of immune response: cAMP, growth and immune response. Springer, Berlin Heidelberg New York
68. Bottoner GD, Stitch RD, Roesel OF (1973) Effects of cortisol-protein complex on RMA-polymerase activity in isolated pig liver and thymus nuclei. Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 140:946
69. Boyett JD, Hoffert JF (1972) Inhibition of glucose metabolism in thymus lymphocytes by cortisol. Endocrinology 91:233
70. Braun W (1974) Regulatory factors in the immune response. Springer, Berlin Heidelberg New York
71. Braun W, Cohen EP (1971) Role of the nucleic acids in antibody formation. In: Cinader B (ed) Regulation of the immune response. Thomas, Springfield
72. Braun W, Ishizuka M (1971) Antibody formation. Reduced responses after administration of excessive amounts of nonspecific stimulators. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 68:1114
73. Braun W, Rega MJ (1971) Adenyl-cyclase-stimulating catecholamines as modifiers of antibody formation. Immunol Commun 1:523
74. Braun W, Ishizuka M, Matsumoto T (1971) Cyclic AMP and immune response. J Immunol 107:1027
75. Braun W, Ishizuka M, Winchurch R, Webb D (1971) Role of cyclic AMP immune response. Ann NY Acad Sci 185:41B
76. Brinck-Johnson T, Dougherty TF (1965) Effect of cortisol and corticotropin on incorporation of adenine-8 C in lymphatic tissue nucleic acids. Acta Endocrinol (Copenh) 49:471
77. Brown GL, Rothlauf MW, Heimzeiling RH, Myers TS (1971) Antibody formation in rabbits adapted to high altitude. Infect Immun 3:358
78. Brunner KT, Manuel J, Rudolf M, Chapin B (1970) Studies on allograft immunity. Immunology 18:501
79. Buntner B, Szymik M (1974) Effect of thymectomy on steroid secretion and adrenal venous blood in male rats. Endocrinol Exp (Bratisl) 8:31
80. Burleson R, Levey RH (1971) Demonstration of thymic function in vitro. Transplant Proc 3:918
81. Buscarini L, Bedarda G, Marandola P (1964) Thymectomized rats treated with thymus homogenates reject skin homografts. Experientia 20:696
82. Byrom NA, Campbell MA, Staughton RCD (1977) Thymosine-like activity in fetal calf serum. Lancet II:1132
83. Camblin JG, Bridges JB (1964) Effect of cell-free thymus extracts in leucopenic rats. Transplantation 2:785
84. Cantor H, Boyse EA (1975) Functional subclasses of T lymphocytes bearing different Ly antigens. J Exp Med 141:1376
85. Cantor H, Boyse EA (1977) Lymphocytes as models for study of mammalian cell differentiation. Immunol Rev 33:105
86. Cantor H, Shen FW, Boyse EA (1976) Separation of helper and suppressor cells. J Exp Med 143:1391
87. Carpenter CB, Boylston AW, Merrile JP (1971) Immunosuppressive globulin from bovine thymus. Cell Immunol 2:423
88. Carsner RL, Rennels EG (1960) Primary site of gene action in dwarf mice. Science 131:829
89. Castro JE (1974) Orchidectomy and the immune response. Proc R Soc (London) [Biol] 185:425
90. Castro JE, Hamilton DNH (1972) Adrenalectomy and orchidectomy as immunopotentiating procedures. Transplantation 13:614
91. Ceglowski WS, Labadie GW (1975) Influence of thymic extracts on maturation of the immune system. Ann NY Acad Sci 249:343
92. Ceglowski WS, Hand TL, Friedman H (1973) Biologic activities of thymic protein in the maturation of immune response. In: Luckey TD (ed) Thymic hormones. University Park Press, Baltimore

93. Cerrottini JC, Brunner KT (1974) Cell mediated cytotoxicity. Adv Immunol 18:67
94. Cerrottini JC, Nordin AA, Brunner KT (1970) Specific in vitro cytotoxicity of thymic lymphocytes sensitized to alloantigens. Nature (London) 228:1308
95. Chaourat G (1978) Suppressor T cells in tolerance to human globulin. Cell Immunol 36:1
96. Chase J, White A, Dougherty TF (1946) Enhancement of circulating antibody concentration by adrenal cortical hormones. J Immunol 52:101
97. Chebotarev F (1968) Comparative study of the effect of desoxycorticosterone acetate on the level of antibodies in serum and lymphnode extracts. Vopr Immunol 3:35
98. Chiller JM, Habicht GS, Weigl WO (1970) Cellular sites of immune responsiveness. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 65:551
99. Chisari FV, Edington TS (1974) Human T lymphocytes "E", rosette function. J Exp Med 140:1123
100. Claman H, Bronsky EA (1960) Tolerance produced in immunized adult mice and its potentiation by immunosuppressive therapy. J Allergy 37:117
101. Claman H, McDonald W (1964) Thymus and irradiation in the termination of acquired immune tolerance. Nature (London) 202:712
102. Claman H, Chaperon EA, Triplett RF (1966) Thymus-marrow cell combination. Synergism in antibody production. Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 122:1167
103. Claman H, Moorhead JW, Brunner WH (1971) Corticosteroids and lymphoid cells in vitro. J Lab Clin Med 78:499
104. Claman HM, Talmadge DW (1963) Thymectomy; prolongation of tolerance in the adult mouse. Sci Am 141:1193
105. Clark DA (1977) Characterization of the cell that suppresses the cytotoxic activity of T cells. Cell Immunol 34:25
106. Cohen JJ, Claman HM (1971) Hydrocortisone-resistant cells and processes in the hemolytic antibody response. J Exp Med 133:1061
107. Cohen JJ, Fischbach M, Claman HM (1970) Hydrocortisone resistance of graft versus host activity in mouse thymus, spleen and bone marrow. J Immunol 105: 1146
108. Cohen JJ, Hooper JA, Goldstein AL (1975) Thymosine-induced differentiation of murine thymocytes. Ann NY Acad Sci 249:144
109. Cohen JT, Stavy L, Feldman M (1970) Glucocorticoids and cellular immunity in vitro. J Exp Med 132:1055
110. Colley DG, Malakian A, Waksman B (1970) Cell differentiation in the thymus. J Immunol 104:505
111. Comsa J (1952) Modification de l'action antithyroidienne du thymus chez le cobaye irradie aux rayons. Experientia 8:267
112. Comsa J (1959) Physiologie et physiopathologie du thymus. Doin, Paris
113. Comsa J (1973) Thymus substitution. In: Luckey TD (ed) Thymic hormones. University Park Press, Baltimore
114. Comsa J (1973) Hormonal interactions of the thymus. In: Luckey TD (ed) Thymic hormones. University Park Press, Baltimore
115. Comsa J, Filip G (1966) Influence de l'hormone thymique sur la production d'anticorps chez le cobaye thymiprive. Ann Inst Pasteur (Paris) 110:365
116. Comsa J, Hook R (1973) Thymectomy. In: Luckey TD (ed) Thymic hormones. University Park Press, Baltimore
117. Comsa J, Leonhardt H (1976) Influence de l'interaction thymus-corticosurrenale sur le reject d'allogreffes chez le rat. Ann Endocinol (Paris) 37:51
118. Comsa J, Leonhardt H (1977) Mécanisme de l'influence de la thyroide sur le rejet d'allogreffe chez le rat. J Physiol (Paris) 73:36A
119. Comsa J, Leonhardt H (1977) Influence of the thymus-gonad interaction on allograft rejection. Acta Endocrinol [Suppl] (Copenh) 212:258

120. Comsa J, Leonhardt H (to be published) Influence of the thymus-adrenocortical interaction in transplantation immunity. Res Exp Med
121. Comsa J, Philipp EM (1971) Essai de demonstration de la sécrétion de l'hormone thymique. J Physiol 63:193A
122. Comsa J, Schweissfurth R (1972) L'action chimiotactique de l'hormone thymique sur les lymphocytes. Pathol Biol (Paris) 20:639
123. Comsa J, Leonhardt H, Schwarz JA (1975) Influence of the thymus-corticotropine-growth hormone interaction on the rejection of skin allografts in rats. Ann NY Acad Sci 249:387
124. Comsal J, Schwarz JA, Neu H (1974) Influence of the thymus-growth hormone interaction on the production of precipitating antibodies in rats. Immunol Commun 3:11
125. Comsa J, Leonhardt H, Ozminski K (to be published) Hormonal influence on the function of the thymus. Thymus
126. Cone RE, Johnson AG (1971) Regulation of the immune response system by synthetic polynucleotides. J Exp Med 133:665
127. Cross AM, Leuchars E, Miller JFA (1974) Recovery of the immune response in irradiated mice thymectomized in adult life. J Exp Med 119:837
128. Dardenne M, Papiernik M, Bach JF, Stutman O (1974) Epithelial origin of the serum thymic factor. Immunology 27:299
129. Dardenne M, Pleau JM, Man MK, Bach JF (1977) Structural study of circulating thymic factor. J Biol Chem 252:8040
130. Davies JS (1969) The thymus and cellular basis of immunity. Transplant Rev I: 43
131. Davies JS, Leuchars E, Wallis V, Koller PC (1966) Mitotic response of thymus-derived cells to antigenic stimulation. Transplantation 4:438
132. Davies JS, Leuchars E, Wallis V, Marchant R, Elliot VE (1967) Failure of thymus-derived cells to produce antibody. Transplantation 5:222
133. Defendi V, Roosa RA (1964) Role of the thymus in carcinogenesis. In: Defendi, Metcalf (eds) The thymus. Wistar Institute Monographs, Philadelphia
134. Delmasso AP, Martinez C, Good RA (1962) Failure of spleen cells from thymectomized mice to induce graft-versus-host reaction. Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 110:205
135. Delmasso AP, Martinez C, Sjodin K, Good RA (1963) Role of the thymus in immunobiology. J Exp Med 118:1089
136. Dennert G (1976) Thymus-derived killer cells. Transplant Rev 29:59
137. Deschaux P (1977) Etudes in vivo et in vitro des interrélation du thymus avec certaines glandes endocrines. Thesis, Lyon
138. Deschaux P, Fontange R (1971) Effect de la thymectomie néonatale ou adulte sur la synthèse de la corticosterone chez le rat. J Physiol (Paris) 71:336A
139. Deschaux P, Portier A, Fontange R (1971) Influence de la corticotropine sur la consommation d'oxygène chez le rat. CR Acad Sci (Paris) 265:2123
140. Deschaux P, Flores JL, Fontange R (1974) Influence de la thymectomie sur la surrénale. Arch Int Physiol Biochim 82:115
141. Deschaux P, Dodin A, Laval F, Fontange R (1975) Rôle de deux extraits thymiques dans le mécanisme de protection contre une infection d'épreuve. CR Acad Sci (Paris) 281:1443
142. Deschaux P, Morel G, Binimbo-Massengo A, Fontange R (1975) Contribution à l'étude de l'axe hypothalamohypophyseo-thymique. Arch Int Physiol Biochim 83:423
143. Dews PB, Code CF (1953) Anaphylactic reaction and antibody concentration in rats and rabbits, effect of adrenalectomy and cortisone. J Immunol 70:199
144. Diamantstein T (1970) Mechanismus der immunosuppressiven Corticoidwirkung. Arch Klin Exp Ohren Nasen Kehlkopfheilkd 196:76
145. Doenhoff MJ, Davies AJS, Leuchars E, Wallis T (1970) The thymus and circulating antibodies. Proc R Soc Lond [Biol] 176:69

146. Doria G, Agarossi G, Pietro S Di (1972) Enhancement of activity of a cell-free thymocyte culture medium on the in vitro response of spleen cells from thymectomized mice to SRBC. J Immunol 108:268
147. Dougherty TF (1952) Effect of hormones on lymphatic tissues. Physiol Rev 32:379
148. Dougherty TF, White A (1945) Relationship of the effects of adrenocortical secretion on lymphoid tissue and antibody titres. Am J Anat 77:81
149. Dougherty TF, Chase JH, White A (1945) Pituitary-adrenocortical control of antibody release from lymphocytes. Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 58:135
150. Dougherty TF, Berliner DC, Berliner ML (1961) Corticosteroid-tissue interaction. Metabolism 10:966
151. Dougherty TF, Berliner MZ, Schneebeli G, Berliner DL (1963) Hormonal control of lymphatic structure and function. Ann NY Acad Sci 113:825
152. Duclos TW, Kim BS (1977) Suppressor T cells, presence in mice rendered tolerant by neonatal treatment with antireceptor antibody or autrem. J Immunol 119:1769
153. Dukor P, Dietrich FM (1968) Characteristic features of immunosuppression by steroids and cytotoxic drugs. Int Arch Allergy Appl Immunol 34–32
154. Dumont F (1978) Physical subpopulations of mouse thymocytes. Immunology 34:841
155. Dunn TD, Trainin N, Levey RH (1966) Studies on thymic function. In: Metcalf, Defendi (eds) The thymus. Wistar Institute, Philadelphia
156. Duquesnoy RJ (1969) Effect of hypophysectomy on immunologic recovery from sublethal irradiation. Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 131:1076
157. Duquesnoy RJ (1975) Pituitary dwarf mouse, a model for study of endocrine immunodeficiency. Birth Defects 11:530
158. Duquesnoy RJ, Ahrens RC (1973) Increased responsiveness to PBA and graft versus host reaction of thymus cell from dwarf mice. J Immunol 110:578
159. Duquesnoy RJ, Mariani T, Good RA (1969) Thymus dependent lymphoid system in dwarf mice. Fed Proc 28:276
160. Dutton RW (1973) Inhibitory and stimulatory effect of con A on the response of mouse spleen cell suspension to antigens. J Exp Med 138:1496
161. Dutton RW, Falcoff R, Hirst JA, Hoffmann M (1971) Is there an evidence for non-antigen-specific diffusable chemical mediator from thymus-cells in the initiation of the immune response. Prog Clin Immunol 355
162. Duve C De (1964) In: Thomas L, Ulu JW, Grant L (eds) Injure, inflammation, immunity. Williams & Wilkins, Baltimore
163. Eardley DD, Gershon RK (1976) Induction of suppressor cells in vitro. J Immunol 117:313
164. Eartly H, Leblond PC (1954) Identification of the thyroxine effects mediated by the hypophyse. Endocrinology 54:949
165. East J, Parott DMV (1964) Prevention of wasting in mice thymectomized at birth and subsequent rejections of allogenic leukemic cells. J Nat Cancer Inst 33:673
166. Eisen HN, Mayer MM, Moore DH, Tarr RR, Stoerk HC (1947) Failure of adrenocortical activity to influence circulating antibodies and globulin. Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 65:301
167. Eisental A, Nachtigal D, Feldman M (1977) Induction of allospecific T cells in vitro. Cell Immunol 34:112
168. Elliott EV, Sinclair MR (1968) Effect of cortisone on 19S and 7S hemolysin antibody. Immunology 15:643
169. Elliott EV, Weil V, Davies AJS (1971) Origin of the PHA responsive cells in the mouse thymus after treatment with cortisone. Nature (New Biol) 234:77
170. Ellison EH, Martin PC, Williams RD, Chatworthy HW, Hamwi G, Zollinger RM (1951) Adrenal cortical hormones and homografting. Ann Surg 134:495

171. Erb P, Feldmann M (1978) Role of macrophages in generation of T helper cells. Eur J Immunol 5:759
172. Esselman WJ (1977) Modulation of cell response by a glycolipid released from antigen stimulated T cells. J Immunol 119:1994
173. Fabris N (1973) Immune depression in thyroidectomized animals. Clin Exp Immunol 15:601
174. Fabris N, Piantanelli L, Muzzoli M (1977) Differential effects of pancreatectomy on humoral and cellular immune response. Clin Exp Immunol 28:306
175. Fabris N, Pierpaoli W, Sorkin E (9171) Hormones and immunological capacity. Clin Exp Immunol 9:209
175a. Fabris N, Pierpaoli W, Sorkin E (1971) Hormones and immunological capacity. Clin Exp Immunol 9:227
176. Fache B, Charlemagne J (1975) Influence on allograft rejection of thymectomy at different larval states of Plemodeles. Eur J Immunol 5:133
177. Fachet J, Stark E, Vallant K, Palkovits M (1962) Some observations on functional interrelationship between thymus and adrenal cortex. Acta Med Acad Sci Hung 18:461
178. Fachet J, Palkovits M, Vallant K (1965) Effect of neonatal thymectomy on lymphatic organs, reticular elements and blood count. Acta Med Acad Sci Hung 221:303
179. Fagreus A (1952) Role of ACTH and cortisone in resistance and immunity. Acta Pathol Microbiol Scand [Suppl] 93:20
180. Fagreus A, Berglund K (1962) Inhibition of cortisone effect on antobody formation by heterologous spleen cells. Acta Pathol Microbiol Scand [A] 55:187
181. Feigelson P, Feigelson M (1968) Mechanism of cortisone action. In: Litwac (ed) Action of hormones on molecular processes. Wiley, New York, pp 57–128
182. Feldmann M (1972) Cell to cell interactions in the immune response in vitro. J Exp Med 135:1049
183. Feldman M (1974) Cell to cell interaction in immune response. Ser Haematol 7:593
184. Feldman M (1974) T cell suppression in vitro. Eur J Immunol 4:667
185. Feldman M (1977) Requirement for interaction between two subpopulations of T cells for helper cell induction in vitro. Immunitaetsforsch Immunobiol 153:217
186. Feldman M, Basten A (1972) Cell interactions in the immune response in vitro. J Exp Med 136:49
186a. Feldman M, Basten A (1972) Cell interactions in the immune response in vitro. J Exp Med 136:722
187. Feldman M, Globerson A (1972) The inductive phase of antibody production. In: Borek F (ed) Immunogenetics. North-Holland, Amsterdam
188. Feldman M, Funder JW, Edelman IS (1972) Subcellular mechanisms of steroid action. Am J Med 53:545
189. Feldman M, Kilburn JG, Levy J (1975) T-T cell interaction in the generation of helper cells. Nature (London) 256:741
190. Fischel EE (1950) Relationship of adrenocortical activity to immune response. Bull NY Acad Med 26:255
191. Fischel EE, Vaughan JH, Photopoulos K (1952) Inhibition of rapid production of antibodies by cortisone. Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 81:346
192. Fisher ER, Fisher B (1965) Role of the thymus in skin and tumor cell transplantation in the rat. Lab Invest 16:546
193. Ford LF, Michclen HS (1963) Thymus and lymphnodes in radiation chimaeres. Lancet I:359
194. Fox KE, Gabourel JD (1972) Effect of cortisol on activity and distribution of two DNA-dependent RNA-polymerases of rat thymus. Endocrinology 90:1388
195. Fox CA, Whitehead RH (1936) Relation of the adrenal glands to immunological processes. J Immunol 30:51

196. Friedman H (1965) Absence of antibody plaqueforming cells in spleens of thymectomized mice immunized with sheep erythrocytes. Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 118:1176
197. Friedman H (1975) Stimulation of B-immunocytes by a T cell factor produced in mixed lymphocyte cultures. Ann NY Acad Sci 249:266
198. Friedman H (1977) Differential effects of T cell-derived soluble factors on virgin and primed B cells. Transplant Proc 9:811
199. Gabourel GD, Comstock JP (1969) Effect of cortisol on aminoacid incorporation by microsomes from mouse lymphoma. Biochem Pharmacol 13:1369
200. Gabrielson A, Good RA (1967) Chemical suppression of adaptive immunity. Adv Immunol 6:90
201. Galili R, Feldman M (1967) Role of macrophages in induction of antibody in X-irradiated animals. Immunology 12:197
202. Germuth FG (1956) Role of adrenocortical steroids in infection. Pharmacol Rev 8:1
203. Germuth FG, Oyama J, Ottenger B (1951) Mechanism of action of II dehydrocorticosterone and of adrenocorticotropic hormone in experimental hypersensitivity in rabbits. J Exp Med 96:139
204. Gershon RK (1974) T cell control of antibody production. Contemp Top Immunobiol 3:1
205. Gershon RK (1976) Role of T cells in immunosuppression. Adv Exp Med Biol 73:3
206. Gershon RK, Cohen P, Hencin R, Liebhaber SA (1972) Suppressor T cells. J Immunol 108:586
207. Gisler R (1971) Stress and the hormonal regulation of immune response. Psychother Psychosom 23:197
208. Gisler R, Dukor P (1972) Three cell mosaic cultures; in vitro immune response by combination of T and B cells with added macrophages. Cell Immunol 4:341
209. Gisler R, Schenkel-Hulliger L (1971) Influence of pituitary and adrenal activity on immune response. Cell Immunol 2:646
210. Gisler R, Schenkel-Hulliger L (1971) Hormonal regulation of the immune response. Cell Immunol 2:534
211. Gisler R, Staber F, Rude E, Dukor P (1973) Soluble mediators of T-B interaction. Eur J Immunol 3:650
212. Globerson A, Auerbach R (1967) Reactivation in vitro of immunocompetence in irradiated mouse spleen. J Exp Med 126:223
213. Globerson A, Umiel T, Friedman H (1975) Activation of immune competence by thymus factors. Ann NY Acad Sci 249:268
214. Globerson A, Kirov SM, Parish CR (1976) Involvement of cells with B properties in development of T helpers. Adv Exp Med Biol 66:69
215. Goble FC, Konopka EA (1973) Sex as a factor in infectious disease. Trans NY Acad Sci 35:325
216. Goldstein AL (1970) The thymus as an endocrine gland. Recent Prog Horm Res 26:505
217. Goldstein AL (1978) Thymosin, basic properties and clinical potential in the treatment of patients with immunodeficiencies and cancer. Antibiot Chemother 24:47
218. Goldstein AL, White A (1970) Thymus as an endocrine gland. In: Litwac G (ed) Biochemical action of hormones. Academic Press, London New York
219. Goldstein AL, Asanuma Y, Batisto JR, Hardy MA, Quint J, White A (1970) Influence of thymosin on cell-mediated and humoral immune response in normal and immunodeficient mice. J Immunol 104:359
220. Goldstein AL, Bannerjee S, Schneebeli GL, Dougherty TF, White A (1970) Acceleration of lymphoid tissue regeneration in X-irradiated mice by thymosin. Radiat Res 41:579

221. Goldstein AL, Guha A, Howe ML, White A (1971) Ontogenesis of cell-mediated immunity in murine thymocytes and spleen cells. J Immunol 106:773
222. Goldstein AL, Guha A, Zatz MM, Hardy MA, White A (1972) Purification and biological activity of thymosis, a thymic hormone. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 69:1800
223. Goldstein AL, Guha A, Hardy MA et al (1977) Thymosin, isolation and sequential analyse. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 74:725
224. Goldstein AL, Slater FD, White A (1966) Preparation, assay and partial purification of thymosin, a thymic lymphopoietic factor. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 56:1010
225. Goldstein AL, Thureau GB, Rossio JL, Constantio JS (1977) Immunological reconstitution of patients with primary immunodeficiency and cancer. Transplant Proc 9:1141
226. Goldstein G (1968) The thymus and neuromuscular transmission. Lancet 119
227. Goldstein G (1974) Isolation of bovine thymin, a polypeptidic hormone of the thymus. Nature (London) 247:II
228. Goldstein G (1975) Isolation of thymopoietine (thymus). Ann NY Acad Sci 249:177
229. Goldstein G, Boyse EA (1975) Differentiation of T cells in nude mice. Science 190:1211
230. Goldstein G, Hoffman WW (1969) Endocrine function of the thymus affecting neuromuscular transmission. Clin Exp Immunol 6:181
231. Goldstein G, Manganaro A (1975) Thymin, a thymic polypeptide causing neuromuscular block of myasthenia gravis. Ann NY Acad Sci 183:230
232. Goldstein G, Silvestroni AE, Cantor H, Baltimore D (1974) Terminal-deoxynucleotidyl transferase is formed in prothymocytes. J Exp Med 144:543
233. Goldstein P, Wigzell H, Blomgren H, Svedmyr EAJ (1972) Cells mediating specific in vitro cytotoxicity. J Exp Med 135:890
234. Good RA, Delmasso C, Martinez C, Archer P, Pierce JC, Papermaster BW (1962) Role of the thymus in development of immunologic capacity. J Exp Med 116:773
235. Gorczynski RM, Miller RG, Phillips RA (1973) Reconstitution of T cell repleted spleen population by a factor derived from T cells. J Immunol 111:900
236. Gowans JL, McGregor DD (1965) Immunological activities of lymphocytes. Prog Allergy 9:1
237. Gowans JL, McGregor DD, Cowen DM (1964) Role of small lymphocytes in the rejection of skin homografts. In: Wolstenholme GEW, Knight J (eds) The immunologically competent cell. Little, Boston
238. Graff RJ, Lappe M, Snell GD (1969) Influence of gonads and adrenals on tissue response to skin grafts. Transplantation 7:105
239. Grant CK, Currie GA, Alexander P (1972) Thymocytes from mice immunized against an allograft render bone-marrow cells specifically cytotoxic. J Exp Med 135:150
240. Grant CK, Evans R, Alexander P (1973) Multiple effector roles of lymphocytes in allograft immunity. Cell Immunol 8:136
241. Greengard R, Cline O (1972) Hydrocortisone regulation of thymidine-kinase in thymus involution. Biochim Biophys Acta 286:382
242. Gregoire C, Duchateau GH (1956) Reactions on the lymphatic tissue to extracts and implants of the epithelial component of the thymus. Arch Biol (Liege) 67:269
243. Ha Ty, Wathsman BH (1973) Role of the thymus intolerance. J Immunol 110: 129
244. Haksar A (1975) Stimulation of cAMP and corticoid production in the isolated rat adrenal by cholera enterotoxin. Biochim Biophys Acta 381:301
245. Hammar JA (1936) Die normalmorphologische Thymusforschung. Barth, Leipzig

246. Hanan R, Oyama J (1954) Inhibition of antibody formation in the rabbit by contact with antigen at an early age. J Immunol 73:49
247. Hand TL, Ceglowski WS, Damongsak D, Friedman H (1970) Development of antibody forming cells in neonatal mice. Stimulation and inhibition by calf thymus fraction. J Immunol 105:442
248. Hardy MA, Qunit AL, Slate D, White A (1968) Effect of thymosin and an anti-thymosin serum on allograft survival in mice. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 61:875
249. Hartmann KW (1971) Induction of a hemolysin response in vitro. J Exp Med 133:1325
250. Hayes SP, Dougherty TF (1952) Effect of ACTH and cortisone on antibody synthesis and disappearance rate of antigen. Fed Proc 11:67
251. Hays EF (1969) Effect of epithelial remnants and whole organ grafts of thymus on the recovery of thymectomized X-irradiated mice. J Exp Med 129:1235
252. Hays EF, Albert PF (1969) Effect of short-termed epithelial reticular and whole organ thymus grafts in neonatally thymectomized mice. J Exp Med 130: 847
253. Hellig H, Waldek JF (1974) Effect of cortisol on the primary immune response, to sheep erythrocytes in vivo by mouse spleen cells. J Vet Res 41:29
254. Henney CS (1974) Relationship between cytolytic activity of thymus derived lymphocytes and cyclic nucleotide concentration. In: Bloom BR (ed) cAMP growth and immune response. Springer, Berlin Heidelberg New York
255. Hess MW (1966) Experimental thymectomy. Springer, Berlin Heidelberg New York
256. Hess MW, Stoner RD (1966) Further studies on tetanus antitoxin response in neonatally thymectomized mice. Arch Allergy Appl Immunol 30:37
257. Hochman PS, Kovacz G (1977) Different sensitivities to cortisol of natural killer cell activity and hybrid resistance to parental marrow grafts. J Immunol 119:2013
258. Hooper JS, McCaniel MC, Thurman GB, Cohen GH, Sculof RS, Goldstein AL (1975) Purification and properties of bovine thymosin. Ann NY Acad Sci 249: 125
259. Hopkin WJ (1978) Restoration of suppressor function in athymic mice. Immunology 34:309
260. Houssay BA, Sordelli A (1921) Formation d'anticorps chez les animaux ethyroidés. CR Soc Biol (Paris) 85:679
261. Humphrey JH (1964) Studies on globulin and antibody production in mice thymectomized at birth. Immunology 7:419
262. Hunt SW, Mason DW, Williams AF (1977) In rat bone marrow Thy antigen is present on cells with membrane immunoglobulin and precursors of B cells. Eur J Immunol 7:817
263. Inzerillo R, Chiti E (1933) Ghiandole endocrine ed immunita. Arch Maragliano Patol Clin 8:595
264. Isakovic K, Smith SB, Waksman BH (1965) Role of the thymus in tolerance. J Exp Med 122:1103
265. Ishizuka K (1974) Promotion of antibody formation by prostaglandins. Experientia 30:1207
266. Ishizuka K, Gafni M, Braun W (1970) Cyclic AMP effects on antibody formation and their similarities to hormone-mediated events. Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 134:963
267. Jaffé HL, Marine D (1924) Effect of suprarenalectomy on agglutinine formation in rats. J Infect Dis 35:334
268. Janeway CA (1978) Suppressor T cells and immunoregulation. Transplant Proc 10:355
269. Jankovic BD, Dvorak HF (1962) Enzymatic inactivation of immunologically competent lymph node cells in the transfer reaction. J Immunol 89:571

270. Jankovic BD, Isakovic K, Horvat J (1965) Effect of a lipid fraction from rat thymus on the delayed hypersensitivity reaction. Nature (London) 208:356
271. Jeejeebhoy HF (1965) Immunological studies in rats thymectomized in adult life. Immunology 9:417
272. Jennings J, Taylor G (1964) Effect of cortisone hemisuccinate on immune lysis of sheep erythrocytes. Nature (London) 203:661
273. Jerne NK, Nordin AA (1965) Plaque formation by single antibody-producing cells. Science 140:405
274. Jones B, Jones TC (1978) Allograft cytotoxicity cooperation between alloimmune T cells and macrophages. Immunology 34:247
275. Jones B, Jones TC, Roiff IM (1977) Allograft cytotoxicity. Immunology 32: 591
276. Jones JM, Kind PD (1972) Enhancing effect of bacterial endotoxin on bone marrow cell in the immune response. J Immunol 108:1453
277. Kalden JR, Evans MM, Irvine WJ (1970) Effect of hypophysectomy on immune response. Immunology 18:671
278. Kaplan HS, Nagareda CS (1961) Effect of hydrocortisone and andrenalectomy on uptake of amino isobutyric acid. Am J Physiol 200:1035
279. Kappas A, Jones HEH, Roitt JM 91963) Effects of steroid sex hormones on immunological phenomena. Nature (London) 198:902
280. Kass EH, Kendrick ML, Finland M (1955) Effects of corticosterone, hydrocortisone and corticotropin on production of antibodies. J Exp Med 102:767
281. Kattwinkel J, Munck A (1966) Activities in vitro of glucocorticoids and related steroids to glucose uptake by rat thymus cells. Endocrinology 79:387
282. Katz DH, Bennacerraf B (1972) Regulatory influence of activated T cells. Adv Immunol 15:2
283. Kayibanda B, Rosenfeld C (1975) Echanges d'information entre cellules T et pour la synthèse d'anticorps. CR Acad Sci [D] (Paris) 279:1645
284. Kelemen H, Lasmoler F, Milland G (1978) Is serum thymic factor of thymic origin? Natuere (London) 272:65
285. Kemp R, Duquesnoy RJ (1975) Lymphoic cell adenylatecyclase activity after X-irradiation and cortisone treatment. J Immunol 114:660
286. Kemp T, Marx L (1937) Beeinflussung von erblichem hypophysären Zwergwuchs durch Hypophysenhormone. Acta Pathol Microbiol Scand [A] 14:197
287. Kenny JF, Pangburn PC, Fraig G (1976) Effect of oestradiol on immune competence. Infect Immun 13:448
288. Kepinov L, Metalnikov S (1922) Glande thyroide et sensibilité à la tuberculine. CR Soc Biol (Paris) 87:10
289. Kiger M, Florentin I, Mathé G (1975) Further purification of the lymphocyte inhibiting factor from the thymus. Boll Ist Sieroter Milan 54:3
290. Kimberg DV, Loeb JH (1971) Differential sensitivity of nuclear and mitochondrial DNA synthesis to cortisone. Biochim Biophys Acta 245:412
291. Kinoshita Y (1974) Cytolytic effects of glucocorticoids on thymic medullary lymphocytes in vitro. Exp Cell Res 87:387
292. Klein JJ, Goldstein AL, White A (1966) Effect of the thymus lymphopoietic factor. Ann NY Acad Sci 135:485
293. Knutson F, Lundin PM (1966) Effect of hypophysectomy, adrenalectomy and cortisone on thymidicine incorporation in the rat organs. Acta Endocrinol (Copenh) 53:519
294. Komeva FA (1963) Effect of destruction of the hypothalamic areas on immunoglucosis. Firziol Zh SSSR 49:42
295. Komuro K, Boyse EA (1973) Induction of T lymphocytes from precursor cells in vitro by a production of thé thymus. J Exp Med 138:476
296. Komuro K, Goldstein G, Boyse A (1975) Thymus-repopulating capacity of cells that can be induced to differentiate to T cells in vitro. J Immunol 115: 195

297. Konda S, Stockert E, Smith RT (1973) Immunologic properties of mouse thymus cells. Cell Immunol 17:275
298. Kontiainen S, Feldman M (1976) Suppressor cell induction in vitro. Eur J Immunol 6:296
299. Kook AI, Trainin N (1974) Hormone-like activity of thymic humoral factors on induction of immune competence. J Exp Med 139:193
300. Kook AI, Trainin N (1975) Control excited by thymic hormone on cellular cAMP level and immune reactivity. J Immunol 115:8
301. Kook AI, Yakir Y, Trainin N (1975) Isolation and partial chemical characterisation of THF, a thymic hormone involved in immune maturation. Cell Immunol 19:151
302. Kretchmer RR, Perez-Tamayo R (1962) Role of humoral antibodies in skin allograft rejection in rabbits. J Exp Med 116:879
303. Kreth HW, Williamson A (1971) Cellular surveillance modes for lymphocyte cooperation. Nature (London) 255:552
304. Krinsbeek AM (1978) Effect of aging and tumour-bearing on thymic hormonal function. Thesis, Utrecht
305. Krohn PL (1954) Effects of steroid hormones on the survival of skin allografts. J Endocrinol 12:78
306. Krüger J, Goldstein AL, Waksman BH (1970) Immunologic and anatomic consequences of calf thymosin injection in rats. Cell Immunol 1:51
307. Krisbeek AM, Astaldi GCB, Blankwater MJ, Zijlstra JJ, Levent LA, Astaldi A (1978) In vitro effect of a thymic epithelial culture supernatant on mixed lymphocyte reactivity. Cell Immunol 35:134
308. Labat M, Moroz C (1975). Surface immunoglobulins in mouse thymus cells. Cell Immunol 18:110
309. Lacombe M, Pleau F, Dardenne MA, Bach JF (1974) Thymectomy in young pigs effect on level of circulating thymic hormone. Surgery 76:558
310. Lance EM, Medawar PB (1969) Induction of tolerance with antilymphocyte serum. Transplant Proc 1:429
311. Laskov R (1968) Rosette-forming cells in nonimmunized mice. Nature (London) 219:975
312. Law LW (1965) Neoplasms in thymectomized mice following room infection with polyoma virus. Nature (London) 205:672
313. Law LW (1966) Immunologic responsiveness and induction of experimental neoplasms. Cancer Res 26:112
314. Law LW, Trainin N, Levey RH (1966) Studies on thymic function. In: Defendi, Metcalf (eds) The thymus. Wistar Institute
315. Law LW, Goldstein AL, White A (1968) Influence of thymosin on immunologic competence of lymphoid cells from thymeectomized mice. Nature (London) 219:1391
316. Lee KC (1977) Cortisone as a probe for cell interaction in the generation of cytotoxic T cells. J Immunol 119:1836
317. Lee KC, Langman RE, Paltken VH, Diener E (1975) Cellular basis of cortisone-induced immunosuppression of the antibody response studied by its reversal in vitro. Cell Immunol 17:403
318. Leuchars E, Gross AM, Dukor P (1967) Restoration of immunologic function by thymus grafting in thymectomized X-irradiated mice. Transplantation 3:28
319. Levey RH, Medawar PB (1966) Nature and mode of anti-lymphocytic antiserum. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 56:1130
320. Levey RH, Trainin N, Law LW (1963) Evidence for function of thymus tissue in diffusion chambers. J Nat Cancer Inst 31:199
321. Lewis WJ, Cheever EV, Vanderlaan WD (1965) Growth hormone in normal and dwarf mice. Endocrinology 76:210
322. Lipman MF, Halteman RH, Levinthal BG, Percy S, Thomson E (1973) Glucocorticoid-binding proteins in human acute lymphoblastic leukemia. J Clin Invest 52:1715

323. Litvac G (1970) Biochemical action of hormones. Academic Press, New York
324. Lohmann-Mathes ML, Fischer H (1973) T cell cytotoxicity and amplicication of cytotoxic action by macrophages. Transplant Rev 17:150
325. Lonai P, Feldman M (1970) Coordination of lymphoid cells in an in vitro graft reaction sytem. Transplantation 10:372
326. Lonai P, Clark WR, Feldman M (1972) Participation of theta bearing cells in an in vitro assay of transplantation immunity. Nature (London) 229:566
327. Lonai P, Rotter V, Mogilnes B, Trainin N (1972) Effect of THF on differentiation of T cells. Isr J Med Sci 8:648
328. Loor F, Amstutz H, Hägg LB, Mayor KS, Roelants GE (1976) T cell lineage in nude mice born from Nu/nu homozygous parents. Eur J Immunol 6:663
329. Luckey TD (1973) Thymic hormones. University Park Press, Baltimore
330. Luckey TD, Venugopal B (1975) Isolation of LSH and the evaluation of related serum basic proteins in normal adults and cancer patients. Ann NY Acad Sci 249:166
331. McGillivray MW, Jones VE, Leskovits S (1974) Restoration of immunocompetence in thymectomized rats by a non-cellular thymic factor. Fed Proc 23:189
332. McGregor DD, Gowans JL (1964) Survival of homografts in rats depleted of lymphocytes by continuous drainage of the thoracic duct. Lancet I:629
333. McManus JP, Whitfield JF (1969) Mediation of the mitogenic action of growth hormone by cyclic AMP. Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 132:409
334. McManus JP, Whitfield JF (1969) Stimulation of DNA synthesis and mitotic activity of thymic lymphocytes by cyclic AMP. Exp Cell Res 58:188
335. McMaster PD, Franzl RB (1961) Effect of adrenal corticosteroids on antibody formation. Metabolism 11:990
336. Maisin HF (1964) Essai d'immunoprophylaxie du cancer experimental. Bull Acad R Med Belg 4:197
337. Makman MH, Dvoskin B, White A (1961) Induction by cortisol of a protein inhibitor for transport and phosphorylation in rat thymocytes. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 68:1269
338. Makman MH, Dvoskin B, White A (1966) Alteration in protein and nucleic acid metabolism of thymocytes by adrenal steroids. J Biol Chem 241:1646
339. Makman MH, Nakagawa S, White A (1967) Mode of action of adrenal steroids on lymphocytes. Recent Prog Horm Res 23:195
340. Makman MH, Nakagawa S, Dvoskin B, White A (1970) Inhibitory effect of cortisol and antibiotics on substrate entry and RNA synthesis in rat thymocytes in vitro. J Biol Chem 245:2556
341. Malkiel S, Hargis BJ (1952) Effect of ACTH and cortisone on the quantitative precipitin reaction. J Immunol 69:217
342. Mannick JA, Egdahl RH (1964) Transfer of heightened immunity to skin homografts by RMA. J Clin Invest 43:2166
343. Marchalonis JJ, Cone RE, Rolley RT (1973) Amplification of thymus influenced lymphocytes by poly (A:W). J Immunol 110:561
344. Marine D, Manley OT, Bauman EJ (1924) Influence of thyroidectomy, gonadectomy, suprarenalectomy and splenectomy on the thymus. J Exp Med 40:429
345. Markham RB, White A, Goldstein AL (1975) Selective immunosuppressive activity in mice inoculated with Moloney sarcoma virus. Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 148:190
346. Martin WJ, Miller JFAP (1968) Cell-to-cell interaction in the immune response. J Exp Med 128:855
347. Martinez C, Delmasso AP, Blaese M, Good RA (1962) Runt disease produced in thymectomized hybrid mice injected with parental strain lymphocytes. Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 111:404
348. Martinez C, Kersey B, Papermaster W, Good RA (1962) Skin homograft survival in thymectomized mice. Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 109:193
349. Maximov A (1901) Über Histogenese der Thymus bei Säugetieren. Arch Mikrosk Anat Entwicklungsmech 74:525

350. Medawar PB (1958) The homograft reaction. Proc R Soc Lond [Biol] 149:145
351. Medawar PB, Sparrow EM (1956) Effect of adrenocortical hormones, adrenocorticotropic hormone and pregnancy on skin transplantation immunity. J Endocrinol 14:240
352. Meshalova AM, Frazinova IB (1960) Effect of cortisone on immunogenesis. Zh Mikrobiol Epidemiol Immunobiol 31:23
353. Metcalf D (1956) Thymic origin of plasma lymphocytosis stimulating factor. Br J Cancer 10:442
354. Metcalf D (1964) Functional interaction between thymus and other organs. In: Defendi V, Metcalf D (eds) The thymus. Wistar Institute Press, Philadelphia
355. Metcalf D (1965) Delayed effect of adult thymectomy on immunocompetence. Nature (London) 208:1336
356. Milcu S, Potop J (1973) Biologic action of thymic protein extracts. In: Luckey TD (ed) Thymic hormones. University Park Press, Baltimore
357. Milcu S, Potop J, Boer V, Olinici N (1975) Stimulation of antibody formation through polypeptide thymic factors in X-irradiated rabbits. Ann NY Acad Sci 249:380
358. Miller HC, Esselmann WJ (1975) Identification of theta bearing T cells derived from bone marrow cells treated with thymic factors. Ann NY Acad Sci 249:54
359. Miller HC, Schniege SK, Rule A (1973) Production of functional T cells after treatment of bone marrow with thymic factor. J Immunol III:1005
360. Miller JFAP (1961) Immunological function of the thymus. Lancet II:748
361. Miller JFAP (1962) Role of the thymus in transplantation immunity. Ann NY Acad Sci 99:340
362. Miller JFAP (1973) Immunological memory. In: Davies AJS, Carter RL (eds) Contemp-topics in immunobiology. Plenum Press, New York
363. Miller JFAP, Mitchell GF (1968) Cell-to-cell interaction in the immune response. J Exp Med 128:801, 821, 836
364. Miller JFAP, Mitchell GF (1968) Immunologic activity of thymus and thoracic duct cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 59:296
365. Miller JFAP, Mitchell GF (1969) Thymus and antigen reactive cells. Transplant Rev 1:3
366. Miller JFAP, Osoba D (1967) Current concepts of the immunologic function of the thymus. Physiol Rev 47:437
367. Miller JFAP, Doak SMA, Cross MA (1963) Role of the thymus in the recovery of immune mechanisms in the X-irradiated adult mouse. Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 192:785
368. Miller JFAP, Grant GA, Roe FJC (1963) Effect of thymectomy on induction of skin tumours by benzopyrene. Nature (London) 199:920
369. Miller JFAP, Leuchars E. Cross AM, Dukor P (1964) Immunologic role of the thymus in radiation chimaeras. Ann NY Acad Sci 120:205
370. Miller JFAP, Osoba D, Dukor P (1965) Humoral mechanisms responsible for immune maturation. Ann NY Acad Sci 124:95
371. Miller JFAP, Brugh PM de, Grant GA (1969) Thymus and the antibody P.F.C. Nature (London) 208:1332
372. Mitchison MA (1953) Passive transfer of transplantation immunity. Nature (London) 171:267
373. Moeschlin S, Baguerra R, Baguerra J (1953) Influence of ACTH and cortisone on antibody production in rabbits. Bull Schweiz Akad Med Wiss 8:153
374. Moore PF, Kondo T, Oliver RJ (1960) Effect of cortisone on tumour transplantation. J Nat Cancer Inst 25:1097
375. Morita Y, Munck A (1964) Effects of glucocorticoids in vivo and in vitro on net glucose uptake and aminoacid incorporation. Biochim Biophys Acta 93:150
376. Mosher KM, Young DA, Munck A (1973) Time course of early events in the action of glucocorticoids on rat thymus cells. J Biol Chem 248:2922

377. Mosher KM, Young DA, Munck A (1971) Irreversible actinomycine and temperature-sensitive steps following binding of cortisol to glucocorticoid receptors. J Biol Chem 246:654
378. Mosier DE, Coppleson LW (1968) A three-cell interaction required for induction of primary response. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 61:542
379. Mosier DE, Pierce W (1972) Functional maturation of thymic, lymphocyte populations in vitro. J Exp Med 136:1984
380. Mountain JM (1955) Antibody production in vitro. J Immunol 74:270
381. Mowbray JF (1963) Ability of large doses of plasma protein fraction to inhibit antibody production. Immunology 6:217
382. Munck A (1965) Steroid concentration and tissue integrity as factors determining the physiological significance of effects of adrenal steroids in vitro. Endocrinology 77:356
383. Munck A, Brink-Johnson T (1968) Specific and nonspecific physicochemical interaction of glucocorticoids with rat thymus. J Biol Chem 243:5556
384. Munro AJ. Taussig MJ, Campbell R, Williams H, Lawson Y (1974) Antigen-specific T-cell-factor in cell cooperation. J Exp Med 140:1579
385. Najarian JS, Feldman M (1962) Function of the sensitized lymphocytes in homograft rejection. Ann NY Acad Sci 99:470
386. Najarian JS, Feldman M (1962) Passive transfer of transplantation immunity. J Exp Med 115:1083
387. Nakao S, Namba Y, Hanaoka M (1978) Differentiation of mouse T lymphocytes. Acta Pathol Jpn 28:357
388. Nedred J, Touton M, Clark WR (1975) Requirement for DNA synthesis and generation of cytotoxicity in vitro. J Exp Med 142:960
389. Newson S, Darrach M (1954) Effect of corticotropin and corticosterone on hemolytic antibody production in the mouse. Can J Biochem 32:372; 33:374
390. Nielsen EL (1953) Effect of thyroxine and growth hormone on growth. Acta Pathol Microbiol Scand [A] 32:316
391. Norden SK, Young DA (1976) Glucocorticoid action on rat thymocytes. J Biol Chem 251:7295
392. North JR, Kremshead JT, Askonas BA (1977) Non-specific factor replace T cells in an JGG response to soluble antigen. J Immunol 33:321
393. Orosz CG (1978) Influence of killing assisting factor on generation of cytotoxic T cells. Cell Immunol 37:86
394. Osoba D (1965) Effect of pregnancy on restoration of immunological responses in thymectomized mice. Science 147:298
395. Osoba D (1966) Effects of thymus and other organs enclosed in diffusion chambers on neonatally thymectomized mice. J Exp Med 122:191
396. Owen JT, Raff MC (1970) Differentiation of thymus-derived lymphocytes. J Exp Med 132:1216
397. Pandian MR, Talwar GP (1971) Effect of growth hormone on metabolism of thymus and immune response. J Exp Med 134:1095
398. Pantelouris S (1971) Immunobiology of nude mice. Immunology 20:247
399. Parrott D, Sousa M de (1971) Thymus-dependent and independent cell populations. Clin Exp Immunol 8:663
400. Parrott D, Sousa M de, East J (1966) Thymus-dependent areas in lymphatic organs of neonatally thymectomized mice. J Exp Med 123:191
401. Paznino MM, Ihle JM, Goldstein AL (1978) Induction in vivo and in vitro of terminal deoxymecleotidyltransferase in bone narrow cells of nude mice. J Exp Med 147:708
402. Pena A, Dwoskin B, White A (1966) Effect of a single cortisol injection on amino-acid incorporation of rat livers and thymus in vitro. J Biol Chem 241:2166
403. Perri WL, Faulk M, Shapiro E, Mellors T, Money WL (1963) Function of the thymus and growth of the mouse homograft. Nature (London) 200:1294

404. Perlman P, Holm C (1969) Cytotoxic effects on lymphoid cells in vitro. Adv Immunol 11:117
405. Philipps SM, Carpenter CB, Lane P (1975) Immunosuppressive globulin from bovine thymus and serum. Ann NY Acad Sci 249:236
406. Pierpaoli W (1967) Thymectomy and prolongation of tolerance to bovine serum albumin. Nature (London) 214:802
407. Pierpaoli W, Besedowsky HO (1975) Failure of thymic factor to restore transplantation immunity in athymic mice. Br J Exp Pathol 56:180
408. Pierpaoli W, Besedowsky HO (1975) Role of the thymus in programming of neuroendocrine function. Clin Exp Immunol 20:323
409. Pierpaoli W, Sorkin E (1967) Relationship between thymus and hypophyse. Nature (London) 215:834
410. Pierpaoli W, Sorkin E (1967) Cellular modifications in the hypophyse of neonatally thymectomized mice. Br J Exp Pathol 48:627
411. Pierpaoli W, Sorkin E (1968) Effect of heterologous antigrowth hormone serum on thymus and peripheral lymph nodes in mice. J Immunol 101:1036
412. Pierpaoli W, Sorkin E (1972) Alterations of adrenal and thyroid in mice with congenital absence of the thymus. Nature (New Biol) 238:282
413. Pierpaoli W, Baroni C, Fabin M, Sorkin E (1969) Reconstitution of antibody production in hormonally deficient mice by growth hormone, thyrotropine and thyroxin. Immunology 16:217
414. Pierpaoli W, Fabris H, Sorkin E (1970) Developmental hormones and immunological maturation. Ciba Found Colloq
415. Pierpaoli W, Bianchi E, Sorkin E (1971) Hormones and immunological capacity. Clin Exp Immunol 9:889
416. Pitkins DH (1966) Effect of physiological stress on the delayed hypersensitivity reaction. Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 120:350
417. Pleau JM, Dardenne M, Bioquet Y, Bach JF (1977) Structural study of circulating thymic factors. J Biol Chem 252:8045
418. Plescia O, Yamamoto I, Shimawara T, Fert C (1975) Early cellular events in the response of mice to SRBC reflected in the spleen level of cAMP. Ann NY Acad Sci 249:362
419. Pollak A, Hämmerling W, Lampen M, Harveirs E de (1975) Surface morphology of murine and T lymphocytes. Eur J Immunol 5:32
420. Pora E. Toma V, Wittenberger C, Rusdea D (1961) Effects of thymectomy on cholinesterase activity, tissue respiration and muscle chronaxy in rats. Stud Univ Babes-Bolyai [Biol] (ser II) 2:202
421. Potop J, Milcu S (1973) Thymosterine. In: Luckey TD (ed) Thymic hormones. University Park Press, Baltimore
422. Potvorski EF, Maires RC (1967) Specific antigenicity of thymocytes. Nature (London) 213:135
423. Primus FJ, Martino L de, McDonald R, Hansen HJ (1978) Immunological reconstitution of T cell deprived mice. Cell Immunol 35:25
424. Raff MC (1970) Two distinct populations of peripheral lymphocytes in mice distinguishable by immunofluorescence. Immunology 19:637
425. Raff MC, Cantor H (1972) Subpopulations of thymus cells and thymus derived cells. In: Amos W (ed) Ist Internat Congress of Immunology. Academic Press, New York
426. Raff MC, Wortis HH (1970) Thymus-dependence of theta bearing cells in peripheral lymphatic tissue. Immunology 18:929
427. Raff MC, Nase S, Mitchison MA (1971) Mouse specific bone-marrow-derived lymphocyte antigen as a marker for thymus independent lymphocytes. Nature (London) 230:50
428. Reckard CR (1973) Tolerance in rats by treatment with antilymphocyte serum and adult skin homografts. J Surg Res 14:207

429. Reif AE, Allen JMV van (1964) The AKR thymic antigen and its distribution in leukemia and nervous tissue. J Exp Med 120:413
430. Ritter MA (1977) Embryonic mouse thymocyte development enhancement by corticosteron. Immunology 33:241
431. Rixon RH, Whitfield JF, McManus JP (1971) Stimulation of growth hormone of DNA synthesis of rat thymocytes. Horm Metab Res 3:28
432. Robert A, Nazanine J (1961) Antiphlogistic property of certain II desoxysteroids after systemic administration. Endocrinology 68:932
433. Roberts S, White A (1951) Influence of adrenal cortex on antibody production in vitro. Endocrinology 48:741
434. Robey G (1975) Further characterisation of an antibody stimulating factor isolated from bovine thymus. Ann NY Acad Sci 249:210
435. Roelants GE, Mayor-Withery KS (1977) Regulation of the T cell precursor pool by a humoral factor released by the thymus. Cell Immunol 34:420
436. Roitt IM, Torrigiani G, Greaves MF, Brostoff J, Playfair JHL (1969) Cellular basis of immune response. Lancet II:367
437. Rollinghoff MA, Pfitzenmaier K, Wagner H (1977) Cyclophosphamide-sensitive T cells suppress the in vivo generation of antigen-specific cytotoxic T lymphocytes. J Exp Med 145:455
438. Rotter V, Nakamura J, Globerson A, Trainin M (1972) Thymus extracts induce differentiation of thymus-derived cells participating in the immune response. Isr J Med Sci 8:647
439. Rotter V, Globerson A, Nakamura J, Trainin M (1973) Studies on characterisation of the thymus lymphatic target cell for activity of a thymic humoral factor. J Exp Med P 38:130
440. Rubin AS, Carpenter CR (1977) Dual biological function of a T cell derived immunoenhancing factor. Cell Immunol 34:104
441. Ruthenstroth-Baur W, Lücke-Huhle C (1968) Two populations of small lymphocytes. J Cell Biol 37:196
442. Sabolevic EB, Dumont F (1973) Separation and characteristics of cell subpopulations in the thymus. Cell Immunol 24:601
443. Sand H, Haynes RC (1970) Effects of glucocorticoids on the acid DNAse of the thymus. Endocrinology 86:144
444. Sanders GC, King DW (1966) Antibody synthesis in vitro by paired explants of thymus and spleen. Science 151:1390
445. Sato VL, Waksal SD, Herzenberg LA (1976) Identification and separation of pre T cells from nu/nu mice by preculture with thymic reticuloepitelial cells. Cell Immunol 24:173
446. Savart M, Daniel-Lamaziere JM (1975) Effets sur la transcription du cortisol et du complexe transcortine cortisol du thymus. CR Acad Sci [D] (Paris) 281: 1517
447. Schafer LA, Goldstein AL, Luttermann JW, Heisler EM (1976) In vitro and in vivo studies with thymosin in cancer patients. Ann NY Acad Sci 277:609
448. Schaller RT, Stevenson JK (1967) Reversal of post-thymectomy wasting syndrome by multiple thymus grafts in diffusion chambers. Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 124:199
449. Schaumburg BP (1972) Glucocorticoid-binding protein from thymocytes. Biochim Biophys Acta 263:416
450. Scheid MP, Goldstein G, Hammerling W, Boyse EA (1975) Lymphocyte differentiation from precursor cells in vitro. Ann NY Acad Sci 249:531
451. Scheid MP, Hoffman MK, Komuo K et al (1973) Differentiation of T cells induced by preparations of thymus and nonthymic agents. J Exp Med 138:1027
452. Schellein Y, Hesseljö R, Paulsen F, Malgren J (1954) Plasma cell production promoted by pituitary somatotropic hormone in the adaptation syndrome. Acta Pathol Microbiol Scand [A] 35:503

453. Schimpl A, Wecker E (1970) Inhibition of in vitro response by treatment of spleen cells with antitheta serum. Nature (London) 226:1258
454. Schimpl A, Wecker E (1972) Replacement of T cell function by a T cell product. Nature (London) 237:15
455. Schimpl A, Wecker E (1973) Stimulation of JgG antibody response in vitro by T cell replacing factor. J Exp Med 137:547
456. Schlesinger M (1970) Antitheta antibodies for detecting thymus-dependent lymphocytes in the immune response. Nature (London) 226:1254
457. Schlesinger M (1974) The lymphocyte membrane. Ser Haematol 7:427
458. Schlesinger M, Goldstein G (1975) The aminoacid sequence of thymopoietine. Cell 5:361
459. Schlesinger M, Yaron T (1969) Antigenic changes in lymph node cells following thymectomy. Isr J Med Sci 5:445
460. Schlesinger M, Shlonai-Korzash Z, Israel E (1973) Antigenic difference between spleen-seeking and lymph-node seeking thymus cells. Eur J Immunol 3:339
461. Schlesinger M, Goldstein G, Scheid M, Boyse EA (1975) Chemical synthesis of a peptide of thymopoietine inducing T cell differentiation. Cell 5:367
462. Schrek B (1966) Cytotoxicity of adrenal cortex hormones on normal and malignant lymphocytes. Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 108:1120
463. Senon B, Renne T, Sermlar R, Delor B, Dubois JB, Thierry C (1975) T-lymphocyte maturation and antitumoral effect of a thymic extract obtained from a stimulated model. Ann NY Acad Sci 249:328
464. Sergeev AV, Bykovskaya SM, Lucharskaya LM (1978) Pyridoxine deficiency and cytotoxicity of T cells. Cell Immunol 38:193
465. Sethi KK, Brandis H (1978) Characteristics of soluble T cell derived factors. Z Immunitaetsforsch Immunobiol 154:226
466. Shaskar JR, Bottoner GD (1974) Intranuclear binding of cortisol in liver and thymus. Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 147:232
467. Shuyser M (1969) Interaction of steroid-hormones with histones in vitro. Biochim Biophys Acta 182:235
468. Simonsen M (1962) Graft versus host reaction. Prog Allergy 6:349
469. Sinclair MR, Elliott EV (1968) Neonatal thymectomy and hemolysin response in mice. J Immunol 101:251
470. Sininski A (1967) Influence of thymectomy on plasma corticosterone in the rat. Gen Comp Endocrinol 8:378
471. Smith PE, McDowell EC (1931) Differential effect of hereditary mouse dwarfism on the anterior pituitary hormones. Anat Rec 50:85
472. Snell GD (1930) Effect of anterior pituitary extracts on the thyroid of dwarf mice. Anat Rec 47:316
473. Solomon GE (1969) Stress and antibody response in rats. Arch Allergy 35:97
474. Sopori ML, Alter BJ, Bach FH, Bach ML (1977) Cell-free factor substitute for signal in generation of cytotoxic reactions. Eur J Immunol 7:823
475. Sorkin E, Pierpaoli W, Fabris N, Bianchi F (1971) Relation of growth hormone to thymus and immune response. In: Pecile A (ed) Growth and growth hormone (2nd Intern Sympos Excerpta Med, Amsterdam)
476. Sparrow E (1953) Behaviour of skin auto- and homografts in the guinea pig with special reference to the effect of cortisone and ascorbic acid. J Endocrinol 9:101
477. Stern K, Davidsohn J (1955) Effect of estrogen and cortisone on immune hemoantibodies. J Immunol 74:474
478. Stetson CA (1963) Role of humoral antibody in the homograft reaction. Adv Immunol 3:97
479. Stobo JD, Pane WE (1972) Functional heterogeneity of murine lymphatic cells. Cell Immunol 34:367
480. Strauch G, Pardos P, Luton JP, Bricairne H (1971) Stimulation de la secretion d'hormone de croissance par la corticotropine. Ann Endocrinol 32:526

481. Stutman O (1978) Intrathymic and extrathymic cell maturation. Transplant Rev 42:138
482. Stutman O (1975) Humoral thymic factors influencing post thymic cells. Ann NY Acad Sci 249:89
483. Stutman O, Good RA (1973) Thymus hormones. Comtemp Top Immunobiol 2:299
484. Stutman O, Good RA (1974) Duration of thymic function. Ser Haematol 7: 505
485. Stutman O, Yunis EJ, Martinez C, Good RA (1967) Reversal of postthymectomy wasting in mice by multiple thymus grafts. J Immunol 98:79
486. Stutman O, Yunis EJ, Good RA (1969) Carcinogen induced tumours of the thymus. J Nat Cancer Inst 43:499
487. Stutman O, Yunis EJ, Good RA (1970) Cooperative effect of thymic function and lymphohematopoietic cells in restoration of neonatally thymectomized mice. J Exp Med 132:583
488. Sunshine GH, Basch RS, Coffey RG, Cohen KW, Goldstein G (1978) Thymopoietin enhances the allogenic response and cyclic AMP levels of mouse peripheral thymus derived lymphocytes. J Immunol 120:1594
489. Sutherland EW, Hayes RC (1967) Increased aminoacid release from rat thymus after corticoid administration. Endocrinology 80:288
490. Talwar GP, Hanjan SHS, Kidvaz Z, Gupta PD, Mahrota ND, Sayana R, Bhattarai R (1976) Growth hormone action on thymus and lymphatic cells. In: Pecile A, Muller E (Hrsg) Growth hormone and related peptides. Elsevier, Amsterdam
491. Tasuda M, Greer MA (1978) Evidence that the hypothalamus mediates endotoxine stimulation of adrenocorticotropic hormone secretion. Endocrinology 102:947
492. Taylor RB (1964) Effect of thymectomy on recovery from immunologic paralysis. Immunology 7:595
493. Taylor RB (1965) Decay of immunologic responsiveness after thymectomy in adult life. Nature (London) 208:1334
494. Taylor RB, Allison AC (1967) Observations on thymectomy and carcinogenesis. Cancer Res 27:763
495. Thompson EB, Lippman MF (1974) Mechanism of glucocorticoid action. Metabolism 23:159
496. Thompson JS, Furth R van (1973) Effect of glucocorticoids on proliferation and kinetics of promonocytes and monocytes of the bone marrow. J Exp Med 137:10
497. Thompson JS, Crawford MK, Reilly R, Sevensen C (1967) Estrogenic hormones in immune response in normal and X-irradiated mice. J Immunol 98: 331
498. Thong YA, Hensen SA, Vincent MM, Rola-Pleszczinski M, Walsh JB, Bellanti JA (1975) Effect of cortisol on in vitro cellular immunity to viruses in man. Clin Immunol Immunopathol 3:363
499. Thurman GB, Brosio JL, Goldstein AL (1972) Thymosin induced recovery of T-cell function following cortisol treatment. Transplant Proc 9:1201
500. Thurman GB, Barr PS, Goldstein AL (1975) Examination of lymphocyte membrane of nude mice with scanning electrone microscope. Ann NY Acad Sci 249:154
501. Torgyan S (1972) Thyroid connection of humoral immunorectivity. Ann Immunol Hung 16:459
502. Touraine JL, Incefy GS, Touraine F, Rho YM, Good RA (1974) Differentiation of human bone marrow cells into T-cells when incubated with a thymic factor. Clin Exp Immunol 17:151
503. Touraine JL, Incefy GS, Goldstein AL, Good RA (1975) Thymic factor and human T-cell differentiation. In: Bekkum DW van (ed) Biologic activity of thymic hormones. Kooykes, Rotterdam

504. Trainin N (1974) Thymic hormones and the immune response. Physiol Rev 51:272
505. Trainin N, Linker-Israeli M (1967) Restoration of immunologic activity of thymectomized mice by calf thymus extract. Cancer Res 27:309
506. Trainin N, Small M (1970) Some physicochemical properties of a thymic humoral factor confering immunocompetence on lymphoid cells. J Exp Med 132:885
507. Trainin N, Burger M, Linker-Israeli M (1967) Restoration of homograft response in neonatally thymectomized mice by a thymic humoral factor. Williams & Wilkins, Baltimore
508. Trainin N, Burger M, Kaye AM (1967) Characteristics of a thymic humoral factor determined by in vivo assay in lymph nodes from thymectomized mice. Biochem Pharmacol 16:711
509. Trainin N, Small M, Globerson A (1969) Immunocompetence of spleen cells from neonatally thymectomized mice conferred in vitro by a syngenic thymus extract. J Exp Med 130:765
510. Trainin N, Small M, Kimhi Y (1973) Characteristics of a thymic humoral factor involved in development of cell-mediated immune competence. In: Luckey TD (ed) Thymic hormones. University Park Press, Baltimore
511. Trainin N, Levo Y, Rotter V (1974) Resistance to cortisol conferred upon thymocytes by a thymic humoral factor. Eur J Immunol 4:634
512. Trainin N, Kook AJ, Albuia M, Umiel T (1975) Nature and mechanism of stimulation of immune response by thymus extracts. Ann NY Acad Sci 249: 349
513. Tse Hy (1978) Separations of helper and suppressive T cells. J Immunol 120: 1149
514. Tucker DF, Dennert G, Lennox ES (1974) Thymus-derived lymphocytes as mediators of cell-mediated immunity. J Immunol 113:1288
515. Tyan HL, Cole LJ, Davies WE (1963) Thymus; its limited role in the recovery of homograft response in X-irradiated mice. Science 142:584
516. Umiel T, Trainin N (1975) Increased reactivity of responding cells in the mixed lymphocyte reaction by a thymic humoral factor. Eur J Immunol 5:85
517. Vann DC (1974) Restoration of the in vitro antibody response of cortisone-treated spleen cells by T-cells or a soluble factor. Cell Immunol 11:11
518. Vessey SH (1964) Effect of grouping on levels of circulating antibodies in mice. Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 115:252
519. Visscher TL (1972) Effect of cortisol in the reactivity of thymus and spleen cells to in vitro stimulation. Immunology 23:777
520. Wagner H (1973) Synergy during in vitro cytotoxic allograft response. J Exp Med 138:1379
521. Wagner H, Feldman M, Boyle W, Scinader JW (1972) Requirement for macrophages in cytotoxic reaction against cell-bound and subcellular antigens. J Exp Med 136:331
522. Wagner H, Harris AW, Feldman M (1972) Cell-mediated immune response in vitro. Cell Immunol 4:30
523. Wahl SJ, Altmann LC, Rosenstreich DL (1975) In vitro inhibition of lymphokinine synthesis by glucocorticoids. J Immunol 115:476
524. Waksal D, Cohen JR, Waksal HW, Wekerle H, St Pierre R, Feldman M (1975) Induction of T-cell differentiation in vitro by thymus epithelial cells. Ann NY Acad Sci 249:492
525. Waksman BH, Arnason BG, Jankovic BD (1962) Role of the thymus in immune reaction in rats. J Exp Med 116:187
526. Waldmann H, Munro A (1974) T cell-dependent mediator in immune response. Immunology 27:53
527. Walker SM, Lucas ZJ (1972) Cytotoxic activity of lymphocytes. J Immunol 109:1233

528. Wara W, Ammann AJ (1975) Activation of T cell rosettes in immuno deficient patients by thymosine. Ann NY Acad Sci 249:308
529. Wara W, Goldstein AL, Doyle H, Ammann AJ (1975) Thymosine activity in immunodeficient patients. N Engl J Med 292:70
530. Watts HG (1971) Role of cyclic AMP in the immunocompetent cell. Transplantation 12:229
531. Webb DR (1977) Role of prostaglandin in the control of immune response. Cell Immunol 33:1
532. Wecker E, Schimpl A, Hünig T, Kophn L (1975) T-cell produced mediator active in the humoral immune response. Ann NY Acad Sci 249:258
533. Weismann JL (1973) Thymus cell maturation. J Exp Med 137:504
534. Weismann G, Thomas L (1962) Effect of endotoxine tolerance and cortisone on the release of acid hydrolases from lysosomes. J Exp Med 116:433
535. Weismann G, Thomas L (1964) Effect of corticosteroids on connective tissue and lysosomes. Recent Prog Horm Res 20:115
536. Wekerle H (1973) Thymus reticulum confers T cell properties on spleen cells from thymectomized animals. Eur J Immunol 3:745
537. Werthamer S, Hicks C, Amarat L (1969) Protein synthesis in human leukocytes and lymphocytes. Blood 34:348
538. Wexler BC, Dolgin AE, Trygzynski EW (1957) Effect of bacterial polysaccharide on pituitary-adrenal axis. Endocrinology 61:300
539. Whitfield JF, McManus JP, Rixon RH (1970) Cyclic AMP mediated stimulation of thymocyte proliferation by low concentrations of cortisol. Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 134:1170
540. Willis-Carr JJ, St Pierre RL (1978) Effects of vitamin B6 deficiency on thymic epithelial cells and T lymphocyte differentiation. J Immunol 120:1153
541. Wilson DB (1963) Reaction of immunologically activated lymphocytes against homologous target cells. J Cell Physiol 62:273
542. Wilson DB, Billingham RE (1967) Lymphocytes and transplantation immunity. Adv Immunol 7:189
543. Wilson R, Sjödin K, Bealmar M (1964) Thymus studies in germfree mice. In: Defendi V, Metcalf D (eds) The thymus. Wistar Institute Press, Philadelphia
544. Winchurch R, Ishizuka M, Webb D, Braun W (1971) Activity of spleen cells exposed to immunoenhancing synthetic oligo- and polynucleotides. J Immunol 106:1399
545. Wioland M, Sabolovic D, Burg C (1972) Electrophoretic mobilities of T and B cells. Nature (London) 237:274
546. Wira C, Munck A (1970) Specific glucocorticoid receptors on thymus cells. J Biol Chem 245:3436
547. Wistar R, Hildeman WH (1960) Effect of stress on skin transplantation immunity. Science 131:159
548. Wong FM, Taub RH, Sherman JD, Dameshek W (1966) Effect of thymus enclosed in millipore envelopes on thymectomized hamsters. Blood 28:40
549. Wortis HH, Nielsen S, Owen JJ (1971) Abnormal development of the thymus in nude mice. J Exp Med 134:681
550. Yates FE, Urquhard J, Herbst AL (1958) Effect of thyroid hormones on ring A reduction of cortisone by liver. Am J Physiol 195:373
551. Young DA (1970) Glucocorticoid action on rat thymus cells. J Biol Chem 245: 2749
552. Young RH, Hopkins P, Esparza A (1963) Humoral aspects of homograft in the rabbit. Am J Pathol 43:227
553. Yunis L, Hillgard HR, Martinez C, Good RA (1965) Immunologic reconstitution of thymectomized mice. J Exp Med 121:607
554. Zaalberg OBVD, Maul VA, Twisk MJ (1964) Antibody production of isolated spleen cells. J Immunol 100:451

555. Zahnd GR, Nadeau A, Muhlendahl KE (1969) Effect of corticotrophine on plasma growth hormone. Lancet II:1287
556. Ziller K (1972) Thymus specific antigens on electrophoretically separated rat. Eur J Immunol 2:439
557. Zinzar SM, Svetmoldavski GY (1967) Features of antibody formation in neonatally thymectomized mice. Nature (London) 244:295
558. Zissblatt M, Goldstein AL, Lily F, White A (1970) Acceleration by thymosin of development of resistance to murine virus-induced sarcoma in mice. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 66:1170

References added in proof

559. Al-Adra AR, Pilanke LM (1978) Antigen specific suppression of cytotoxic T cell response. Eur J Immunol 8:360
560. Bezvershenko I, Giulling E, Dyugovskaya L (1979) Suppression of IgE antibody production by non-polypeptide dialysable thymic factor. Immunology 36:229
561. Dardenne M (1978) Alteration in thymocyte surface marker after in vivo treatment with serum thymic factor. Cell Immunol 34:47
562. Deschaux P, Claustrat B, Fontanges R (1978) Modifications quantitatives des cellules somatotropes hypophysaires de rat après thymectomie. Experientia 34: 1525
563. Deschaux P, Fontanges R, Goldstein AL (1979) Effets de la thymosine et d'un extrait de cultures de cellules épithéliales thymiques sur la production d'anticorps. Experientia 35:678
564. Eldinger D, Garrett TJ (1971) Regulatory effects of sex hormones on antibody production. J Exp Med 136:1098
565. Elliott LH (1978) Suppressor cell regulation of the spontaneously induced antibody response. Cell Immunol 40:46
566. Esselman WJ, Miller HC (1977) Modulation of B cell response by glycolipid released from antigen stimulated T cells. J Immunol 119:1996
567. Fauci AS, Pratt KR, Whalen G (1977) Activation of human B lymphocytes. J Immunol 119:598
568. Gillette S, Gillette R (1979) Changes in thymic estradiol receptor expression following castration in males. Cell Immunol 42:194
569. Hoffmann MK, Watson J (1979) Helper T cell replacing factors secreted thymus-derived cells and macrophages. J Immunol 122:1371
570. Humber DP, Pinder M, Hetherington CM (1975) Effects of pregnancy on the immunocompetence of congenitally athymic (nude) mice. Transplantation 19:9
571. Law LW, Trainin N, Levey RH (1964) Humoral thymic factor in mice. Science 143:1049
572. McDougal JL, Shen FW, Elster P (1979) Generation of cytolytic lymphocytes in vitro. J Immunol 122:437
573. Mandi B (1979) Detection of thymosin in calf and mouse thymus and in nude mouse dysgenetic thymus. Folia Biol (Praha) 25:49
574. Martinez D, Field A, Schwann H, Tyrell AA, Hilleman MR (1978) Failure of thymopoietine, ubiquitine and serum thymic factor to restore immune response in T cell deficient mice. Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 159:195
575. Nagy E (1978) Immunodeficiency in hypophysectomized rats. Acta Endocrinol (Copenh) 89:530
576. Parrillo E (1979) Mechanism of glucocorticoid action on immune response. Ann Rev Pharmacol Toxicol 19:179
577. Reichman ME (1978) Oestradiol binding by rat thymus cytosol. J Steroid Biochem 9:637

578. Stimson WH, Hunter IC (1976) Immunosuppressive properties of oestrogens. J Endocrinol 69:42
579. Stutman O (1974) Inability to restore immune functions in nude mice with humoral thymic factor. Fed Proc 33:136
580. Stutman O (1978) Intrathymic and extrathymic T cell maturation. Transplant Rev 42:138
581. Stutman O (1979) Postthymic precursor cells give rise to Ly+1 Ly+23 subsets of T cells. Transplant Proc 11:907
582. Tener GSL, Morrison SL, Habicht GS (1968) Quantitative differences in the immune response between male and female mice. Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 127: 664
583. Waltman SR, Brude RM, Benios J (1971) Prevention of corneal graft rejection by oestrogens. Transplantation 11:194
584. Watson J, Aarden LA, Lefkowitz I (1979) Purification and quantitation of helper T-cell replacing factors secreted by murine cells. J Immunol 122:209
585. Wekerle H, Ketelsen UP (to be published) Nature (London)
586. Wekerle H, Ketelsen UP, Ernst M (to be published) J Exp Med
587. Zinkernagl RM (1978) Thymus and lymphohemopoietic cells, their role in T cell maturation, in selection of T cells, H 2 restriction, specificity and H 2 linked Ir gene control. Transplant Rev 42:224
588. Zinkernagl RM, Althage A (1979) Search for suppression of T cells specific F 1 leads to prediation chimaeras. J Immunol 122:1742

Author Index

Page numbers in *italics* refer to the bibliography. Numbers shown in parentheses are the numbers of the references in the bibliography.

Subject Index